

# **Modern Hindi Grammar**

**Omkar N. Koul**

# **Modern Hindi Grammar**

**Omkar N. Koul**

# **Modern Hindi Grammar**

**Omkar N. Koul**

**2008  
Dunwoody Press**

## **Modern Hindi Grammar**

Copyright © 2008 by McNeil Technologies, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

No part of this work may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by  
any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and  
recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without the  
prior written permission of McNeil Technologies, Inc.

All inquiries should be directed to:  
Dunwoody Press  
6564 Loisdale Ct., Suite 800  
Springfield, VA 22150, USA

ISBN: 978-1-931546-06-5  
Library of Congress Control Number: 2004113175  
Printed and bound in the United States of America

ISBN: 978-1-931546-06-5

A standard 1D barcode representing the ISBN number 978-1-931546-06-5.

9 781931 546065

## **Table of Contents**

|                           |            |
|---------------------------|------------|
| <b>Preface.....</b>       | <b>i</b>   |
| <b>Abbreviations.....</b> | <b>iii</b> |
| <b>References .....</b>   | <b>iv</b>  |

### **1. Introduction**

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1.1. Area and Its Speakers.....       | 1 |
| 1.2. Dialects and Classification..... | 1 |
| 1.3. Hindi - Urdu.....                | 2 |
| 1.4. Linguistic Characteristics.....  | 4 |
| 1.5. Status.....                      | 4 |
| 1.6. Grammars in Hindi .....          | 7 |

### **2. Phonology**

|  |    |
|--|----|
| 2.1. Phonological Units (Segmental) .....              | 11 |
| 2.1.1. Distinctive Segments .....                      | 11 |
| Vowels .....   | 11 |
| Consonants .....                                       | 12 |
| 2.1.2. Description of Phonemes .....                   | 12 |
| 2.1.2.1. Vowels .....                                  | 12 |
| 2.1.2.2. Consonants .....                              | 14 |
| 2.1.2.3. Distribution of Phonemes and Allophones ..... | 19 |
| 2.2. Phonotactics .....                                | 20 |
| 2.2.1. Vowel Sequences .....                           | 20 |
| 2.2.2. Consonant Clusters .....                        | 20 |
| 2.2.2.1. Word-initial Cosonant Clusters.....           | 20 |
| 2.2.2.2. Word-medial Consonant Clusters .....          | 21 |
| 2.2.2.3. Word-final Consonant Clusters.....            | 23 |
| 2.2.3. Syllable Structure .....                        | 24 |
| 2.3. Supersegmental Features .....                     | 25 |
| 2.3.1. Nasalization.....                               | 25 |
| 2.3.2. Length .....                                    | 26 |
| 2.3.3. Stress .....                                    | 26 |
| 2.3.4. Intonation .....                                | 27 |
| 2.3.5. Juncture .....                                  | 29 |
| 2.4. Morphophonemics .....                             | 30 |
| 2.4.1. Loss of Phoneme.....                            | 30 |
| 2.4.2. Addition of Phoneme .....                       | 30 |
| 2.4.3. Alternations.....                               | 31 |

### **3. Morphology**

|   |    |
|---|----|
| 3.1. Nouns .....                              | 33 |
| 3.1.1. Noun Inflection .....                  | 33 |
| 3.1.1.1. Gender.....                          | 33 |
| 3.1.1.2. Number .....                         | 35 |
| 3.1.1.3. Case.....                            | 36 |
| 3.1.2. Postpositions .....                    | 37 |
| 3.1.2.1. The Postposition ने <i>ne</i> .....  | 37 |
| 3.1.2.2. The Postposition को <i>ko</i> .....  | 41 |
| 3.1.2.3. The Postposition से <i>se</i> .....  | 47 |
| 3.1.2.4. The Postposition में <i>mē</i> ..... | 52 |
| 3.1.2.5. The Postposition पर <i>par</i> ..... | 53 |
| 3.1.2.6. The Postposition का <i>ka</i> .....  | 55 |
| 3.1.2.7. Compound Postpositions.....          | 57 |
| 3.1.3. Noun Derivation.....                   | 68 |
| 3.1.3.1. Nouns from Nouns .....               | 68 |
| 3.1.3.2. Nouns from Adjectives .....          | 70 |
| 3.1.3.3. Nouns from Verbs.....                | 71 |
| 3.1.4. Noun Compounds .....                   | 72 |
| 3.1.4.1. Noun-Noun Compounds .....            | 73 |
| 3.1.4.2. Copulative Compounds.....            | 73 |
| 3.1.4.3. Reduplicated Compounds .....         | 73 |
| 3.1.4.4. Partially Duplicated Compounds ..... | 73 |
| 3.1.4.5. Superordinate Compounds.....         | 74 |
| 3.1.4.6. Complex Compounds.....               | 74 |
| 3.1.4.7. Hybrid Compounds.....                | 74 |
| 3.1.4.8. Adjective-Noun Compounds.....        | 74 |
| 3.1.4.9. Modifier-Noun Compounds .....        | 75 |
| 3.2. Pronouns .....                           | 75 |
| 3.2.1. Personal Pronouns.....                 | 75 |
| 3.2.2. Demonstrative Pronouns .....           | 77 |
| 3.2.3. Relative Pronouns .....                | 77 |
| 3.2.4. Reflexive Pronouns .....               | 77 |
| 3.2.5. Interrogative Pronouns .....           | 78 |
| 3.2.6. Indefinite Pronouns .....              | 79 |
| 3.2.7. Oblique Forms of Pronouns .....        | 79 |
| 3.2.8. Compound Pronouns.....                 | 80 |
| 3.3. Adjectives .....                         | 81 |
| 3.3.1. Inflected .....                        | 82 |
| 3.3.2. Uninflected.....                       | 82 |
| 3.3.3. Types of Adjectives .....              | 82 |
| 3.3.4. Degree of Adjectives.....              | 84 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 3.3.5. Derivation of Adjectives .....     | 85  |
| 3.3.6. Numerals .....                     | 88  |
| 3.3.6.1. Cardinals .....                  | 88  |
| 3.3.6.2. Ordinals .....                   | 90  |
| 3.3.6.3. Fractions .....                  | 91  |
| 3.3.6.4. Multiplicatives .....            | 92  |
| 3.3.6.5. Approximation .....              | 92  |
| 3.3.6.6. Aggregation .....                | 93  |
| 3.4. Verbs .....                          | 93  |
| 3.4.1. The Verb <i>hona</i> : .....       | 93  |
| 3.4.2. Main Verbs .....                   | 95  |
| 3.4.2.1. Intransitive Verbs .....         | 95  |
| 3.4.2.2. Transitive Verbs .....           | 96  |
| 3.4.2.3. Ditransitive Verbs .....         | 98  |
| 3.4.2.4. Causative Verbs .....            | 98  |
| 3.4.2.5. Dative Verbs .....               | 100 |
| 3.4.2.6. Conjunction Verbs .....          | 102 |
| 3.4.2.7. Compound Verbs .....             | 103 |
| 3.4.3. Tense .....                        | 105 |
| 3.4.4. Aspect .....                       | 107 |
| 3.4.4.1. Habitual Aspect .....            | 107 |
| 3.4.4.2. Progressive Aspect .....         | 111 |
| 3.4.4.3. Perfective Aspect .....          | 113 |
| 3.4.5. Mood .....                         | 116 |
| 3.4.5.1. Indicative Mood .....            | 116 |
| 3.4.5.2. Imperative Mood .....            | 116 |
| 3.4.5.3. Subjunctive Mood .....           | 119 |
| 3.4.6. Voice .....                        | 121 |
| 3.4.7. Non-finite Verb Forms .....        | 122 |
| 3.4.7.1. Infinitives .....                | 122 |
| 3.4.7.2. Participles .....                | 124 |
| 3.4.7.2.1. Imperfective Participles ..... | 125 |
| 3.4.7.2.2. Perfective Participles .....   | 126 |
| 3.4.7.2.3. Conjunctive Participles .....  | 128 |
| 3.5. Adverbs .....                        | 129 |
| 3.5.1. Types of Adverbs .....             | 130 |
| 3.5.2. Expressions of Time .....          | 133 |
| 3.5.2.1. General Time Expressions .....   | 133 |
| 3.5.2.2. Time of Day .....                | 133 |
| 3.5.2.3. Period of Day .....              | 135 |
| 3.5.2.4. Days of the Week .....           | 135 |
| 3.5.2.5. Months of the Year .....         | 135 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 3.5.2.6. Year.....                               | 136 |
| 3.5.2.7. Seasons.....                            | 136 |
| 3.5.3. Frequentative.....                        | 137 |
| 3.6. Particles.....                              | 137 |
| 3.6.1. The Particle भी <i>bhi</i> : ‘also’ ..... | 137 |
| 3.6.2. The Particle ही <i>hi</i> : .....         | 150 |
| 3.6.3. The Particle तो <i>to</i> .....           | 155 |
| 3.6.4. The Particle तक <i>tak</i> ‘up to’ .....  | 157 |
| 3.6.5. The Particle भर <i>bhar</i> .....         | 158 |
| 3.6.6. The Particle मात्र <i>ma:tr</i> .....     | 159 |
| 3.7. Connectives.....                            | 160 |
| 3.7.1. Mono-morphemic .....                      | 161 |
| 3.7.2. Poly-morphemic.....                       | 161 |
| 3.7.3. Phrasal.....                              | 161 |
| 3.8. Interjections.....                          | 162 |

#### 4. Syntax

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 4.1. Structure of Phrases .....                       | 165 |
| 4.1.1. Noun Phrase .....                              | 165 |
| 4.1.2. Postpositional Phrases.....                    | 171 |
| 4.1.3. Adjectival Phrases.....                        | 173 |
| 4.1.4. Adverbial Phrases .....                        | 176 |
| 4.2. Structure of Clauses .....                       | 179 |
| 4.2.1. Subordinate Clauses.....                       | 179 |
| 4.2.2. Noun Clauses .....                             | 180 |
| 4.2.2.1. Finite Noun Clauses .....                    | 181 |
| 4.2.2.1.1. The कि <i>ki</i> Complement Clauses.....   | 181 |
| 4.2.2.1.2. Direct and Indirect Speech.....            | 182 |
| 4.2.2.1.3. Non-finite Noun Clause .....               | 184 |
| 4.2.2.3. Relative Clauses.....                        | 187 |
| 4.2.3.1. Restrictive and Non-restrictive Clauses..... | 189 |
| 4.2.3.2. Non-finite Relative Clauses .....            | 194 |
| 4.2.3.3. Finite Relative Clauses.....                 | 195 |
| 4.2.4. Adverbial Clauses .....                        | 198 |
| 4.2.4.1. Adverbial Clauses of Time .....              | 198 |
| 4.2.4.2. Manner Clauses.....                          | 200 |
| 4.2.4.3. Purpose Clauses .....                        | 202 |
| 4.2.4.4. Cause Clauses .....                          | 203 |
| 4.2.4.5. Condition Clauses .....                      | 204 |
| 4.2.4.6. Concession Clauses.....                      | 205 |
| 4.2.4.7. Result Clauses .....                         | 206 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 4.3. Sentence Construction .....               | 207 |
| 4.3.1. Copular Sentences.....                  | 207 |
| 4.3.2. Verbal Sentences.....                   | 211 |
| 4.3.2.1. Direct Object .....                   | 213 |
| 4.3.2.2. Indirect Object .....                 | 214 |
| 4.3.2.3. Other Types of Verb Argument .....    | 215 |
| 4.3.3. Negation .....                          | 216 |
| 4.3.3.1. Sentential Negation .....             | 216 |
| 4.3.3.2. Constituent Negation .....            | 217 |
| 4.3.3.3. Double/Multiple Negation .....        | 220 |
| 4.3.3.4. Negation and Coordination .....       | 220 |
| 4.3.3.5. Negation and Subordination.....       | 221 |
| 4.3.4. Interrogative .....                     | 222 |
| 4.3.4.1. Yes-No Questions .....                | 222 |
| 4.3.4.1.1. Neutral Yes-No Questions .....      | 222 |
| 4.3.4.1.2. Leading Questions.....              | 225 |
| 4.3.4.2. Question-Word Questions.....          | 226 |
| 4.3.4.3. Echo-Questions .....                  | 246 |
| 4.3.4.3.1. Yes-No Echo-Questions.....          | 246 |
| 4.3.4.3.2. Question-Word Echo-Questions .....  | 248 |
| 4.3.4.4. Answers.....                          | 250 |
| 4.3.5. Imperatives.....                        | 254 |
| 4.3.5.1. Unmarked or True Imperatives .....    | 254 |
| 4.3.5.2. Prohibitive Imperatives .....         | 255 |
| 4.3.5.3. Degrees of Imperatives .....          | 257 |
| 4.3.6. Anaphora.....                           | 260 |
| 4.3.7. Reflexives .....                        | 263 |
| 4.3.8. Reciprocals.....                        | 269 |
| 4.3.9. Equatives.....                          | 271 |
| 4.3.10. Comparison .....                       | 274 |
| 4.3.11. Superlatives.....                      | 277 |
| 4.3.12. Coordination .....                     | 278 |
| 4.3.12.1. Coordination and Accompaniment ..... | 286 |
| 4.3.12.2. Structural Constraints.....          | 287 |

## **5. Lexicon**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 5.1. Animals, Birds and Insects.....      | 293 |
| 5.2. Flowers, Fruits, and Vegetables..... | 294 |
| 5.3. Jewels, Metals, and Minerals .....   | 296 |
| 5.4. Miscellaneous Items.....             | 296 |
| 5.5. Body Parts.....                      | 302 |
| 5.6. Occupations.....                     | 303 |

|                          |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| 5.7. Kinship Terms.....  | 305 |
| 5.8. Adjectives .....    | 307 |
| 5.9. Verbs.....          | 310 |
| 5.10. Adverbs .....      | 315 |
| 5.11. Conjunctions ..... | 317 |
| 5.12. Pronouns .....     | 317 |

## Preface

*Modern Hindi Grammar* aims at providing basic information on various aspects of Hindi phonology, morphology, and syntax along with their unique features or characteristics.

Hindi has a special status in India. It is spoken by the largest population in India. It is the official language of the Union of India and eleven state governments, including Delhi. It is taught as a second language in all the non-Hindi speaking states under the three-language formula. Under this formula, a child is supposed to learn his mother tongue, Hindi, and English. If a child's mother tongue is Hindi, (s)he is expected to learn an additional modern Indian language or a foreign language. Hindi is taught as a foreign language in a large number of countries throughout the world. Besides need-based language learning materials, there is a need for a pedagogically oriented grammar of this language. The present grammar aims to fulfill the need of second/foreign language learners of Hindi in India as well as other countries. A large number of Hindi speakers have settled in non-Hindi speaking states in India, or have migrated and settled abroad. The second generation of these migrants is fast losing contact with their mother tongue in the absence of its use in various domains of their day-to-day life in alien surroundings. They are looking for suitable language learning materials including pedagogically oriented grammars for maintaining the language among their children.

Hindi has a long tradition of grammars and grammatical literature. The existing grammars mentioned in the introduction as well as in references are either too old and do not describe modern spoken and written Hindi, or they are sketchy or too scholarly or detailed. They do not fulfill the needs of second and/or foreign language learners or those native speakers who want to maintain the language in an alien atmosphere.

This grammar is pedagogically oriented. It will be of special interest to Hindi language learners and teachers in different situations. It will also be of interest to linguists and researchers working in the area of language typology, and to general readers as well.

In *Modern Hindi Grammar* we have utilized simple terminology and provided suitable descriptions with tables for grammatical categories, phrases, and sentence types. The introduction gives a survey of the Hindi speaking area and the number of its speakers, its classification and dialects, Hindi-Urdu relationship, the status of Hindi and its use in administration, education and mass media, Hindi grammars, and the objectives of the present grammar. The phonology section describes segmental phonemes, suprasegmentals, and morphophonology. The morphology provides a description of different word classes: nouns, pronouns, adjectives, numerals, adverbs, particles, connectives, and interjections. It deals with inflectional as well as derivational morphology. The syntax describes the structure of phrases, sentence types, complex and compound constructions, special word order variations, and other intricate syntactic features. The lexicon presents a list of useful classified vocabulary which is useful for students and teachers of Hindi as well as general readers. This grammar emphasizes special features of Hindi that set it apart from other Indo-Aryan languages. In short, it will fulfill the needs of the basic language learner as well as provide useful information for the linguist and the general reader.

I would like to take this opportunity to thank Mr. Thomas Creamer, Director, Language Research Center (a division of McNeil Technologies) for asking me to write this grammar and for deciding to publish it. I would like to thank Prof. Anjani Kumar Sinha, and Prof. Kashi Wali for going through the first draft of it and for offering useful comments and suggestions. Finally, I would like to thank my colleagues at the Indian Institute of Language Studies for providing their assistance.

I hope students, researchers, teachers, and linguists will find this book useful.

Omkar N. Koul

## Abbreviations

|         |                        |       |                   |
|---------|------------------------|-------|-------------------|
| 1.      | first person           | NP    | noun phrase       |
| 2.      | second person          | obl   | oblique           |
| 3.      | third person           | part  | particle          |
| abl     | ablative case          | pass  | passive           |
| adv     | adverb                 | pl    | plural            |
| asp     | aspirated              | pol   | polite            |
| aux     | auxiliary              | poss  | possessive        |
| caus    | causative              | postp | postposition      |
| cond    | conditional            | pre   | presumptive       |
| cor     | correlative            | prox  | proximate         |
| cp      | conjunctive participle | psp   | past participle   |
| dat     | dative                 | ptc   | participle        |
| emp     | emphatic               | q     | question particle |
| erg     | ergative               | refl  | reflexive         |
| fut     | future                 | rel   | relative          |
| gen     | genitive case          | rem   | remote            |
| hon     | honorific              | sbj   | subjunctive mood  |
| imp     | imperative             | sg    | singular          |
| impf    | imperfective           | unas  | un aspirated      |
| inf     | infinitive             | VP    | verb phrase       |
| indef   | indefinite             | vd    | voiced            |
| ms      | masculine singular     | vl    | voiceless         |
| neg     | negative               | *     | ungrammatical     |
| nom     | nominative             |       |                   |
| non hon | non honorific          |       |                   |

## **References**

- Abbi, Anvita 1980. *Semantic Grammar of Hindi: A Study in Reduplication*. New Delhi: Bahri Publications.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1984. The conjunctive participle in Hindi-Urdu. In *International Journal of Dravidian Linguistics*, 13: 252-63.
- Agnihotri, Rama Kant 2007. *Hindi: An Essential Grammar*. London: Routledge.
- Bahl, Kali Charan 1967. *A Reference Grammar of Hindi*. Chicago: University of Chicago (mimeographed).
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1974. *Studies in the Semantic Structure of Hindi*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass.
- Bahri, U.S. ( ed.) 1981. *Topics in Hindi Linguistics*. vol. 1. New Delhi: Bahri Publications.
- Bhatia, Kailash Chandra 1964. Consonant Sequences in Standard Hindi. In *Indian Linguistics*, 25: 206-12.
- Bhatia, Tej K. 1987. *A History of the Hindi Grammatical Tradition: Hindi-Hindustani Grammar, Grammarians, History and Problems*. Leiden: E. J. Brill.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1993. *Punjabi: A Cognitive-Descriptive Grammar*. London: Routledge.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1995. *Negation in South Asian Languages*. Patiala: Indian Institute of Language Studies.
- Comrie, B. and N. Smith 1977. Lingua Descriptive Series Questionnaire. *Lingua* 42,1: 1-71. Special Issue.
- Das, Pradeep Kumar 2006. *Grammatical Agreement in Hindi-Urdu and its Major Variations*. Munich: Lincom Europa.
- Davison, Alice 2000. Lexical anaphors and pronouns in Hindi/Urdu. In Lust, Barbara C. et.al. (eds.) *Lexical Anaphors and Pronouns in Selected South Asian Languages*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Fairbanks, Gordon H. and Bal Govind Misra 1966. *Spoken and Written Hindi*. Ithaca: Cornell University Press.
- \_\_\_\_\_. and P.B. Pandit 1965. *Hindi: A Spoken Approach*. Poona: Deccan College.
- Gambhir, Surendra K. *Spoken Hindi-Urdu* 1978. Madison: University of Wisconsin, Center for South Asian Studies.
- Gumperz, John J. and June Rumery 1967. *Conversational Hindi-Urdu*. Devanagri edition by Ripley Moore and S.M. Jaiswal. Delhi: Radhakrishna Prakashan. 2 Volumes.
- Guru, Kamta Prasad 1920. *Hindi vyākaran*. Kashi: Lakshmi Narayan Press. (1962 edition).

- Hook, Peter Edwin 1974. *The Compound Verb in Hindi*. Ann Arbor: The University of Michigan.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1970. *Hindi Structures: An Intermediate Level*. Ann Arbor: The University of Michigan.
- Jagannanathan, V. R. 1981. *parayog aur prayog*. New Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Jagannathan, V.R. and Ujjal Singh Bahri 1973. *Introductory Course in Spoken Hindi: A Microwave Approach To Language Teaching* Chandigarh. Bahri Publications.
- Kachru, Yamuna and Rajeshwari Pandharipande 1983. *Intermediate Hindi*. Delhi. Motilal Banarsi das.
- Kachru, Yamuna 1966. *An Introduction to Hindi Syntax*. Urbana: The University of Illinois. (Mimeographed)
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1978. On relative clause formation in Hindi-Urdu. *Linguistics*, 207: 5-26.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1980. *Aspects of Hindi Grammar*. New Delhi: Manohar.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 2006. *Hindi*. Amsterdam: John Benjamin.
- Kelkar, Ashok R. 1968. *Studies in Hindi-Urdu I: Introduction and Word Phonology*. Poona: Deccan College.
- Kellog, S. H. 1876. *A Grammar of the Hindi Language*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul ( 3<sup>rd</sup> edition 1963).
- Klaiman, M. H. 1976. Topicalization and Relativization in Hindi. In *Indian Linguistics*, 37: 315-33.
- Koul, Omkar N. (ed.) 1982. *Topics in Hindi Linguistics* Vol 2. New Delhi: Bahri Publications.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1982. Coordinating Conjunctions in Hindi. In Koul, Omkar N. (ed.) *Topics in Hindi Linguistics* Vol 2.
- \_\_\_\_\_. (ed.) 1994. *Topics in Hindi Linguistics* Vol 3. New Delhi: Bahri Publications.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1994a. Use of Indian Languages in Administration. In Koul, Omkar N. (ed.) *Language Development and Administration*. New Delhi: Creative, 109-17.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1994b. Common Bases of Hindi and Urdu. In *Gaveshna* Vol. 63-64: 267-78.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1994c. *Hindi Phonetic Reader*. Patiala: Indian Institute of Language Studies.
- \_\_\_\_\_. (ed.) 1999a. *Topics in Hindi Linguistics* Vol 4. New Delhi: Bahri Publications.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1999b. The Use of Particles in Hindi. In Koul, Omkar N. (ed.) *Topics in Hindi Linguistics*, Vol.4, 61-75.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1999c. Interrogative Questions in Hindi. In Koul, Omkar N. (ed.), *Topics in Hindi Linguistics*, Vol.4, 165-187.

- \_\_\_\_\_. and Kashi Wali 2006. *Modern Kashmiri Grammar*. Springfield: Dunwoody Press.
- Masica, Colin P. 1976. *Defining a Linguistic Area: South Asia*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1981. Identified object marking in Hindi and other languages. In Koul, Omkar N (ed.) 1982.
- McGregor, R. S. 1995. *Outline of Hindi Grammar*. Oxford: Oxford University Press. (3<sup>rd</sup> edition).
- Mehrotra, R. C. 1980. *Hindi Phonology: A Synchronic Description of the Contemporary Standard*. Raipur: Bhashika Prakashan.
- Mehrotra, R.R. 1977. *Terms of Kinship, Modes of Address and Reference in Hindi*. A Study in Anthropological Linguistics. New Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass.
- Mitner, V. 1969. Hindi. In Sebeok (ed.) *Current Trends in Linguistics*, Vol 5 *Linguistics in South Asia*. The Hague: Mouton.
- Montaut, Annie 1994. Reflexivisation et focalisation en hind/oordou. In *Bulletin de la society Linguistique de Paris*, 89: 83-120.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 2005. A Grammar of Hindi. Munich: Lincom Europa.
- Misra, K.S. 1977. *Terms of Address and Pronominal Usage in Hindi*. A Sociolinguistic Study. New Delhi: Bahri Publications.
- Ohala, Manjri 1983. *Aspects of Hindi Phonology*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass.
- Porizka, Vincenc. 1963. *Hindi Language Course*. Prague. Statni pedagogicke nakladatelstvi (Revised edition 1972).
- Pray, Bruce 1970. *Topics in Hindi-Urdu Grammar*. Berkeley: Center for South Asian Studies, University of California.
- Rai, A. 1984. *A House Divided: The Origin and Development of Hindi/Hindavi*. Delhi: Oxford University Press.
- Rajgopalan, N.V. 1973. *Hindi ka bhashavaigyanik vyakaran*. Agra: Kendriya Hindi Sansthan.
- Schmidt, Ruth Laila 1999. *An Essential Grammar of Urdu*. London: Routledge.
- Schmidt, Ruth Laila 2003. Urdu. In Cardona, George and Dhanesh Jain (eds.) *The Indo-Aryan Languages*. London, New York: Routledge, 286-350.
- Shapiro, Michael C. 1989. *A Primer of Modern Standard Hindi*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass.
- Shapiro, Michael C. 2003. Hindi. In Cardona, George and Dhanesh Jain (eds.) *The Indo-Aryan Languages*. London, New York: Routledge, 250-285.

- Sharma, Aryendra 1958. *A Basic Grammar of Modern Hindi*. New Delhi: Central Hindi Directorate (Fifth Edition 1994).
- Shukla, Shaligram 2000. *Hindi Phonology*. Munich: Lincom Europa.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 2001. *Hindi Morphology*. Munich: Lincom Europa.
- Singh, K.S. (ed.) 1978. *Readings in Hindi-Urdu Linguistics*. New Delhi: National Publishing House.
- Singh, Rajendra and Rama Kant Agnihotri 1997. *Hindi Morphology: A Word-Based Description*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsi Dass.
- Singh, Suraj Bhan 1999. Concept of Semantic Field and Collocation in Hindi/Urdu Lexicography. In Koul, Omkar N. (ed.) *Topics in Hindi Linguistics*, Vol 4, 143-63.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 2003. *angrezi-hindi anuva:d vya:karaṇ* (English – Hindi Translation Grammar). Delhi: Prabhat Prakashan.
- Sinha, Anjani Kumar, 1973. Factivity and relations between main and subordinate clauses in Hindi. In *Papers from the Ninth Regional Meeting of the Chicago Linguistic Society*. Chicago: University of Chicago, Department of Linguistics, 351-58.
- Srivastava, R. N. 1968. Theory of monophonematics of aspirated phonemes of Hindi. *Acta Linguistica*, 363-73.
- Subbarao, K.V. 1984. *Complementation in Hindi Syntax*. New Delhi: Academic Publications.
- Upreti, M. L. 1964. *Hindi mē pratyay vica:r*. Agra: Vinod Book House.
- Vajpeyi, K. 1958. *Hindi shabdānushasan*. Kashi: Nagri Pracharni Sabha.
- Verma, M.K. 1971. *The Structure of Noun Phrase in English and Hindi*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsi Dass.
- Wali, Kashi and Omkar N Koul 1997. *Kashmiri: A Cognitive-Descriptive Grammar*. London: Routledge.



## **1. INTRODUCTION**

---

### **1. Introduction**

#### **1.1. Area and Its Speakers**

Hindi is an Indo-Aryan language (a branch of the Indo-European family of languages), spoken primarily in the states of Bihar, Chattisgarh, Delhi, Haryana, Himachal Pradesh, Jharkhand, Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan, Uttarakhand, and Uttar Pradesh in India. Besides being the official language of these states it is also the official language of government of India along with English. According to the 2001 census, it is spoken by 422,048,642 speakers which include the speakers of its various dialects and variations of speech grouped under Hindi. It is also spoken by a large number of people of Indian origin settled abroad.

#### **1.2. Dialects and Classification**

Hindi and Urdu languages have their origins in Khariboli spoken in areas around Delhi. Khariboli was adopted by the Afghans, Persians, and Turks as a common language of interaction with the local population during the period of Islamic invasions and the establishment of Muslim rule in the north of India between the eighth and tenth centuries AD. In time, it developed a variety called Urdu with significant borrowings from Arabic and Persian and that uses a Persian script. It was also known as *rexta* “mixed language.” As Urdu gained patronage in the Muslim courts and developed into a literature language, the variety used by the general population gradually replaced Sanskrit, literary Prakrits, and Apabhramas as the literary language. This latter variety looked to Sanskrit for linguistic borrowings and Sanskrit, Prakrits, and Apabhramas for literary conventions. It is this variety that became known as Hindi.

Hindi and Urdu have a common form known as Hindustani which is essentially a Hindi-Urdu mixed language. This was the variety that was adopted by Indian leaders as a symbol of national identity during the struggle for freedom. Hindi has been used as a literary language since the twelfth century. The development of prose, however, began only in the eighteenth century, which marks the emergence of Hindi as a full-fledged literary language.

## **1. INTRODUCTION**

---

Grierson (1906) has divided Hindi into two groups: Eastern Hindi and Western Hindi. Between the Eastern and the Western Prakrits there was an intermediate Prakrit called Ardhamagadhi. The modern representative of the corresponding Apabhramsa is Eastern Hindi and the Shaurasena Apabhramsa of the middle Doab is the parent of Western Hindi. In the Eastern group Grierson discusses three dialects: Awadhi, Bagheli, and Chattisgarhi. In the Western group he discusses five dialects: Hindustani, Braj Bhasha, Kanauji, Bundeli, and Bhojpuri. Eastern Hindi is bounded on the north by the language of the Nepal Himalaya and on the west by various dialects of Western Hindi, of which the principal are Kanauji and Bundeli. On the east, it is bounded by the Bhojpuri dialect of Bihari and by Oriya. On the South it meets forms of the Marathi language. Western Hindi extends to the foot of the Himalayas on the north, south to the Jamna valley, and occupies most of Bundelkhand and a part of central provinces on the east side.

The Hindi region is traditionally divided into two: Eastern Hindi and Western Hindi. The main dialects of Eastern Hindi are Avadhi, Bagheli and Chattisgarhi. The Western Hindi dialects are Haryanvi, Braj Bhasha, Bhundeli, Kanuji and Khariboli. The dialects spoken in the regions of Bihar (i.e., Maithili, Bhojpuri, Maghi etc.) in Rajasthan (i.e., Marwari, Jaipuri, Malvi etc.) and some dialects spoken in the northwestern areas of Uttar Pradesh, and Himachal Pradesh were kept away from the earlier classification. Now, all of these dialects are also covered under the term Hindi. The standard Hindi developed from the Khariboli has borrowed lexical items from Sanskrit and is the vehicle of all official literary and commercial communication. It is intelligible throughout the broad Hindi language region. Another literary style, Urdu, has also developed from Khariboli and it uses the Perso-Arabic script and borrows from Perso-Arabic sources.

### **1.3. Hindi – Urdu**

Historical and cultural processes and the linguistic affinity which exists in Indian languages led to the emergence of Hindi-Urdu or so-called Hindustani as the lingua-franca of major areas of India long before its freedom. In an earlier period, the languages of administration, Sanskrit in the case of the earliest Hindu kingdoms, Persian in the case of the Muslim dynasties, and English in the case of the British regime, have mostly remained confined to the elite.

## **1. INTRODUCTION**

---

Beginning with the invasion of Mohammed Ghori in the late 12<sup>th</sup> century AD, the foreign invaders settled down in India to rule. The Slave, Tughluq, Lodi, and Mughal dynasties used Persian in their administration, but they used the local language spoken in and around Delhi for communicating with the people for their day-to-day needs. This local language was a form of Apbhramsha, which eventually became Khariboli; they called this language Hindi - a language belonging to Hind. Thus, the Hindi language derived its name from the Persian towards the end of the 12<sup>th</sup> century or beginning of the 13<sup>th</sup> century. During the Mughal period, the word "Urdu" was derived from the Turkish word "Yurt" or "ordu" that meant "military encampment." This variety was distinguished on the basis of Perso-Arabic influence at the lexical level and was written in the Perso-Arabic script. Hindi-Urdu became the medium of communication between the Muslim rulers and the local people. The southern variety of the speech, best known as Dakhini, also became the medium of literature and socio-religious discourse. This variety is influenced by Dravidian languages as a result of language contact.

Due to a common structural basis, Hindi and Urdu continued to be treated as synonymous for centuries at least up to the period of Mirza Ghalib. Mirza Ghalib called his language "Hindi" on several occasions, though he used the Perso-Arabic script for writing it. He named one of his works "ode-e-Hindi" (perfume of Hindi). Primarily in the domain of different genres of literature, Hindi and Urdu started drifting away from each other not only in the use of two different scripts, but also in literary styles and vocabulary. Hindi started drawing more and more from Sanskrit, and Urdu from Persian and Arabic. The processes continue today.

During British rule, when English was adopted as the official language, local languages were assigned roles for certain functions at lower levels of administration. A competition started between the proponents or supporters of Hindi and those of Urdu for official recognition of their languages. In the first instance, Urdu was recognized by the British in the Northwest and Oudh, Bihar, and the Central Provinces in 1830 AD as the language of the courts. This was followed by the recognition accorded to Hindi in certain areas. Hindi and Urdu were involved in controversy and mutual competition for their recognition in various domains of education and administration. The mutual conflicts intensified at the beginning

## **1. INTRODUCTION**

---

of the 20<sup>th</sup> century. On the one hand, there were proponents of Hindi and Urdu who were eager to maintain separate linguistic identities, and, on the other hand, some national leaders wanted to develop Hindustani as a combined linguist identity on the basis of its use by the general population.

### **1.4. Linguistic Characteristics**

Hindi shares major linguistic characteristics with other Indo-Aryan languages. It has ten vowels. The length of vowels is phonemic. All vowels can be nasalized and nasalization is phonemic. The Hindi syllable contains a vowel as its nucleus, followed or preceded by consonants. Words usually have two or three syllables.

Nouns are inflected for number, gender and case. There are two numbers: singular and plural, two genders: masculine and feminine; and two cases: direct and oblique. Nouns are assigned one of the two genders. The gender of inanimate objects is not predictable from the form or meaning. Pronouns are inflected for number and case. Adjectives are of two types: declinable and indeclinable. The first type is uninflected for number, gender, and case, whereas the second type is not.

Verbs are inflected for person, number, gender, tense, mood, and aspect. There are three tenses: present, past, and future; three moods: imperative, indicative, and subjunctive; two aspects: imperfective and perfective. Hindi is a verb-final language.

Hindi is written in the Devanagari script which originated from Brahmi. The Devanagari script for Hindi is standardized, but certain minor variations still exist. In this grammar we are using Devanagari and Roman scripts for the data from the language.

### **1.5. Status**

As stated above, Hindi is the official language of the Union of India and ten states. It is spoken by the largest number of people in India. It is widely used in administration, education, and mass media.

The use of Hindi in administration at the Union level as well as in the Hindi speaking states is not free from problems (Koul 1994a). There are some serious gaps in the Official Language Policy (OLP),

## **1. INTRODUCTION**

---

and the rules and procedures which are being followed in its implementation. There are problems related to the development of its administrative register. The main problems related to the development of the administrative register are: (i) an artificial coinage of terminology, (ii) lack of standardization, and (iii) lack of coordination between various agencies and duplication of efforts. Problems related to its practical use include the lack of proper monitoring, lack of encouragement, and absence of strong political will.

The implementation of the OLP at the Union level has become the victim of political indecision, the attitude of its protagonists, the lack of will of the monitoring agencies, and the lack of adherence to the rules and regulations set up for it. Even after its continuous use in administration for more than sixty years, its development is still questioned by critics. There is a need to review the OLP, and the rules and procedures of its implementation to identify its problems and resolve them.

The Constitution of India adopted in 1950 provides for the use of Hindi in Devanagari script as the official language of the Union. Article 343 states:

The official language of the Union shall be Hindi in the Devanagari script. The form of numerals to be used for the official purpose of the Union shall be the international form of Indian numerals.

Article 351 provides a directive for the development of Hindi as follows:

It shall be the duty of the Union to promote the spread of the Hindi language, to develop it so that it may serve as a medium of expression for all the composite culture of India and to secure its enrichment by assimilating without interfering with its genius, the forms, style and expressions used in Hindustani and in the other languages of India specified in the Eighth Schedule, and by drawing, whenever necessary or desirable, its vocabulary primarily from Sanskrit and secondarily from other languages.

The Hindi language was supposed to replace English in 1965, fifteen years after the adoption of the Constitution of India. The early sixties witnessed resentment and agitation, primarily in the southern

## **1. INTRODUCTION**

---

states of India, regarding the replacement of English by Hindi. It was argued that Hindi was not developed enough to replace English in its administrative domain. Thus, the Official Language Act (OLA) was passed in 1963 providing for the continuation of English as an associate official language in the Union and also for its use in parliament for an indefinite period of time. The Act dealt with the setting-up of the Committee on Official Language, authorization of the Hindi translation of Central and State acts, optional use of Hindi in judgments of High courts, etc. The passing of the OLA was successful in achieving timely political gains, but it has not been in the interest of the development of Hindi and its use as the sole official language of the Union in the years to come.

The development of Hindi has become a complex concern for the Government of India. The development of Hindi is often linked to the development of other regional languages. The Ministry of Home Affairs (Government of India) Resolution (1968) made some important recommendations in this regard:

1. It is the duty of the Government of India to promote the spread of the Hindi language.
2. The development of Hindi as well as other regional languages is in the interest of the educational and cultural advancement of the country.
3. Efforts should be made to implement the Three-Language Formula.
4. Compulsory knowledge of Hindi or English should be essential for the public service of the Union.
5. Languages of the Eighth Schedule should be used as alternative media for examinations for all-India and higher Central services.

The Resolution adopted by the Ministry of Home Affairs has turned out to be merely a political policy statement. It was not followed by an action plan for the promotion or the spread of the Hindi language in a sustainable manner, although it was rightly realized that the development of Hindi and regional languages is necessary for the educational and cultural advancement of the country. No clear-cut strategies were framed for encouraging their use in education. It did not stop the mushrooming of competing English-medium private schools. Efforts were made to implement the Three-Language Formula, but, in the absence of proper monitoring of its

## **1. INTRODUCTION**

---

implementation, the Formula itself was diluted by different states, which resulted in its several versions. The Union Public Service Commission (UPSC) has made a provision for the use of languages of the Eighth Schedule as alternative media for competitive examinations, but, in the absence of adequate study materials in Hindi and regional languages, English continues to reign supreme as the only viable medium of examinations. Hindi is taught to the officers and staff of the Central service during their in-service training, but there is no urgency for its use as long as English continues as an associate official language. The Resolution makes important recommendations, but in the absence of an effective action plan and a sense of urgency on the part of the agencies involved, these recommendations are not implemented properly.

Hindi has a significant role in education. It is used as a subject of study as well as a medium of education in India from the primary level to the university level in all the Hindi-speaking states in India. It is also used as a medium for technical education at the lower levels. Various organizations at the Union and state levels are engaged in the preparation of textbooks and supplementary instructional materials in Hindi. English continues to be a preferred medium of instruction for science and technology at the higher levels.

Hindi has a prominent role in both electronic and print media. Hindi is widely used in programs on radio and television and in films. The language style of Hindi used in electronic media is close to the spoken variety of so-called Hindustani. In the print media, styles vary from high Hindi to that commonly understood by the Hindi-Urdu speech community. Whereas a few newspapers and periodicals prefer high Hindi or the Sanskritized style, others prefer to use the Urdu vocabulary. A large number of newspapers, periodicals, and journals are published in Hindi.

### **1.6. Grammars in Hindi**

Beginning in the eighteenth century, Hindi has a long tradition of grammatical literature which falls under the categories of (a) traditional grammars, (b) comparative and historical grammars, and (c) modern linguistic grammars. Bhatia (1987) provides a critical survey of the Hindi grammatical tradition. Traditional grammars describe the language using the traditional framework of Sanskrit

## **1. INTRODUCTION**

---

grammars. Comparative and historical grammars are mostly concerned with presenting the diachronic description of the grammatical features at different linguistic levels, especially phonology and morphology. They are useful for historical linguists and those interested in the comparative linguistics of Indo-Aryan languages.

Modern linguistic grammars in Hindi have been written with various objectives. Most of the modern linguistic grammars deal with some aspects of syntax at length and tend to apply the western theoretical models and raise theoretical issues. They are useful for linguists interested in theoretical discussions and are of little use to the language learners and teachers of Hindi or to general readers. It is important to mention a few grammars here.

Aryendra Sharma (1958) prepared first detailed descriptive grammar of modern Hindi in English. It has been revised and printed several times. Though written in a traditional format it presents a good description of Hindi. Different linguistic aspects of Hindi have been described in various dissertations and independent grammatical studies lately. I will specially mention three recent works: Moutaut (2005), Kachru (2006), and Agnihotri (2007) written with different objectives.

Moutaut (2005) provides a functional description of Hindi from a typological perspective. She provides a brief phonological outline of standard Hindi, its morphological analysis, an analysis of simple clauses and complex sentences. The final section provides representative features of standard Hindi, its various dialects with special reference to other neighboring Indo-Aryan languages. She presents review of the earlier works on the subject and uses examples from various written texts. It is a first linguistic grammar of Hindi written from a typological point of view and is useful for linguists working in the area of linguistic typology with special reference to Indo-Aryan languages.

Kachru (2006) describes the structure of modern Hindi keeping in view primarily the sociolinguistic context of language use. She provides description of sounds, devices of word formation, rules of phrases, and sentence constructions and conventions and practices of language use in spoken and written texts keeping in view recent linguistic theories. She also deals with the information and

## **1. INTRODUCTION**

---

discourse structure of the current use of Hindi. This is quite useful for linguists and language learners of Hindi in various situations.

Agnihotri (2007) is a practical reference guide to the core structures and linguistic features of Hindi. He provides brief description of various simple, compound and complex structures of Hindi. Word morphology, phonology, and issues related to Devanagari script are dealt with adequate examples. It is useful for linguists and students of Hindi for reference.

There is a scope for a pedagogically oriented grammar which provides essential information for the use of Hindi language learners as well as teachers. The present *Modern Hindi Grammar* is an effort in this direction. It is pedagogically oriented; utilizing simpler terminology and authentic data from standard spoken and written Hindi; providing useful descriptions and tables of grammatical categories as well as simple descriptions of phrases, and sentence types designed for the use of language learners, teachers of Hindi at various levels. The Phonology describes segmental phonemes (vowels, consonants), suprasegmentals (length, stress, intonation), and morphophonology (alternations, deletion and insertion, allomorphs). The Morphology provides descriptions of nominal morphology (noun inflection, gender, number, case, postpositions, pronouns, adjectives), verb morphology (types of verbs, verb inflections, voice, tense, aspect, mood, non-finite verb forms), and adverbs. The Syntax describes the structure of phrases, sentence types, complex and compound constructions, other syntactic constructions among other items. The Lexicon presents a classified vocabulary of Hindi under 12 sub-sections. It is followed by Index.



## **2. PHONOLOGY**

---

### **2. Phonology**

#### **2.1. Phonological Units (Segmental)**

The pulmonic egressive airstream mechanism is involved in the production of all phonetic segments of the language.

##### **2.1.1. Distinctive Segments**

The inventory of the distinctive segments of Hindi is as follows:

###### **Vowels**

|            | Front | Central | Back |
|------------|-------|---------|------|
| High       | i:    |         | u:   |
| Lower High | i     |         | u    |
| Mid        | e     |         | o    |
| Lower Mid  | ɛ     |         | ɔ    |
| Low        |       | a a:    |      |

The nasalization is phonemic in Hindi. It is represented by the nasal sign ~ written above the vowel signs as given below:

|            | Front | Central | Back |
|------------|-------|---------|------|
| High       | ĩ:    |         | ũ:   |
| Lower High | ĩ     |         | ũ    |
| Mid        | ẽ     |         | õ    |
| Lower Mid  | ɛ̃    |         | ɔ̃   |
| Low        |       | ã ã:    |      |

## 2. PHONOLOGY

---

### Consonants

|            | Bilabial | Labio-dental | Alveolar | Dental | Retroflex | Palatal | Velar | Glottal Stops |
|------------|----------|--------------|----------|--------|-----------|---------|-------|---------------|
| vl.unasp   | p        |              |          | t      | t̪        |         | k     |               |
| vl.asp     | ph       |              |          | th     | ʈh        |         | kh    |               |
| vd.unsap   | b        |              | d        | d̪     |           |         | g     |               |
| vd.asp     | bh       |              | dh       | ɖh     |           |         | gh    |               |
| Affricates |          |              |          |        |           |         |       |               |
| vl.unas    |          |              |          |        |           | c       |       |               |
| vl.asp     |          |              |          |        |           | ch      |       |               |
| Vd.unas    |          |              |          |        |           | j       |       |               |
| vd.asp     |          |              |          |        |           | jh      |       |               |
| Nasal      | m        |              | n        | ɳ      |           | ɳ       |       |               |
| Trill      |          |              | r        |        |           |         |       |               |
| Flap       |          |              |          |        |           |         |       |               |
| unasp      |          |              |          | r̪     |           |         |       |               |
| asp        |          |              |          | r̪h    |           |         |       |               |
| Lateral    |          |              | l        |        |           |         |       |               |
| Fricative  |          |              |          |        |           |         |       |               |
| vl         |          | f            | s        |        |           | ʂ       | x     |               |
| vd         |          |              | z        |        |           |         |       | h             |
| Semivowel  |          | v            |          |        | y         |         |       |               |

### 2.1.2. Description of Phonemes

#### 2.1.2.1. Vowels

##### Oral Vowels

There is a contrast in the position of the tongue, the height of the tongue, and the rounding of the lips in the articulation of vowels.

|      |                                    |       |  |
|------|------------------------------------|-------|--|
| /i:/ | (high front unrounded long vowel): |       |  |
| ਈਡ   | i:d                                | Eid   |  |
| ਨੀਰ  | ni:r                               | water |  |
| ਜਲਦੀ | jaldi:                             | hurry |  |

## 2. PHONOLOGY

---

|      |                                      |         |          |
|------|--------------------------------------|---------|----------|
| /i/  | (high front unrounded short vowel):  |         |          |
|      | इमारत                                | ima:rat | building |
|      | गिरना                                | girna:  | to fall  |
|      | पति                                  | pati    | husband  |
| /e/  | (mid front unrounded long vowel):    |         |          |
|      | एक                                   | ek      | one      |
|      | रेत                                  | ret     | sand     |
|      | जूते                                 | ju:te   | shoes    |
| /a/  | (low central unrounded short vowel): |         |          |
|      | अगर                                  | agar    | if       |
|      | पर                                   | par     | but      |
|      | न                                    | na      | no       |
| /a:/ | (low central unrounded long vowel):  |         |          |
|      | आम                                   | a:m     | mango    |
|      | आराम                                 | a:ra:m  | rest     |
|      | अच्छा                                | accha:  | good     |
| /u/  | (high back rounded short vowel):     |         |          |
|      | उठना                                 | uṭhna:  | to rise  |
|      | पुत्र                                | putr    | son      |
|      | किंतु                                | kintu   | but      |
| /u:/ | (high back rounded long vowel):      |         |          |
|      | ऊन                                   | u:n     | wool     |
|      | सूद                                  | su:d    | interest |
|      | भालू                                 | bha:lu: | bear     |
| /o/  | (mid back rounded long vowel):       |         |          |
|      | ओस                                   | os      | dew      |
|      | रोटी                                 | roṭi:   | bread    |
|      | दो                                   | do      | two      |
| /ɛ/  | (lower mid unrounded front vowel)    |         |          |
|      | ऐनक                                  | ɛnak    | mirror   |
|      | गैर                                  | gɛr     | stranger |
|      | लै                                   | lɛ      | tune     |
| /ɔ/  | (lower mid rounded back vowel)       |         |          |
|      | औरत                                  | ɔrat    | woman    |
|      | दौलत                                 | dɔlat   | wealth   |
|      | सौ                                   | sɔ      | hundred  |

## 2. PHONOLOGY

---

### Nasal Vowels

Nasalization is phonemic in Hindi. All the vowels can be nasalized.

|      |        |          |             |
|------|--------|----------|-------------|
| /ĩ/  | इंच    | ĩc       | inch        |
|      | पिंजरा | pĩjra:   | cage        |
| /ĩ:/ | इँट    | ĩ:t      | brick       |
|      | सिंचना | sĩ:cna:  | to irrigate |
|      | नहीं   | nahĩ:    | no          |
| /ẽ/  | भेट    | bhẽt     | meeting     |
|      | मे     | mẽ       | in          |
| /ã/  | अँगूठा | ãgu:tha: | thumb       |
|      | ठड़    | thãd     | cold        |
| /ã:/ | आँगन   | ã:gan    | courtyard   |
|      | माँग   | mã:g     | demand      |
|      | माँ    | mã:      | mother      |
| /ũ/  | उँस    | ũs       | ounce       |
|      | मुँह   | mûh      | face        |
| /ũ:/ | ऊँट    | ũ:t      | camel       |
|      | सूखना  | sũ:ghna: | to smell    |
|      | जूँ    | jũ:      | louse       |
| /õ/  | ओँठ    | õth      | lip         |
|      | गोँद   | gõd      | gum         |
|      | सरसों  | sarsõ    | mustard     |
| /ẽ/  | ऐठना   | ẽ:thna:  | to tighten  |
|      | भेस    | bhẽs     | buffalo     |
|      | मे     | mẽ       | I           |
| /õ/  | ओँथा   | õdha:    | upside down |
|      | चौंतीस | cõti:s   | thiry-four  |
|      | भौं    | bhõ      | eyebrow     |

### 2.1.2.2. Consonants

Consonants are classified into different groups on the basis of their manner and place of articulation. Examples of phonemic consonantal segments of Hindi are presented in minimal or near minimal pairs. Non-phonemic phonetic segments are also exemplified. The examples given below represent their phonetic transcription.

## 2. PHONOLOGY

---

### **Stops and Affricates**

In the production of stops, air coming out of the lungs is stopped at the point of articulation and then released with plosion. Stops occur at initial, medial, and final positions of words.

|      |   |           |            |
|------|---|-----------|------------|
| /p/  | (voiceless unaspirated bilabial stop):  |           |            |
|      | पल                                      | pal       | moment     |
|      | कपड़ा                                   | kapڑा:    | cloth      |
|      | साँप                                    | sã:p      | snake      |
| /ph/ | (voiceless aspirated bilabial stop):    |           |            |
|      | फल                                      | phal      | fruit      |
|      | सफल                                     | saphal    | successful |
|      | साफ                                     | sa:ph     | clean      |
| /b/  | (voiced unaspirated bilabial stop):     |           |            |
|      | बल                                      | bal       | strength   |
|      | अंबर                                    | ambar     | sky        |
|      | सब                                      | sab       | all        |
| /bh/ | (voiced aspirated bilabial stop):       |           |            |
|      | भालू                                    | bha:lu:   | bear       |
|      | सभा                                     | sabha:    | meeting    |
|      | लाभ                                     | la:bh     | profit     |
| /t/  | (voiceless unaspirated dental stop):    |           |            |
|      | तार                                     | ta:r      | wire       |
|      | कातना                                   | ka:tña:   | to spin    |
|      | रात                                     | ra:t      | night      |
| /th/ | (voiceless aspirated dental stop):      |           |            |
|      | थाली                                    | tha:li:   | palate     |
|      | हाथी                                    | ha:thi:   | elephant   |
|      | हाथ                                     | ha:th     | hand       |
| /d/  | (voiced unaspirated dental stop):       |           |            |
|      | दरवाजा                                  | darva:za: | door       |
|      | वर्दी                                   | vardi:    | uniform    |
|      | बंद                                     | band      | closed     |
| /dh/ | (voiced aspirated dental stop):         |           |            |
|      | धन                                      | dhan      | wealth     |
|      | आधा                                     | a:dha:    | half       |
|      | दूध                                     | du:dh     | milk       |
| /ʈ/  | (voiceless unaspirated retroflex stop): |           |            |
|      | टोकरी                                   | ʈokri:    | basket     |

## 2. PHONOLOGY

---

|      |                                       |          |          |
|------|---------------------------------------|----------|----------|
|      | काटना                                 | ka:tña:  | to cut   |
|      | कोट                                   | koṭ      | coat     |
| /ʈh/ | (voiceless aspirated retroflex stop): |          |          |
|      | ठग                                    | ʈʰag     | cheat    |
|      | मिठाई                                 | miṭha:i: | sweets   |
|      | आठ                                    | a:ʈh     | eight    |
| /ɖ/  | (voiced unaspirated retroflex stop):  |          |          |
|      | झाली                                  | ɖa:li:   | branch   |
|      | निढर                                  | niḍar    | fearless |
|      | साँड                                  | sã:d     | bull     |
| /ɖh/ | (voiced aspirated retroflex stop):    |          |          |
|      | ढोल                                   | ɖhol     | drum     |
|      | गढा                                   | gadha:   | ditch    |
| /k/  | (voiceless unaspirated velar stop):   |          |          |
|      | कान                                   | ka:n     | ear      |
|      | लकड़ी                                 | lakṛi:   | wood     |
|      | नाक                                   | na:k     | nose     |
| /kh/ | (voiceless aspirated velar stop):     |          |          |
|      | खोदना                                 | khodna:  | to dig   |
|      | देखना                                 | dekhna:  | to see   |
|      | राख्ना                                | ra:kh    | ashes    |
| /g/  | (voiced unaspirated velar stop):      |          |          |
|      | गर्दन                                 | gardan   | neck     |
|      | अगर                                   | agar     | if       |
|      | आग                                    | a:g      | fire     |
| /gh/ | (voiced aspirated velar stop):        |          |          |
|      | घर                                    | ghar     | home     |
|      | सूँघना                                | sū:ghna: | to smell |
|      | बाघ                                   | ba:gh    | tiger    |

In the production of affricates, air coming out of the lungs passes with friction when the articulator is released gradually. Affricates occur in the initial, medial and final positions of words.

|      |  |        |       |
|------|--|--------|-------|
| /c/  | (voiceless unaspirated palatal stop):    |        |       |
|      | चार                                      | ca:r   | four  |
|      | बच्चा                                    | bacca: | child |
|      | काच                                      | kā:c   | glass |
| /ch/ | (voiceless aspirated palatal affricate): |        |       |
|      | छे                                       | che    | six   |

## 2. PHONOLOGY

---

|      |   |         |            |
|------|---|---------|------------|
|      | ਮਛਲੀ                                    | machli: | fish       |
|      | ਕੁਛ                                     | kuch    | some       |
| /j/  | (voiced unaspirated palatal affricate): |         |            |
|      | ਜਾਨ                                     | ja:n    | life       |
|      | ਗਾਜਰ                                    | ga:jar  | carrot     |
|      | ਤਾਜ                                     | ta:j    | crown      |
| /jh/ | (voiced aspirated palatal affricate):   |         |            |
|      | ਝੰਡਾ                                    | jhāḍa:  | flag       |
|      | ਸੁਜ਼ਾਵ                                  | sujha:v | suggestion |
|      | ਸਾੱਝਾ                                   | sā:jh   | evening    |

### Fricatives

There are alveolar and glottal fricatives. They occur at all positions.

|     |                                    |         |             |
|-----|------------------------------------|---------|-------------|
| /f/ | (voiceless labio-dental fricative) |         |             |
|     | ਫਾਰਜ਼                              | farz    | duty        |
|     | ਨਫਰਤ                               | nafrat  | dislike     |
|     | ਸਿਰਫ                               | sirf    | only        |
| /s/ | (voiceless alveolar fricative):    |         |             |
|     | ਸਾਤ                                | sa:t    | seven       |
|     | ਸਸਤਾ                               | sasta:  | cheap       |
|     | ਦਸ                                 | das     | ten         |
| /z/ | (voiced alveolar fricative):       |         |             |
|     | ਜਵਾਨ                               | zaba:n  | language    |
|     | ਬਾਜ਼ਾਰ                             | ba:za:r | market      |
|     | ਗਜ਼                                | gaz     | yard        |
| /š/ | (voiceless alveolar fricative):    |         |             |
|     | ਸ਼ਕ                                 | šak     | suspicion   |
|     | ਆਸ਼ਾ                               | a:ša:   | hope        |
|     | ਨਾਸ਼                                | na:š    | destruction |
| /x/ | (voiceless velar fricative):       |         |             |
|     | ਖ਼ਬਰ                               | xabar   | news        |
|     | ਅਖ਼ਬਾਰ                             | axba:r  | newspaper   |
|     | ਸ਼ਾਖ਼                              | ša:x    | branch      |
| /h/ | (voiceless glottal fricative):     |         |             |
|     | ਹਾਥੀ                               | ha:thi: | elephant    |
|     | ਵਹਾਰ                               | baha:r  | spring      |
|     | ਗਹ                                 | ra:h    | way         |

## **2. PHONOLOGY**

---

### **Nasals**

There are bilabial, alveolar, and velar nasals. The velar nasal occurs in medial and final positions only.

| /m/ | (voiced bilabial nasal): |         |          |
|-----|--------------------------|---------|----------|
|     | माथा                     | ma:tha: | forehead |
|     | कमरा                     | kamra:  | room     |
|     | आराम                     | a:ra:m  | rest     |
| /n/ | (voiced alveolar nasal): |         |          |
|     | नाक                      | na:k    | nose     |
|     | लाना                     | la:na:  | to bring |
|     | धान                      | dha:n   | paddy    |
| /ɳ/ | (voiced retroflex nasal) |         |          |
|     | अणु                      | anu     | atom     |
|     | प्राण                    | pra:ɳ   | life     |
| /ɳ/ | (voiced velar nasal):    |         |          |
|     | रंगना                    | raɳna:  | to dye   |
|     | रंग                      | raɳ     | color    |

### **Trill**

There is a voiced alveolar trill which occurs in all positions.

| /r/ | (voiced alveolar trill): |        |      |
|-----|--------------------------|--------|------|
|     | रस्सी                    | rassi: | rope |
|     | नर्म                     | narm   | soft |
|     | तार                      | ta:r   | wire |

### **Flaps**

| /ɾ/  | (voiced unaspirated retroflex flap): |         |         |
|------|--------------------------------------|---------|---------|
|      | सड़क                                 | sar;k   | road    |
|      | भीड़                                 | bhi:t   | crowd   |
| /ɾh/ | (voiced aspirated retroflex flap):   |         |         |
|      | पढ़ना                                | parhna: | to read |
|      | धाढ़                                 | dha:ṛh  | jaw     |

## 2. PHONOLOGY

---

### Lateral

There is a voiced alveolar lateral which occurs in all positions.

| /l/ | (voiced alveolar lateral): |       |        |
|-----|----------------------------|-------|--------|
|     | लोग                        | log   | people |
|     | कला                        | kala: | art    |
|     | जाल                        | ja:l  | net    |

### Semi-vowels

| /v/ | (voiced labio-dental semi-vowel): |         |          |
|-----|-----------------------------------|---------|----------|
|     | वादा                              | va:da:  | promise  |
|     | दवाई                              | dava:i: | medicine |
|     | नाव                               | na:v    | boat     |
| /y/ | (voiced palatal semi-vowel):      |         |          |
|     | याद                               | ya:d    | memory   |
|     | साया                              | sa:ya:  | shade    |
|     | राय                               | ra:y    | opinion  |

### 2.1.2.3. Distribution of Phonemes and Allophones

The retroflex voiced aspirated stop  $\ddot{\text{d}}\text{h}$  /dh/ does not occur in the final position of words. The velar nasal  $\ddot{\text{n}}$  /ɳ/, and the retroflex flaps  $\ddot{\text{r}}$  /ṛ/ and  $\ddot{\text{rh}}$  /ṛh/ do not occur in the word-initial positions.

The nasal phoneme न /n/ has dental, retroflex, palatal, and velar allophones: न [n], ण [ɳ], and र [ɾ]. Palatal and velar nasals are not assigned any phonemic status in Hindi. Phonetically they are pronounced in the speech only when they are followed by palatal and velar voiced consonant phonemes. They occur before homorganic voiced consonants.

## **2. PHONOLOGY**

---

### **2.2. Phonotactics**

#### **2.2.1. Vowel Sequences**

In Hindi only two vowel sequences are permissible.

|     |      |       |          |
|-----|------|-------|----------|
| ai: | नाई  | nai:  | new      |
| ia: | दिआ  | dia:  | lamp     |
| ie  | चलिए | calie | let's go |
| ui: | सुई  | sui:  | needle   |
| uā: | कुँआ | kuā:  | well     |
| oi: | रोई  | roi:  | wept     |
| oe  | खोए  | khoe  | lost     |

#### **2.2.2. Consonant Clusters**

##### **2.2.2.1. Word-initial Consonant Clusters**

Word-initial consonant clusters are not as frequent as the word-medial consonant clusters.

|     |         |          |                      |
|-----|---------|----------|----------------------|
| ky  | क्या    | kya:     | what                 |
| kr  | क्रम    | kram     | order                |
| gy  | ग्यारह  | gya:rah  | eleven               |
| gr  | ग्रंथ   | granth   | book                 |
| jy  | ज्येष्ठ | jyeṣṭh   | elder                |
| jv  | ज्वर    | jvar     | fever                |
| tr  | ट्रेन   | tren     | train                |
| dy  | द्योडा  | dyoda:   | two and a half times |
| dr  | द्रामा  | dra:ma:  | drama                |
| ty  | त्याग   | tya:g    | sacrifice            |
| tv  | त्वचा   | tvaca:   | skin                 |
| dhy | ध्यान   | dhya:n   | attention            |
| py  | प्यार   | pya:r    | love                 |
| pr  | पृथ्वी  | prithvi: | earth                |
| br  | ब्रह्मा | bramha:  | Brahma               |
| by  | व्याह   | bya:h    | marriage             |
| šy  | श्याम   | šya:m    | Shyam                |
| śr  | श्रम    | śram     | labor                |
| sv  | श्वास   | śva:s    | breath               |

## 2. PHONOLOGY

---

|    |         |         |         |
|----|---------|---------|---------|
| sy | स्यार   | sya:r   | jackal  |
| zy | ज्यादा  | zya:da: | more    |
| nr | नृत्य   | nraty   | dance   |
| ny | न्याय   | nya:y   | justice |
| mr | मृग     | mrig    | deer    |
| vy | व्यक्ति | vyakti  | person  |
| hr | ह्रदय   | hriday  | heart   |

Initial three-consonant clusters

|     |         |         |             |
|-----|---------|---------|-------------|
| str | स्त्री  | stri:   | woman       |
| skr | स्क्रीन | skri:n  | screen      |
| smr | स्मृति  | smriti: | remembrance |

### 2.2.2.2. Word-medial Consonant Clusters

Consonant clusters occur frequently in the medial position. Most of these clusters are formed across syllable or morpheme boundaries. There are some restrictions in the formation of consonant clusters as follows: (i) two aspirated consonants do not combine to form a consonant cluster, (ii) /ch/ is not combined to form a consonant cluster, (iii) /d/ does not occur as the second member of a consonant cluster. Examples of the consonant clusters are given below.

|    |         |         |                         |
|----|---------|---------|-------------------------|
| pt | कप्तान  | kapta:n | captain                 |
| ps | वापसी   | va:psi: | return                  |
| fs | अफसोस   | afsos   | sorry                   |
| fl | गफ्तत   | gaflat  | mistake                 |
| fr | नफ्रत   | nafrat  | hate                    |
| fv | अफ्वा   | afva:   | rumor                   |
| bn | शब्नम   | śabnam  | dew                     |
| bz | सब्ज़ी  | sabzi:  | vegetable               |
| tm | आत्मा   | a:tma:  | soul                    |
| dt | बदतर    | badtar  | very bad                |
| dm | बदमाश   | badma:š | rouge                   |
| kb | मक्कुल  | makbu:l | popular                 |
| kt | मक्ताब  | maktab  | school                  |
| kṭ | अक्टर   | akṭar   | actor                   |
| kd | हक्कदार | hakda:r | rightful owner/entitled |
| kr | इकरार   | ikra:r  | acceptance              |

## 2. PHONOLOGY

---

|     |          |            |                         |
|-----|----------|------------|-------------------------|
| ks  | नुक्सान  | nuksa:n    | loss                    |
| gv  | भगवान    | bhagva:n   | God                     |
| ck  | अचकन     | ackan      | a long button-up coat   |
| mb  | अंबर     | ambar      | sky                     |
| md  | नम्दा    | namda:     | a carpet                |
| mjh | समझना    | samjhna:   | to understand           |
| mv  | हम्बार   | hamva:r    | smooth                  |
| nd  | अंदर     | andar      | inside                  |
| nṭ  | गंटी     | ganṭi:     | a bell                  |
| nd̪ | ठँड़ा    | thāḍa:     | cold                    |
| nkh | पंखा     | pākha:     | fan                     |
| nj  | रंजिश    | rājiš      | anger                   |
| ns  | इंसाफ    | insa:ph    | justice                 |
| nz  | मंज़िल   | manzil     | destination             |
| nv  | जानवर    | ja:nvar    | bird                    |
| sp  | अस्पताल  | aspata:l   | hospital                |
| sb  | कस्बा    | kasba:     | town                    |
| st  | सस्ता    | sasta:     | cheap                   |
| sd  | हस्ती    | hasdi:     | jealous                 |
| sv  | तस्वीर   | tasvi:r    | picture                 |
| št  | कुश्ती   | kušti:     | wrestling               |
| šm  | दुश्मन   | dušman     | enemy                   |
| šv  | रिश्वत   | rišvat     | bribe                   |
| lt  | गल्ती    | galti:     | mistake                 |
| lṭ  | उल्टा    | ulṭa:      | opposite                |
| lk  | हल्का    | halka:     | light in weight         |
| lm  | फिल्मी   | filmi:     | related to film         |
| ls  | आल्सी    | a:lsi:     | lethargic               |
| lz  | मुल्ज़िम | mulzim     | accused                 |
| rb  | गुर्वत   | gurbat     | poverty                 |
| rd  | गर्दन    | gardan     | neck                    |
| rx  | कारख़ाना | ka:rxa:na: | factory                 |
| rz  | मर्ज़ी   | marzi:     | consent                 |
| rh  | सरहद     | sarhad     | frontier                |
| rv  | दरवाज़ा  | darva:za:  | door                    |
| zm  | आज़माना  | a:zma:na:  | to try                  |
| hb  | रहवर     | rahbar     | guide                   |
| ht  | मोहताज   | mohta:j    | dependent               |
| hs  | तहसील    | tahsi:l    | tehsil ( subdivision)   |
| hl  | मोहल्ला  | mohlla:    | mohalla (dwelling ward) |

## 2. PHONOLOGY

---

|    |        |          |          |
|----|--------|----------|----------|
| yd | पायदार | pa:yda:r | strong   |
| yv | पयवंद  | payvand  | grafting |

Medial three consonant clusters

|      |           |             |                   |
|------|-----------|-------------|-------------------|
| mjhñ | समझना     | samjhna:    | to understand     |
| pgr  | उपग्रह    | upgrah      | satellite         |
| tpr  | उत्पोक्ष  | utprokš     | metaphor          |
| tthr | पत्थरीला  | patthri:la: | stony             |
| cct  | उच्चता    | uccta:      | height            |
| kšp  | पक्षपात   | pakšpa:t    | partiality        |
| jjv  | उज्ज्वल   | ujjval      | bright            |
| ndr  | अन्दरुनी  | andru:ni:   | internal          |
| ndhk | अंधकार    | andhka:r    | darkness          |
| ndg  | बंदगी     | bandgi:     | worship           |
| nsk  | संस्कार   | sanska:r    | rites             |
| ndn  | बंदना     | vandna:     | prayer            |
| nyv  | धन्यवाद   | dhanyva:d   | thanks            |
| rtk  | नर्तकी    | nartki:     | dancer (f)        |
| rkht | मूर्खता   | mu:rkhta:   | foolishness       |
| rmc  | कर्मचारी  | karmca:ri   | worker            |
| ršn  | दर्शनीय   | daršni:y    | worth seeing      |
| rvj  | सार्वजनिक | sa:rvjanik  | public            |
| syt  | सदस्यता   | sadasyta:   | membership        |
| stm  | अस्थमा    | asthma:     | breathing problem |
| štr  | राष्ट्रीय | ra:štri:y   | national          |

Medial four-consonant clusters

|      |            |             |              |
|------|------------|-------------|--------------|
| ntrt | स्वतंत्रता | svatantrta: | independence |
| ndrv | पंद्रहवाँ  | pandhrva:   | fifteenth    |

### 2.2.2.3. Word-final Consonant Clusters

Consonant clusters occur less frequently in the word-final position.

|    |        |       |        |
|----|--------|-------|--------|
| pp | गप्प   | gapp  | gossip |
| pn | स्वप्न | svapn | dream  |
| tm | ख़त्म  | xatm  | finish |
| tn | यत्न   | yatn  | try    |

## 2. PHONOLOGY

---

|     |        |        |              |
|-----|--------|--------|--------------|
| t̪h | लट्ठ   | lat̪h  | stick        |
| cc  | उच्च   | ucc    | high         |
| cch | स्वच्छ | svacch | clean        |
| kt  | रक्त   | rakt   | blood        |
| mp  | लम्प   | lamp   | lamp         |
| nt  | सन्त   | sant   | saint        |
| nk  | बंक    | bank   | bank         |
| nkh | शंख    | śankh  | conch        |
| st  | मस्त   | mast   | carefree     |
| śt  | गःत    | gaśt   | take a round |
| śt̪ | कष्ट   | kaśt̪  | trouble      |
| rth | अर्थ   | arth   | meaning      |
| rkh | मूर्ख  | mu:rkh | fool         |

Final three-consonant clusters

|     |        |       |             |
|-----|--------|-------|-------------|
| ntr | मन्त्र | mantr | hymn        |
| ndr | इंद्र  | indr  | name of God |
| str | अस्त्र | astr  | weapon      |

### 2.2.3. Syllable Structure

Hindi has a (C)(C)V(C)(C) syllable structure. The assignment of the medial units to syllables does not depend on morphological structure. The first consonant of the medial cluster is assigned to the preceding syllable and the remaining elements of the unit to the following syllable. In the following examples, the syllable boundary is marked with [+] sign.

|           |        |         |        |           |
|-----------|--------|---------|--------|-----------|
| नक् + शा  | नक्शा  | nak+śa: | nakśa: | map       |
| सुन् + दर | सुंदर  | sun+dar | sundar | beautiful |
| किस् + मत | किस्मत | kis+mat | kismat | fate      |

The vowel-initial syllables are found only in the initial position of words.

|       |         |           |
|-------|---------|-----------|
| आकाश  | a:ka:ś  | sky       |
| अमृत  | amrit   | nectar    |
| इमारत | ima:rat | building  |
| इलाज  | ila:j   | treatment |

## 2. PHONOLOGY

---

There are different types of syllables.

| Monosyllable:    |              |             |
|------------------|--------------|-------------|
| माँ              | mā:          | mother      |
| चाय              | ca:y         | tea         |
| घर               | ghar         | house       |
|                  |              |             |
| Di-syllable:     |              |             |
| फायदा            | fa:idā:      | profit      |
| शोला             | śola:        | flame       |
| कागज़            | ka:gaz       | paper       |
|                  |              |             |
| Tri-syllable:    |              |             |
| नसीयत            | nasi:hat     | advice      |
| हिरासत           | hira:sat     | arrest      |
| हकीकत            | haki:kat     | fact        |
|                  |              |             |
| Quadra-syllable: |              |             |
| हिंदुस्तानी      | hindusta:ni: | Indian      |
| मुकाबला          | muka:bila:   | competition |
| इसानियत          | insa:niyat   | humanity    |

### 2.3. Suprasegmental Features

Nasalization, length, stress, intonation, and juncture are suprasegmental features.

#### 2.3.1. Nasalization

Nasalization is an important suprasegmental feature in Hindi. All the vowels can be nasalized. Nasalization is distinctive so it has phonemic status.

|      |        |               |       |        |        |
|------|--------|---------------|-------|--------|--------|
| सास  | sa:s   | mother-in-law | साँस  | sā:s   | breath |
| काटा | ka:ṭa: | cut           | काँटा | kā:ṭa: | thorn  |
| पूछ  | pu:ch  | ask           | पूँछ  | pū:ch  | tail   |
| गोद  | god    | lap           | गोंद  | gōd    | gum    |
| थी   | thi:   | was           | थीं   | thī:   | were   |

## **2. PHONOLOGY**

---

### **2.3.2. Length**

Length is phonemic in Hindi. There are three pairs of short and long vowels: /i/ and /i:/; /a/ and /a:/; /u/ and /u:/. The following minimal pairs illustrate the contrast in the length of these vowels.

|     |     |            |     |      |         |
|-----|-----|------------|-----|------|---------|
| मिल | mil | mix        | मील | mi:l | mile    |
| दस  | das | ten        | दास | da:s | servant |
| उन  | un  | they (obl) | ऊन  | u:n  | wool    |

### **2.3.3. Stress**

Stress is not a distinctive feature of Hindi; it is not in phonemic contrast. Hindi is a syllable-timed language, sometimes individual words are stressed for emphasis only. Usually, the syllable preceding the consonant cluster gets stress.

|        |        |              |
|--------|--------|--------------|
| बुद्धि | buddhi | intelligence |
| सत्य   | saty   | truth        |

The initial cluster of the word also gets stress.

|          |          |         |
|----------|----------|---------|
| प्रेम    | prem     | love    |
| स्पष्टता | spašṭta: | clarity |

In di-syllabic words where both syllables have long or short vowels, the first syllable is stressed.

|       |         |        |
|-------|---------|--------|
| अक्सर | aksar   | always |
| अंदर  | andar   | inside |
| आकार  | a:ka:r  | figure |
| आसमान | a:sma:n | sky    |

In di-syllable words wherein the first syllable contains low front or back vowels, the first syllable is stressed.

|      |       |          |
|------|-------|----------|
| फौजी | fɔji: | soldier  |
| कैदी | kədi: | prisoner |

## 2. PHONOLOGY

---

The second syllable is stressed when the first syllable has a short vowel and the second has a long vowel.

|       |        |      |
|-------|--------|------|
| नसीब  | nasi:b | fate |
| किताब | kita:b | book |

In tri-syllable words, the first syllable is stressed if the first syllable has a long vowel, the second has a short vowel, and the third has a long vowel.

|        |           |           |
|--------|-----------|-----------|
| बेहया  | behaya:   | shameless |
| बेवकूफ | bevaku:ph | stupid    |

The last syllable is stressed if the first syllable has a short vowel and the last two have long vowels.

|             |            |       |
|-------------|------------|-------|
| हिन्दुस्तान | hindusta:n | India |
| बनजारा      | banja:ra:  | nomad |

In words of more than three syllables, the stress is always on the penultimate syllable.

|         |              |               |
|---------|--------------|---------------|
| समझदारी | samajhda:ri: | understanding |
|---------|--------------|---------------|

### 2.3.4. Intonation

There are four major types of intonational patterns: (1) high-fall, (2) high-rise, (3) rise-and-fall, (4) mid-level. Intonations have syntactic rather than emotional content. Statements have a high-fall intonation pattern. Intonation peaks are generally positioned on the penultimate word or on the negative particle if there is one.

1. वह किताब पढ़ रहा है।  
*vah kita:b par̥h raha: hε.*  
he book read-pr is  
He is reading a book.
  
2. कागज़ अलमारी में नहीं है।  
*ka:gaz alma:ri: mē nahī: hε*  
papers almirah in neg are  
The papers are not in the almirah.

## **2. PHONOLOGY**

---

Yes-no questions and tag questions have a high-rise intonation.

3. क्या वह कल आया?  
*kya: vah kal a:ya:?*  
Q he yesterday came-Q  
Did he come yesterday?

Information questions have a rise-and-fall intonation. The rise in intonation is registered on the question word and the fall is attained gradually.

4. आप कब बाजार गए?  
*a:p kab ba:za:r gaye?*  
you when market went  
When did you go to the market?
5. मोहन किससे मिला?  
*mohan kisse mila:?*  
Mohan who-dat met-3s  
Who did Mohan meet?

Commands generally follow the mid-level intonational pattern.

6. दरवाजा बंद करो।  
*darva:za: band karo.*  
door close do-imp  
Close the door.

### **Contrastive and Emphatic Intonation**

The contrastive and emphatic intonations are the same as they employ more than the average stress on the constituents of a sentence. The element to be contrasted carries a slightly higher stress than the emphasized segment. For example, any of the elements can be emphasized in the following sentence depending on the degree of emphasis. The emphasis is indicated by bolding different elements.

## 2. PHONOLOGY

---

- 7a. आप दिल्ली जाइए।  
*a:p dilli: ja:ie.*  
 you Delhi go-fu-2p  
 You go to Delhi.

- 7b. आप दिल्ली जाइए।  
*a:p dilli: ja:ie.*  
 You go to Delhi.

- 7c. आप दिल्ली जाइए।  
*a:p dilli: ja:ie.*  
 You go to Delhi.

### 2.3.5. Juncture

Juncture is functional in Hindi. Internal juncture may be considered as phonemic juncture. Mostly, the medial clusters have juncture because those sequences of sounds do not occur in the same syllable.

|         |         |           |
|---------|---------|-----------|
| मुश्किल | muškil  | difficult |
| अनजान   | anja:n  | ignorant  |
| कुर्ता  | kurta:  | shirt     |
| बदमाश   | badma:š | rogue     |

The following minimal pairs indicate the phonemic status of internal juncture:

|          |            |                |
|----------|------------|----------------|
| खाना     | kha:na:    | food           |
| खा + ना  | kha: + na: | to eat         |
| कलाई     | kala:i:    | wrist          |
| कल + आई  | kal + a:i: | came yesterday |
| सिर्का   | sirka:     | vinegar        |
| सिर + का | sir + ka:  | of the head    |

There are two types of juncture: (i) internal juncture and (ii) external juncture. The internal juncture (+) reduces words into phrases or compound words in the sentences.

## **2. PHONOLOGY**

---

- 8a. ज़िंदगी + मौत का क्या भरोसा  
*zindagi: + mot ka: kya: bharosa:*  
life death-gen what guarantee  
There is no guarantee of life or death.

External juncture (#) occurs between each word and the words joined by this juncture retain their separate identity.

- 8b. ज़िंदगी # मौत का क्या भरोसा  
*zindagi: # mot ka: kya: bharosa:*  
There is no guarantee of life or death.

### **2.4. Morphophonemics**

Various morphological processes can be marked as loss, addition, and replacement of phonemes.

#### **2.4.1. Loss of Phoneme**

The vowel /a/ in the last syllable is dropped when the suffix /-ə/ is added to the word.

|        |        |                   |
|--------|--------|-------------------|
| औरत    | ɔrat   | woman             |
| औरतों  | ɔratō  | women (obl)       |
| पागल   | pa:gal | mad               |
| पागलों | pa:glō | mad persons (obl) |

The consonant न /n/ of a numeral system is lost before any numeral suffix beginning with /त t-, र r-, ह h-/ is added.

|     |      |       |   |    |     |            |   |      |       |          |
|-----|------|-------|---|----|-----|------------|---|------|-------|----------|
| तीन | ti:n | three | + | रह | rah | ten marker | = | तेरह | terah | thirteen |
|-----|------|-------|---|----|-----|------------|---|------|-------|----------|

#### **2.4.2. Addition of Phoneme**

The vowel ए /-e/ is added to the root before the suffixes are added to it.

|     |     |   |    |      |   |        |          |             |
|-----|-----|---|----|------|---|--------|----------|-------------|
| तिर | tir | + | पन | pan  | = | तिरेपन | tirepan  | fifty-three |
| तिर | tir | + | सठ | sath | = | तिरेसठ | tiresath | sixty-three |

## 2. PHONOLOGY

---

When different suffixes are added to the root, the an addition of a consonant takes place.

|        |   |          |   |                          |
|--------|---|----------|---|--------------------------|
| ब ba   | + | तीस ti:s | = | बतीस batti:s thirty-two  |
| शक šak | + | ई i:     | = | शकी šaki: one who doubts |

### 2.4.3. Alternations

The long vowel ओ /o/ of the verb root changes to a short vowel उ /u/ when the suffix -ला /-la:/ is added to the verb roots.

|               |   |        |   |                          |
|---------------|---|--------|---|--------------------------|
| खोल khol open | + | ला la: | = | खुला khula: opened       |
| रो ro weep    | + | ला la: | = | रुला rula: to make weep? |

The long vowel ई /i:/ of the verb root becomes the short इ /i/ when the suffix आ -a: is added to the verb root.

|                 |   |        |   |                      |
|-----------------|---|--------|---|----------------------|
| पि pi: drink    | + | ला la: | = | पिल pilā: make drink |
| सीख si:kh learn | + | आ a:   | = | सिखा sikha: teach    |

When the suffixes ला /-la:/ or आ /-a:/ are attached to the monosyllabic verbal stems their vowels ए /e/ and आ /a:/ change into इ /i/.

|              |   |        |   |                          |
|--------------|---|--------|---|--------------------------|
| दे de give   | + | ला la: | = | दिला dila: cause to give |
| खा kha: eat  | + | ला la: | = | खिला khila: cause to eat |
| देख dekh see | + | आ a:   | = | दिखा dikha: cause to see |

In certain morphophonemic changes, some consonants are replaced by others.

|                |   |               |   |                             |
|----------------|---|---------------|---|-----------------------------|
| तीन ti:n three | + | पन pan        | = | तिरेपन trepan fifty-three   |
| इक ik one      | + | चालीस ca:li:s | = | इकतालीस ikta:li:s forty-one |

Morphophonemic changes at junctural points or sandhi are very common in Hindi. They usually takes place in compound words.

|                  |   |               |   |                                      |
|------------------|---|---------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| सूर्य su:rya sun | + | आदि a:di etc. | = | सूर्यादि su:rya:di sun and the like. |
| चंद्र candr moon | + | उदय uday rise | = | चंद्रोदय candroday moonrise          |



### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

## **3. Morphology**

This chapter deals with the morphological structure of different word classes, describing their inflectional and derivational forms. Word classes described include nouns, pronouns, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, particles, connectives, and interjections.

### **3.1. Nouns**

#### **3.1.1. Noun Inflection**

Nouns in Hindi are inflected for gender, number, and case. There are three declensions of nouns; Declension I includes आ /a:/ ending masculine nouns; Declension II includes all other masculine nouns; and Declension III includes all feminine nouns.

##### **3.1.1.1. Gender**

There are two genders in Hindi: masculine and feminine. Besides the natural gender of animate nouns, every inanimate noun is assigned a gender. Though the gender of a large number of inanimate nouns can be predicted by their endings, there are no hard and fast rules for assigning the genders. Masculine forms are traditionally taken as basic. The gender formation involves (a) suffixation, (b) phonological changes, and (c) suppletion. We can make some general observations as follows.

- (i) Most of the आ /a:/ ending masculine nouns have their feminine forms ending in इ /i:/.

|        |        |                 |        |        |                 |
|--------|--------|-----------------|--------|--------|-----------------|
| लड़का  | larka: | boy             | लड़की  | larki: | girl            |
| चाचा   | ca:ca: | uncle           | चाची   | ca:ci: | aunt            |
| बिल्ला | billा: | he cat          | बिल्ली | billi: | she cat         |
| बच्चा  | bacca: | child (m)       | बच्ची  | bacci: | child (f)       |
| दादा   | da:da: | father's father | दादी   | da:di: | father's mother |
| नाना   | na:na: | mother's father | नानी   | na:ni: | mother's mother |
| साला   | sa:la: | wife's brother  | साली   | sa:li: | wife's sister   |
| पगला   | pagla: | a mad man       | पगली   | pagli: | a mad woman     |

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

In the above examples, the final -आ /-a:/ in the masculine nouns is replaced by -ई /-i:/ in their feminine forms.

(ii) Most of the -ई /-i:/ ending animate masculine nouns have their feminine forms ending in -अन /-an/.

| Masculine |        |              | Feminine |        |              |
|-----------|--------|--------------|----------|--------|--------------|
| धोबी      | dhobi: | washerman    | धोबन     | dhoban | washerwoman  |
| तेली      | teli:  | oilman       | तेलन     | telan  | oilwoman     |
| माली      | ma:li: | gardener (m) | मालन     | ma:lan | gardener (f) |
| जोगी      | jogi:  | saint (m)    | जोगन     | jogan  | saint (f)    |

(iii) Some nouns ending in - आ /-a:/ form their feminine (diminutive) by replacing -आ /-a:/ with - इया /-iya:/.

|     |       |     |        |         |             |
|-----|-------|-----|--------|---------|-------------|
| डबा | daba: | box | डिविया | dibiya: | a small box |
|-----|-------|-----|--------|---------|-------------|

(iv) Most of the -आ /-a:/ ending inanimate nouns are masculine and -ई /-i:/ ending inanimate nouns are feminine.

| Masculine |         |             | Feminine |         |               |
|-----------|---------|-------------|----------|---------|---------------|
| फंक्हा    | pankha: | fan         | फंक्ही   | pankhi: | a small fan   |
| सोटा      | soṭa:   | a big stick | सोटी     | soṭi:   | a small stick |
| कटोरा     | katora: | a bowl      | कटोरी    | katori: | a small bowl  |
| कोठा      | kotha:  | a room      | कोठरी    | kothri: | a small room  |

In the above examples, the final -आ /a:/ in the masculine forms is replaced by the suffix -ई /i:/.

(v) The suffix -नी /-ni:/ is added to the masculine nouns to form the feminine.

| Masculine |         |             | Feminine |            |             |
|-----------|---------|-------------|----------|------------|-------------|
| शेर       | śer     | lion        | शेरनी    | śerni:     | lioness     |
| मोर       | mor     | peacock     | मोरनी    | morni:     | peahen      |
| मास्टर    | ma:star | teacher (m) | मास्टरनी | ma:starni: | teacher (f) |
| ऊँट       | ū:t     | camel       | ऊँटनी    | ū:ṭni:     | she-camel   |
| नौकर      | nokar   | servant (m) | नौकरानी  | nokra:ni:  | servant (f) |

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

(vi) The suffix **-ई /-i:/** is added to the masculine nouns to form the feminine.

| Masculine |        |           | Feminine |         |                 |
|-----------|--------|-----------|----------|---------|-----------------|
| दास       | da:s   | servant   | दासी     | da:si:  | maid            |
| पुत्र     | putr   | son       | पुत्री   | putri:  | daughter        |
| सुंदर     | sundar | beautiful | सुंदरी   | sundri: | beautiful woman |

#### 3.1.1.2. Number

There are two numbers: singular and plural.

(i) The **-आ /-a:/** ending masculine nouns (including pronouns and adjectives), with a few exceptions change into **-ए /-e/** ending forms in the plural.

| Singular |         |       | Plural |       |        |
|----------|---------|-------|--------|-------|--------|
| लड़का    | larka:  | boy   | लड़के  | larke | boys   |
| घोड़ा    | gho:ra: | horse | घोड़े  | ghore | horses |
| मेरा     | mera:   | my    | मेरे   | mere  | my     |
| काला     | ka:la:  | black | काले   | ka:le | black  |

The following **-आ /-a:/** ending masculine nouns do not change in their plural form.

|       |         |                |
|-------|---------|----------------|
| पिता  | pita:   | father/fathers |
| नेता  | neta:   | leader/leaders |
| दरिया | dariya: | river/rivers   |

(ii) All other consonant and/or other vowel-ending nouns do not change in their plural forms.

|       |         |                            |
|-------|---------|----------------------------|
| मोर   | mor     | peacock(s)                 |
| कोट   | koṭ     | coat(s)                    |
| ग्राम | gra:m   | village(s)                 |
| हाथी  | ha:thi: | elephant(s)                |
| रुमाल | ruma:l  | handkerchief/handkerchiefs |
| धोबी  | dhobi:  | laundry man/ laundry men   |

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

(iii) The feminine plurals are formed by adding the suffix -ए /e/ to the consonant-ending singular forms.

|       |        |       |         |         |        |
|-------|--------|-------|---------|---------|--------|
| किताब | kita:b | book  | किताबें | kita:bē | books  |
| मेज़  | mez    | table | मेज़ें  | mezē    | tables |
| गाय   | ga:y   | cow   | गायें   | ga:yē   | cows   |

(iv) The plural suffix -इयाँ -iyāः is added to the -ई -i: ending feminine nouns.

|        |          |       |              |   |           |            |         |
|--------|----------|-------|--------------|---|-----------|------------|---------|
| लड़की  | laṛki:   | girl  | + इयाँ -iyāः | = | लड़कियाँ  | larkiyāः   | girls   |
| कुर्सी | kursi:   | chair | + इयाँ -iyāः | = | कुर्सियाँ | kursiyāः   | chairs  |
| कहानी  | kaha:ni: | story | + इयाँ -iyāः | = | कहानियाँ  | kaha:niyāः | stories |

Notice that when the suffix is added the final vowel of the stem is deleted.

#### **3.1.1.3. Case**

The syntactic and semantic functions of noun phrases are expressed by case-suffixes, postpositions and derivational processes. There are two cases: direct and oblique. Case-suffixes and postpositions are used to express syntactic and semantic functions. Case suffixes are defined as bound suffixes, which do not occur independently as words and are added only to the noun phrases. Case suffixes added to the oblique forms of nouns agreeing in number and gender.

| Case     | Masculine |        | Feminine |        |
|----------|-----------|--------|----------|--------|
|          | Sg        | Pl     | Sg       | Pl     |
| Direct   | Ø         | Ø      | Ø        | Ø      |
| Oblique  | -ए -e     | -ओं -ō | -ई -i    | -ओं -ō |
| Vocative | -ए -e     | -ओ -o  | -ई -i    | -ओ -o  |

The vocative address forms may be preceded by the vocative morphemes ओ o/ हे he/ अरे are. The role of case-suffixes and postpositions is explained in the paradigms of लड़का larkaः ‘boy’ and लड़की larkiः ‘girl’ given below.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

| Case    | Noun + Marker |        |          |          |
|---------|---------------|--------|----------|----------|
|         | Masculine     |        | Feminine |          |
|         | Sg            | Pl     | Sg       | Pl       |
| Direct  | लड़का         | लड़के  | लड़की    | लड़कियाँ |
|         | larka:        | larke  | larki:   | larkiyā: |
| Oblique | लड़के         | लड़कों | लड़की    | लड़कियों |
|         | larke         | larko  | larki:   | larkiyō  |

|          |                              |         |          |
|----------|------------------------------|---------|----------|
| Vocative | ओ o/ हे he/ अरे are लड़के    | larke   | Oh boy   |
|          | ओ o/ हे he/ अरे are लड़कों   | larko   | Oh boys  |
|          | ए e/ हे he/ अरे are लड़की    | larki:  | Oh girl  |
|          | ए e/ हे he/ अरे are लड़कियों | larkiyo | Oh girls |

Case-suffixes followed by postpositions indicate various relationships between the noun phrases and the verb phrases.

#### 3.1.2. Postpositions

Postpositions have specific semantic functions. They express the semantic dimensions of a noun such as benefaction, manner, or location. The main postpositions are: ने ne ‘ergative marker’; को ko ‘to’; के liए ke liye ‘for’; पर par ‘on’; में mē ‘in’; से se ‘from’; से se ‘with’; का /के /की ka/ke/ki: ‘of.’ The postpositions are written as separate words with nouns (अमित ने amit ne, उमा को uma: ko), but they are tagged to pronouns (मैंने mēne उसको usko, किसका kiska:).

##### 3.1.2.1. The Postposition ने ne

The postposition ने ne is used with subject noun phrases usually with the transitive verbs in the past tense. The verb agrees with the object.

1. मैंने पत्र लिखा।  
*mēne patr likha:*  
 I-erg letter wrote  
 I wrote a letter.

- 1a. \*मैंने पत्र लिखा।  
*\*mē patr likha:*

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

2. उसने कपड़े धोए।  
*usne kapre dhoye*  
he-erg clothes washed  
He washed clothes.

- 2a. वह कपड़े धोया।  
*\*vah kapre dhoya:*

Whenever the objects are followed by the dative postposition को *ko*, the verb remains in masculine singular form.

3. मोहन ने बहिन /बहनों को बुलाया।  
*mohan ne bahin/bahnō̤ ko bulaya:*  
Mohan-erg sister/sisters-dat called  
Mohan called (his) sister/sisters.
4. हमने लड़के / लड़कों / लड़की /लड़कियों को पढ़ाया।  
*hamne larke/larkō̤/larki:/ larkiyō̤ ko parha:ya:*  
we-erg boy/boys/girl/girls-dat taught  
We taught the boy/boys/girl/girls.

The ने *ne* postposition is not used with the subjects of the following transitive verbs: लाना *la:na:* ‘to bring,’ खेलना *khelna:* ‘to play,’ बोलना *bolna:* ‘to speak,’ भूलना *bhu:lna:* ‘to forget,’ and बकना *bakna:* ‘to chatter.’

5. उमा कर्मीज़ लाई।  
*uma: kami:z la:i:*  
Uma-nom shirt brought  
Uma brought a shirt.

- 5a. \*उमा ने कर्मीज़ लाई।  
*\*uma: ne kami:z la:i:*

6. लड़का बोला।  
*larka: bola:*  
boy said  
The boy said.

- 6a. \*लड़के ने बोला।  
*\*larke ne bola:*

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

7. वह गस्ता भूला ।  
*voh ra:sta: bhu:la:*  
he way forgot  
He forgot/lost the way.
- 7a. \*उसने गस्ता भूला ।  
*\*usne ra:sta: bhu:la:*
8. वह काफी देर बका ।  
*vah ka:phi: de:r baka:*  
he-nom lot duration chattered  
He chattered for a long time.
- 8a. \*उसने काफी देर बका ।  
*\*usne ka:phi de:r baka:*

The postposition ने *ne* is used with the following intransitive verbs:  
छोंकना *chī:kna*: ‘to sneeze’; खाँसना *khā:sna*: ‘to cough’; नहाना *naha:na*: ‘to take a bath’; and थूकना *thu:kna*: ‘to spit’.

9. उसने घर से निकलते समय छोंका ।  
*usne ghar se nikalte samay chī:ka:*  
he-erg house-abl from set out-ptc time sneezed  
He sneezed as he was leaving the house.
10. बीमार व्यक्ति (ने) जोर से खाँसा ।  
*bi:ma:r vyakti (ne) zo:r se khā:sa:*  
ill person-erg loudly coughed  
The ill person coughed loudly.
11. मैंने गरम पानी से नहाया ।  
*mēne garm pa:ni: se naha:ya:*  
I-erg hot water with bathed  
I took a bath in hot water.
12. तुमने सड़क पर क्यों थूका?  
*tumne sarak par kyō̄ thu:ka:?*  
you-erg road on why spit-past  
Why did you spit on the road?

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

It is not used in constructions using the modal verbs लगना *lagna::*, चुकना *cukna::*, and सकना *sakna::*:

13. वह सेब खाने लगा।  
*vah seb kha:ne laga:*  
he apple eat-inf-obl started  
He started eating apples.

- 13a. \*उसने सेब खाने लगा।  
*\*usne seb kha:ne laga:*

14. मैं यह काम कर चुका।  
*mĒ yah ka:m kar cuka:*  
I this work do completed  
I finished this work.

- 14a. \*मैंने यह काम कर चुका।  
*\*mĒne yah ka:m kar cuka:*

15. वह चिट्ठी लिख सका।  
*vah ciṭṭhi: likh saka:*  
he letter write could  
He could write a letter.

- 15a. \*उसने चिट्ठी लिख सका।  
*\*usne ciṭṭhi: likh saka:*

In the case of a few transitive verbs like समझना *samjhna:* ‘to understand’ and खेलना *khelna:* ‘to play,’ the use of this postposition is optional.

16. मैंने उसकी वात समझी।  
*mĒne uski: ba:t samjhi:*  
I-erg his/her matter understood  
I understood what he said.

- 16a. मैं उसकी वात समझा।  
*mĒ uski: ba:t samjha.:*  
I his/her matter understood  
I understood what he said.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

17. मैं समझा वह बीमार है।  
*m̥e samjha: voh bi:ma:r hε.*

I understood he sick is  
I thought he was sick.

17a. मैंने समझा वह बीमार है।  
*m̥ne samjha: voh bi:ma:r hε.*

18. वह हाकी खेला।  
*vah ha:kī: khe:la:.*  
he hockey played  
He played hockey.

18a. उसने हाकी खेली।  
*usne haki: khe:li:.*  
he-erg hockey played  
He played hockey.

The use of the postposition ने *ne* is invariably found in compound verb constructions with the verb समझना *samjhna*: ‘to understand’ as the main verb.

19. मैंने बात समझ ली।  
*m̥ne ba:t samajh li:*  
I-erg matter understand took  
I understood the matter.

19a. \*मैं बात समझ ली।  
*\*m̥ ba:t samajh li:*

#### 3.1.2.2. The Postposition को *ko*

The postposition को *ko* is used in different types of sentences and is placed after nouns. It is optional when used with object nouns which are followed by conjunct verbs with an adjective or adverb and the verb.

1. मेज़ (को) साफ करो।  
*mez (ko) sa:f karō*  
table (dat) clean do-imp  
Clean the table.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

2. काम (को) खत्म करो।  
*ka:m (ko) xatm karo*  
work (dat) finish do-imp  
Finish the work.
3. कार (को) तेज करो।  
*ka:r (ko) tez karo.*  
car (dat) fast do-imp  
Speed up the car.
4. कागज़ (को) दूर रखो।  
*ka:gaz (ko) du:r rakho.*  
paper (dat) away do-imp  
Keep the paper away.
5. संदूक (को) इधर/ उधर/ ऊपर/ नीचे रखो।  
*sandu:k (ko) idhar/udhar/upar/ni:ce rakho*  
box (dat) here/there/up/down do-imp  
Keep the box here/there/up/down.

In the object +को *ko*+verb construction, the verb may be transitive or causative.

6. मैंने पत्र (को) पढ़ा।  
*mēne patr (ko) parha:*  
I-erg letter (dat) read  
I read the letter.
7. उसने किताब को बेचा।  
*usne kita:b ko beca:*  
he-erg book-dat sold  
He sold the book.
- 7a. उसने किताब बेची।  
*usne kita:b beci:*  
He sold the book.
8. उसने बच्चे को सुलाया।  
*usne bacce ko sula:ya:*  
he-erg child-dat sleep-caus  
He made the child sleep.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

- 8a. उसने बच्चा मुलाया ।  
*usne bacca: sula:ya:*

In the subject + को *ko* + complement + verb constructions, the verbs express the state of mind, physical experience, involuntarily actions, feelings, obligations, and emotions (9-12).

9. सुनीता को दुखार है ।  
*suni:ta ko bhukha:r hε*  
Sunita-dat fever is  
Sunita has fever.

10. अमर को दुख हुआ ।  
*amar ko dukh hua:*  
Amar-dat pain felt  
Amar felt pain.

11. मोहन को खाँसी आई ।  
*mohan ko hāsī: a:i:*  
Mohan-dat laugh came  
Mohan laughed.

12. बच्चे को डर लगा ।  
*bacce ko ḍar laga:*  
child-dat fear struck  
The child was afraid.

The postposition को *ko* is used in the secondary object + को *ko* + main object + verb constructions.

13. मैं अपने भाई को पत्र लिख रहा हूँ ।  
*mē apne bha:i: ko patr likh raha: hū:*  
I self-obl brother-dat letter write-prog am  
I am writing a letter to my brother.

Pronouns + को *ko* have alternate forms as follows:

|    |            |   |              |   |                               |
|----|------------|---|--------------|---|-------------------------------|
| वह | <i>vah</i> | + | को <i>ko</i> | = | उसको/ उसे <i>usko/use</i>     |
| यह | <i>yah</i> | + | को <i>ko</i> | = | इसको/ इसे <i>isko/ise</i>     |
| इन | <i>in</i>  | + | को <i>ko</i> | = | इनको/ इन्हें <i>inko/inhē</i> |
| उन | <i>un</i>  | + | को <i>ko</i> | = | उनको/ उन्हें <i>unko/unhē</i> |

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

In the उसे *use*/इसे *ise*/इन्हें *inhē*/उन्हें *unhē* forms, there is an inherent को *ko*. It is possible to use these forms along with nouns + को *ko*.

14. उसे/उन्हें मोहन को दे दो।  
*use/unhē mohan ko de do.*  
that/those-dat Mohan-dat give-imp  
Give that/those to Mohan.

15. इसे ले जाओ।  
*ise le ja:o.*  
this-dat take-imp  
Take this.

The postposition को *ko* is not normally used with time adverbials.

16. वह आज आएगा।  
*vah a:j a:ega:.*  
he today come-fut  
He will come today.

- 16a. \*वह आज को आएगा।  
\**vah a:j ko a:ega:*

17. वह कल जाएगा।  
*vah kal ja:ega:.*  
he tomorrow go-fut  
He will go tomorrow.

- 17a. \*वह कल को जाएगा।  
\**vah kal ko ja:ega:.*

But in certain contexts, को *ko* can be used with कल *kal*, not to indicate ‘tomorrow,’ but to denote an indefinite time in the future.

18. कौन जाने कल को क्या होगा।  
*kōn ja:ne kal ko kya: hogā:.*  
who know-obl tomorrow-obl what happen-fut  
Who knows what will happen tomorrow?

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

19. अगर कल को उन्हें कुछ हो गया तो...  
*agar kal ko unhē kuch ho gaya: to...*  
if tomorrow-obl he-obl something happened then ...  
If anything happens to him tomorrow then ...

The postposition को *ko* can be used optionally with time adverbs, like रात *ra:t* ‘night,’ शाम *śa:m* ‘evening,’ and दुपहर *dupahar* ‘afternoon.’

20. आज शाम/शाम को आप मेरे घर आइए।  
*a:j śa:m/śa:m ko a:p mere ghar a:iye.*  
today evening/-dat you mine house come-imp.pol  
Please come to my house today in the evening.

The postposition को *ko* is not used with place adverbs like यहाँ *yahā:* ‘here’; वहाँ *vahā:* ‘there’; ऊपर *upar* ‘above’; नीचे *ni:ce* ‘under’; आगे *a:ge* ‘in front’; and पीछे *pi:che* ‘behind.’

21. मैं यहाँ आऊँगा।  
*mĒ yahā: a:ū:ga:*  
I here come-fut  
I will come here.
- 21a. \*मैं यहाँ को आऊँगा।  
*\*mĒ yahā: ko a:ū:ga:*
22. वे ऊपर पहुँचे।  
*ve u:par pahūce*  
they top reached  
They reached up (the stairs).
- 22a. \*वे ऊपर को पहुँचे।  
*\*ve u:par ko pahūce*

The postposition को *ko* is added to the subject noun/pronoun if it is followed by an object and the verb चाहिए *ca:hiye* ‘need/want’ or the modal ‘should’ (i.e., subject + को *ko* + object + चाहिए *ca:hiya*).

23. उसको यह अखबार चाहिए।  
*usko yeh akhba:r ca:hiye*  
he-obl this newspaper wants  
He wants this newspaper.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

24. उसको यह काम करना चाहिए।  
*usko yah ka:m karna: ca:hiye*  
he-obl this work do-inf should  
He should do this work.

The verbal noun + को *ko* (as complementizer) construction shows purpose.

25. उसे आने को कहो।  
*use a:ne ko kaho.*  
he-dat come-inf-obl tell-imp  
Tell him to come.
26. उठने को दिल करता है।  
*uṭhne ko dil karta: he*  
rise-inf-obl pp heart want-ptc be  
One would like to get up.

27. हम दफ़्तर जाने को तैयार हैं।  
*ham daftar ja:ne ko t̪eyā:r hε̃*  
we office go-inf-obl pp ready are  
We are ready to go to the office.

28. आपके पास पीने को क्या है?  
*a:pke pa:s pi:ne ko kya: he?*  
you-gen-obl near drink-inf-obl pp what is  
What do you have to drink?

The postposition को *ko* can be used for emphasis as well.

29. जाने को क्या, मैं कभी भी जा सकता हूँ।  
*ja:ne ko kya:, m̪ẽ kabhi: bhi: ja: sakta: hū:.*  
go-inf-obl dat what, I anytime go can be  
What is there, I can go anytime.

को *ko* can also be used to denote an object of a verb requiring a predicate.

30. अमित गरीबी को पाप समझता है।  
*amit gari:bi: ko pa:p samajhta: he.*

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

Amit poverty sin consider-ptc is  
Amit considers poverty a sin.

31. कपड़ों को गंदा भत करो।  
*kapṛ̥d̥: ko ganda: mat karo.*  
clothes dirty neg do-imp  
Don't dirty your clothes.

It is used to denote time. When it is used with time adverbials it denotes specificity like दोपहर को *dopahar ko* or मंगलवार को *maṇalva:r ko* but not जनवरी को *janva:ri ko* or आज को *a:j ko*, कल को *kal ko*.

32. वह दोपहर को आएगा।  
*vah dopahar ko a:yega:.*  
he noon come-fut  
He will come at noon.
33. मैं मंगलवार को दिल्ली जाऊँगा।  
*m̥e maṇalva:r ko dilli: ja:ū:ga:.*  
I Tuesday Delhi go-fut  
I'll go to Delhi on Tuesday.

#### 3.1.2.3. The Postposition से se

The postposition से *se* is used to indicate association or mutual dealing.

1. मैं उससे बात करता हूँ।  
*m̥e us-se ba:t kar-ta: hū:.*  
I he-obl-with talk do-ptc am  
I talk with him.
2. वह पड़ोसी से लड़ा।  
*vah parosi: se lara:.*  
he neighbor with quarreled  
He quarreled with his neighbor.
3. नेहरु बच्चों से प्यार करते थे।  
*nehru: bacc̥ se pya:r karte the.*  
Nehru children-obl with love do-ptc was  
Nehru used to love children.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

4. मुझसे झूठ न बोलो ।  
*mujh-se jhu:th na bolo.*  
me-obl-with lie neg say-imp  
Don't lie to me.
  5. उससे मजाक न करो ।  
*usse maza:k na karo.*  
he-obl-post joke don't do-imp  
Don't joke with him.
  6. वह पड़ोसी से नफरत करता है ।  
*vah parosi: se nafrat karta: hε.*  
he neighbor with hate do-ptc is  
He hates his neighbor.
  7. मैं आपसे प्रार्थना करता हूँ ।  
*mē a:pse pra:rthna: karta: hū:.*  
I you-post request do-ptc am  
I request you.
  8. सरकार से माँग की जाती है ।  
*sarka:r se mā:g ki: ja:ti: hε.*  
government with request do aux is  
The government is requested.
  9. मैं ऐसे लोगों से दूर रहना पसंद करता हूँ ।  
*mē ese logū: se du:r rahna: pasand karta: hū:.*  
I this type people from far remain-inf like do-ptc am  
I like to be away from this kind of people.
- It is used to indicate a sense of separation or keeping away from something.
10. दिल से कोध निकालो ।  
*dil se krodh nika:lo*  
heart from anger remove-imp  
Remove anger from your mind.
  11. वह दफ्तर से निकला ।  
*vah daftar se nikla:.*

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

he office from came out  
He set out from the office.

It represents cause, reason and origin.

12. वह बुखार से कमज़ोर हुआ।  
*vah bukha:r se kamzor hua:*  
he fever from weak became  
He became weak by fever.
13. बीज से पौधा निकलता है।  
*bi:j se pɔdha: nikalta: he.*  
seed from plant comes out  
The plant grows out of a seed.
14. बात से बात निकलती है।  
*ba:t se ba:t nikalti: he.*  
talk from talk comes out  
One thing comes out of the other.
15. लकड़ी से मेज़ें बनती हैं।  
*lakri: se mezē banti: hε.*  
wood from tables make-ptc are  
The tables are made of wood.
16. मिट्टी से बर्तन बनते हैं।  
*miṭṭi: se bartan bante hε̃.*  
clay from pots make-ptc are  
Pots are made of clay.

It indicates the starting point, place, time, and direction.

17. मुझे दफ्तर से तार मिला।  
*mujhe daftar se ta:r mila:*  
I-obl office from telegram got  
I got a telegram from the office.
18. यहाँ से शहर बहुत दूर है।  
*yahā: se šahar bahut du:r he.*  
here from city very far is  
The city is far away from here.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

19. कल से आज अच्छी धूप है।  
*kal se a:j acchi: dhu:p he.*  
yesterday from today good sunshine is  
It is more sunny today than yesterday.

It indicates time.

20. वह देर से गया।  
*vah der se gaya.:*  
he late went  
He went late.

It is used to indicate the difference or comparison in quality and quantity.

21. वहाँ से यहाँ अधिक गरमी पड़ती है।  
*vahā: se yahā: adhik garmi: parti: he.*  
there from here more heat fall-ptc is  
This place is hotter than that place.

22. वह दो साल से बीमार है।  
*vah do sa:l se bi:ma:r he.*  
he two year from sick is  
He has been sick for the last two years.

23. पीछे से आवज़ आई।  
*pi:che se a:va:z a:yi:.*  
behind from call came  
Someone called from behind.

It is used to indicate means, instrument, or agency.

24. चाकू से सब्ज़ी काटो।  
*ca:ku: se sabzi: ka:to.*  
knife with vegetable cut-imp  
Cut vegetables with the knife.

25. कलम से पत्र लिखो।  
*kalam se patr likho.*  
pen with letter write-imp  
Write a letter with the pen.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

26. हम हाथ से खाना खाते हैं।  
*ham ha:th se kha:na: khate h̄e.*  
we hand with food eat-ptc are  
We eat our meals with our hands.
27. पौधों को पानी से धो लो।  
*pɔdhō: ko pa:ni: se dho lo.*  
plants-obl to water with wash-imp  
Wash the plants with water.
28. वह बारिश से भीग गया।  
*vah ba:riš se bhi:g gaya:*  
he rain with wet became  
He was drenched in the rain.
29. उसने अकल से काम किया।  
*usne akl se ka:m kiya:*  
he-erg wit with work did  
He worked with wit.

It indicates manner.

30. मेरी बात ध्यान से सुनो।  
*meri: ba:t dhya:n se suno.*  
my talk attention with listen-imp  
Listen to what I say with attention.
31. वह तेज़ी से आया।  
*vah tezi: se a:ya:.*  
he fast came  
He came fast.
32. हम कठिनाई से स्टेशन पहुँचे।  
*ham kathina:yi: se st̄ešan pahuce.*  
we difficulty with station reached  
We reached the station with difficulty.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

#### **3.1.2.4. The Postposition मेि *mē***

The postposition मेि *mē* is used to denote location or presence of something in or within; duration; price; comparison with reference to more than two; or difference.

##### ***Location***

1. मेरा दफ्तर दिल्ली मेि है।  
*mera: daftar dilli: mē hε.*  
my office Delhi in is  
My office is in Delhi.
2. मेरा बेटा कालेज मेि पढ़ता है।  
*mera: beṭa: ka:lej mē par̥hta: hε.*  
my son college in study-ptc is  
My son studies in college.
3. इस किताब मेि तीन सौ पृष्ठ हैं।  
*is kita:b mē ti:n sō praṣṭh hε̤.*  
this book in three hundred pages are  
There are three hundred pages in this book.

##### ***Duration***

4. यह लेख मैंने चार दिन मेि लिखा।  
*yah lekh mēne ca:r din mē likha:.*  
this article I-erg four days in wrote  
I wrote this article in four days.
5. यह इमारत दो साल मेि बनी।  
*yeh ima:rat do sa:l mē bani:.*  
this building two years in constructed  
This building was constructed in two years.

##### ***Price***

6. यह मेज दो हजार रुपयों मेि मिला।  
*yah mez do haza:r rupyō mē mila:..*  
this table two thousand rupees-obl in obtained  
This table cost two thousand rupees.
7. मैंने यह कमीज तीन सौ रुपयों मेि ली।  
*mēne yah kami:z ti:n sō rupyō mē li:.*

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

I-erg this shirt three hundred rupees in got  
I got this shirt for three hundred rupees.

#### **Comparison**

8. इन लड़कों में अमित सबसे चुस्त है।  
*in larkō mē amit sa:bse cust he.*  
these boys-obl in Amit all from active  
Amit is the most active out of all these boys.

#### **3.1.2.5. The Postposition पर par**

The postposition पर *par* is used to denote location or position, point of time of an action, sequence of actions, cause or reason, and the object of verbs.

#### **Location**

1. कागज़ मेज़ पर है।  
*ka:gaz mez par he.*  
paper table on is  
The paper is on table.
2. मेरे कपड़े छत पर हैं।  
*mere kapre chat par hē.*  
my clothes roof on are  
My clothes are on the roof.
3. उसका दफ्तर यहाँ से कुछ दूरी पर है।  
*uska: daftar yahā: se kuch du:ri: par he.*  
his office here from some distance at is  
His office is some distance from here.

#### **Point of time**

4. वह समय पर नहीं पहुँचा।  
*vah samay par nahī: pahūca:.*  
he time at not reached  
He didn't arrive in time.
5. बस चार बजकर दस मिनट पर आएगी।  
*bas ca:r bajkar das minat par a:yegi:*  
bus four stuck-cp ten minutes at come-fut-f  
The bus will arrive at ten minutes past four.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

#### ***Sequence of actions***

6. वहाँ पहुँचने पर हमने देखा कि कोई नहीं आया।  
*vahā: pahūcne par hamne dekha: ki koi: nahī: a:ya:.*  
there reach-inf-obl on we-erg saw that no one neg came  
On reaching there, we found that no one had come.
7. नेता के आने पर सबने तालियाँ बजाई।  
*neta: ke a:ne par sabne ta:liyā: baja:i:.*  
leader-gen come-inf-obl on all-erg clapped hands  
Upon the arrival of the leader, all clapped their hands.

#### ***Cause or reason***

8. धोग्या देने पर उसे सजा हुई।  
*dhokha: dene par use saza: hui:.*  
deceive give-inf-obl on he-obl punishment given  
He was punished for deceiving (someone).
9. झूठ बोलने पर माँ ने बच्चे को डँटा।  
*jhu:ṭh bolne par mā:ne bacce ko dā:ṭa:.*  
lie tell-inf-obl on mother-erg child-dat scolded  
The mother scolded the child for telling a lie.

#### ***Object of verbs***

10. गरीबों पर दया करो।  
*gari:bō par daya: karo.*  
poor-obl on mercy do-imp  
Be kind to the poor.
11. वह किसी पर क्रोध नहीं करता।  
*vah kisi: par krodh nahī: karta:.*  
he someone on anger neg do-pr is  
He doesn't get angry at anyone.
12. मुझपर विश्वास करो।  
*mujhpar viśva:s karo.*  
me on faith do-imp  
Have faith in me.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

#### 3.1.2.6. The Postposition का *ka*

The postposition का *ka*: is used to denote the relationship between a noun or pronoun and another noun that follows it. It is used to denote possession and relationship, material or composition, worth and measure, source, origin, cause, subject or object of an act, part of a whole, purpose or characteristics or trait. The form of this postposition agrees with the gender and number of the noun as follows.

| Masculine |            | Feminine |           |
|-----------|------------|----------|-----------|
| Sg        | Pl         | Sg       | Pl        |
| का        | <i>ka:</i> | के       | <i>ke</i> |
| की        | <i>ki</i>  | की       | <i>ki</i> |

##### **Possession and relationship**

1. अमित का भाई आज आएगा।  
*amit ka: bha:i: a:j a:yega:.*  
Amit of brother today come-fut  
Amit's brother will come today.
  
2. अमित की बहन/ बहनें कल आएंगी/ आएँगे।  
*amit ki: bahn/bahnē kal a:yegi:/a:yēgi:.*  
Amit of sister/sisters tomorrow come-fut-fs/-fp  
Amit's sister/sisters will come tomorrow.
  
3. अमित के दो दोस्त परसों आएंगे।  
*amit ke do dost parsō a:ēge.*  
Amit of two friends day after tomorrow come-fut  
Amit's two friends will come day after tomorrow.

##### **Material or composition**

4. शीशे की अलमारी टूट गई।  
*śi:še ki: alma:ri: tu:t gayi:.*  
glass-obl of almirah broke went  
The glass almirah broke.
  
5. मिट्टी के वर्तन अच्छे हैं।  
*mit̪ti: ke bartan acche h̪e.*  
clay of pots good are  
The earthen pots are good.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

#### ***Measure or worth***

6. एक किलो चावल कितने का है?  
*ek kilo ca:val kitne ka: hε?*  
one kilogram rice how much-obl of is  
What is the price of one kilogram of rice?

7. ये दस रुपए के केले हैं।  
*ye das rupye ke kele hε.*  
these ten rupees of bananas are  
These bananas cost ten rupees.

#### ***Source, origin, or cause***

8. प्रेमचंद के उपन्यास यहाँ नहीं हैं।  
*premcand ke upnya:s yahā: nahī: hε.*  
Premchand's novels here neg are  
The novels of Premchand are not available here.

9. इस पेड़ के फल मीठे हैं।  
*is per ke phal mi:the hε.*  
this tree gen fruit sweet are  
The fruit of this tree is delicious.

#### ***Subject (doer of an act)***

10. धोवी का काम अच्छा है।  
*dhobi: ka: ka:m accha: hε.*  
washerman gen work good is  
The washerman's work is good.

#### ***Object (of an activity)***

11. उसके बच्चों की शिक्षा अच्छी है।  
*uske baccō ki: šikša: acchi: hε.*  
his children-obl of education good is  
The education of the children is good.
12. उसके पास दवाई का खर्चा नहीं है।  
*uske pa:s dava:i: ka: kharca: nahī: hε.*  
he-gen near medicine-gen expenses neg is  
He doesn't have money to pay for medicine.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

#### *Part of a whole*

13. यह कागज़ का टुकड़ा है।  
*yeh ka:gaz ka: tukṛa: hε.*  
this paper gen piece is  
This is a piece of paper.
14. यह इस पेड़ की शाख़ है।  
*yeh is per ki: śa:kh hε.*  
it this tree-gen branch-fs is  
It is the branch of this tree.

#### *Purpose*

14. पीने का पानी साफ़ है।  
*pi:ne ka: pa:ni: sa:f hε.*  
drink-obl gen water clean is  
The drinking water is clean.

#### *Characteristics*

15. दूध की मिठास अच्छी है।  
*du:dh ki: miṭha:s acchi: hε.*  
milk gen sweetness good is  
The milk is sweet.

#### 3.1.2.7. Compound Postpositions

Compound postpositions are formed by combining the postpositions के *ke*, की *ki:*, and से *se* with other words in certain set phrases as follows.

##### (i) के *ke*

|                      |                                |                |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|
| के अलावा/अतिरिक्त    | <i>ke ala:va:/atirikt</i>      | in addition to |
| के अनुसार            | <i>ke anusa:r</i>              | according to   |
| के अंदर              | <i>ke andar</i>                | inside         |
| के आगे               | <i>ke a:ge</i>                 | in front of    |
| के आरपार             | <i>ke a:rpa:r</i>              | through        |
| के आसपास             | <i>ke a:spa:s</i>              | near about     |
| के बाद/उपरांत/पश्चात | <i>ke ba:d/uprā:nt/paśca:t</i> | afterwards     |
| के पार               | <i>ke pa:r</i>                 | across         |
| के कारण              | <i>ke ka:ran</i>               | because of     |
| के द्वारा/हाथ        | <i>ke dwa:ra:/ha:th</i>        | through        |

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

|                            |                                     |               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|
| के पास/निकट/नज़दीक/समीप    | <i>ke pa:s/nikat/nazdi:k/sami:p</i> | near          |
| के ऊपर                     | <i>ke upar</i>                      | above         |
| के पूर्व                   | <i>ke pu:rv</i>                     | before        |
| के प्रति                   | <i>ke prati</i>                     | for, toward   |
| के प्रतिकूल/विरुद्ध/विपरीत | <i>ke pratiku:l/virudh/vipri:t</i>  | against       |
| के बिना सिवा/बगेर          | <i>ke bina:/siva:/bager</i>         | without       |
| के बदले                    | <i>ke badle</i>                     | in place of   |
| के बराबर/समान              | <i>ke bara:bar/sama:n</i>           | equal         |
| के बाहर                    | <i>ke ba:har</i>                    | outside of    |
| के बीच/मध्य                | <i>ke bi:c/madhya</i>               | inside of     |
| के लगभग                    | <i>ke lagbhag</i>                   | about         |
| के लिए/वास्ते              | <i>ke liye/va:ste</i>               | for           |
| के योग्य/लायक              | <i>ke yogya/la:yak</i>              | appropriate   |
| के समेत/साथ                | <i>ke samet/sa:th</i>               | along with    |
| के सामने                   | <i>ke sa:mne</i>                    | in front of   |
| के मुकाबले (में)           | <i>ke muka:ble (mē)</i>             | comparison to |
| के यहाँ/हाँ                | <i>ke yahā:/hā:</i>                 | at some place |

(ii) की *ki:*

|              |                         |                    |
|--------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| की ओर/तरफ    | <i>ki: or/tarf</i>      | towards            |
| की अपेक्षा   | <i>ki: apekša:</i>      | in comparison with |
| की तरह/भौंति | <i>ki: tarah/bhā:ti</i> | like               |
| की जगह       | <i>ki: jagah</i>        | in place of        |

(iii) से *se*

से बाहर *se ba:har* out of  
से पहले *se pahle* before

The compound postpositions are employed to express various semantic expressions in combination with other elements. There are, however, alternate ways of expression possible where postpositions are not used. Examples of the usage of various semantic expressions are given below.

Cause is expressed either by the (i) postposition से *se*; or by the (ii) compound forms के कारण *ke ka:rāṇ* ‘for the reason of,’ and ऋकी ओर *ki: or* ‘side.’

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

1. बाढ़ से मकान गिर गया ।  
*ba:r̥h se maka:n gir gaya:.*  
flood with house fell  
The house fell down because of the flood.
  
2. उसके कारण मुझे नुकसान हुआ ।  
*uske ka:raṇ mujhe nuksa:n hua:.*  
he-gen-obl reason I-obl loss occurred  
I had to suffer loss because of him.
  
3. उसकी ओर से मुझे कभी सुख नहीं मिला ।  
*uski: or se mujhe kabhi: sukh nahī: mila:.*  
he-gen-obl side I-dat ever comfort neg got  
He has never provided comfort to me.

Purpose is expressed by the use of the oblique infinitive verb optionally followed by the postposition के लिए *ke liye* ‘for.’

4. वह सब्ज़ी लेने (के लिए) बाज़ार गया ।  
*vah sabzī: lene (ke liye) ba:za:r gaya:.*  
he vegetables bring-inf-obl for market went  
He went to the market to buy vegetables.

Function is expressed by the genitive postpositional phrase - की तरह *ki:*  
*tarah* ‘like.’

5. वह छाते को सोटी की तरह इस्तिमाल करता है ।  
*vah cha:te ko soṭī: ki: tarah istima:l karta: he.*  
he is umbrella-obl dat stick-gen like use do-pr is  
He uses an umbrella like a stick.

Reference is denoted by the postpositional expression के बारे में *ke ba:re mē* ‘about.’

6. उसने मुझे अपने बच्चों के बारे में कहा ।  
*usne mujhe apne baccō ke ba:re mē kaha:.*  
he-erg me self's children-dat about said  
He told me about his children.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

7. तुम्हे इसके बारे में कोशिश करनी चाहिए।  
*tumhe iske ba:re mē košiš karni: ca:hiye.*  
you-obl this-gen-obl for effort do-inf-fs should  
You should make efforts in this regard.

The compound postposition के रूप/भेस में *ke ru:p/bhes mē* expresses the meaning ‘in the form of’

8. राजा एक भिखारी के भेस / रूप में निकला।  
*ra:ja: ek bhikha:ri: ke bhes/ru:p mē nikla:.*  
king one beggar-gen-obl in set out  
The king went out in the disguise of a beggar.

The compound postposition में से *mē se* is used to express the sense of ‘among/out of.’ Numerals and quantifiers occur after the noun marked में से *mē se*.

9. उसके विद्यार्थियों में से चार कश्मीर में हैं।  
*uske vidya:rthiyō mē se ca:r kašmi:r mē hē.*  
he-gen-obl students-obl from four Kashmir-abl in are  
Among his students, four are in Kashmir.

Value is expressed by the genitive or it can be denoted by the expressions की कीमत *ki: ki:mat*, or का मूल्य *ka: mu:ly* ‘the price of X’ which precedes the value expression.

10. इस कमीज की कीमत तीन सौ रुपए है।  
*is kami:z ki: ki:mat ti:n so rupye hē.*  
this shirt-gen price three hundred rupees is  
The price of this shirt is three hundred rupees.

The compound postposition के वावजूद *ke ba:vaju:d* is used to express the meaning of ‘despite of.’

11. बीमार होने के वावजूद वह कार्यालय आया।  
*bi:ma:r hone ke ba:vaju:d vah ka:rya:lay a:ya:*  
sick be-inf-obl despite he office came  
He came to the office despite being sick.

Inclusion is expressed by the compound postposition के समेत *ke samet/साथ sa:th* ‘including.’

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

12. आपके समेत सारे अनुपस्थित/गैरहाजिर थे।  
*a:pke samet sa:re anupasthit/gerha:zir the.*  
you-gen including all absent were  
All, including you, were absent.
13. आपको मिलाकर हम दस सदस्य हैं।  
*a:pko mila:kar ham das sadasy h̄e.*  
you-dat include-cp we ten members are  
We are ten members, including you.

Exclusion is expressed by the dative postpositions के विना *ke bina:/* बैगेर *bager* ‘without.’

14. अमर के विना/ बैगेर सारे उपस्थित /हाजिर थे।  
*amar ke bina:/bager sa:re upasthit/ha:zir the*  
Amar-gen without all present were  
All, excluding/except Amar, were present.

Addition is expressed either by the use of the comitative compound postposition के साथ *ke sa:th* ‘with/ along with,’ or by के अतिरिक्त *ke atirikt/* अलावा *ala:va:* ‘in addition to.’

15. मोहन के साथ (साथ)/अलावा उमा भी आई।  
*mohan ke sa:th (sa:th)/ala:va: uma: bhi: a:yi:*  
Mohan-gen with /besides Uma too came  
In addition to Mohan, Uma came too.

Locational semantic functions are generally marked by the postpositions की ओर *ki:* or ‘motion to,’ (के बीच *ke bi:c*) में से *mē se* ‘motion through.’

16. वह गाँव की ओर चला।  
*vah ga:ū: ki: or cala:*  
he village towards set out  
He set out towards the village.

17. बस गाँव (के बीच) में से गुज़रती है।  
*bas ga:ū: (ke bi:c) mē se guzarti: he*  
bus village-abl through passes-pr is  
The bus passes through the village.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

The approximate location is expressed by के निकट *ke nikat/* नज़दीक *nazdi:k/* करीब *kari:b* ‘near.’

18. मकान के निकट/नज़दीक दुकान है।  
*maka:n ke nikat /nazdi:k duka:n hε.*  
house near shop is  
The shop is near the house.
19. वह दफ्तर के नज़दीक तक पहुँचा।  
*vah daphtar ke nazdi:k tak pahūca:.*  
he office near up to reached  
He reached up to/ near the house.
20. बच्चे की आवाज़ घर के करीब से आई।  
*bacce ki: a:va:z ghar ke kari:b se a:yi:.*  
child-obl gen voice house-gen near from came  
The child’s voice came from near the house.

Interior location is expressed by के अंदर *ke andar/* में *mē* ‘inside of,’ or के बीच में से *ke bi:c mē se* ‘from inside’ preceded by the oblique case suffixes.

21. इस मकान में/के अंदर कोई नहीं रहता है।  
*is maka:n mē/ke andar koi: nahī: rahta: hε.*  
this house inside anyone neg live-pr is  
No one lives inside this house.
22. बच्चा कमरे के बीच में से निकला।  
*bacca: kamre ke bi:c mē se nikla:.*  
child room-abl from came out  
The child came out of the house.

Exterior location is denoted by the postposition के *ke/* से *se* बाहर *ba:har* ‘outside of.’

23. वह गाँव के बाहर रहता है।  
*vah ga:ū: ke ba:har rahta: hε.*  
he village outside live-pr is  
He lives outside the village.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

24. वह कमरे से बाहर निकला।  
*vah kamre se ba:har nikla:.*  
he room-obl outside set out  
He came out of the room.

Anterior location is expressed by the postposition के सामने *ke sa:mne* ‘in front of.’ It may also be followed by other postpositions like से *se* ‘from,’ or तक *tak* ‘up to.’

25. विध्यालय के सामने एक बाग है।  
*vidhya:lay ke sa:mne ek ba:g hε.*  
school in front of a garden is  
There is a garden in front of the school.’

26. दुकान के सामने से बस निकलती है।  
*duka:n ke sa:mne se bas nikalti: hε.*  
shop-gen front-obl from bus start-ptc is  
A bus starts in front of the shop.

27. दुकान के सामने तक सड़क है।  
*duka:n ke sa:mne tak sarak hε.*  
shop-gen in front-obl up to road is  
A road is built up to the front of the shop.

Posterior location is denoted by के पीछे *ke pi:che* ‘behind.

28. विध्यालय के पीछे एक दुकान है।  
*vidhya:lay ke pi:che ek duka:n hε.*  
school-gen behind one shop is  
There is a shop behind the school.

29. बस अस्पताल के पीछे से जाती है।  
*bas aspata:l ke pi:che se ja:ti: hε*  
bus hospital-gen behind-obl from go-ptc is  
A bus runs at the back of the hospital.

30. अस्पताल के पीछे तक बस आती है।  
*aspata:l ke pi:che tak bas a:ti: hε*  
hospital-gen behind-obl up to bus come-ptc is  
The bus comes up to the back side of the hospital.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

Superior location is denoted by the use of the postpositions ऊपर (से) *u:par (se)*, ‘above,’ preceded by the oblique case suffixes added to the nouns.

31. मकान के ऊपर से पक्षी उड़ते हैं।  
*maka:n ke u:par se pakši: urte hε.*  
house-gen above from birds fly-ptc are  
The birds fly above the (top of the) house.

Interior and interior-contact locations are not distinguished. They are indicated by the postposition नीचे *ni:ce* ‘under, below,’ नीचे से *ni:ce se* ‘from under’ and नीचे तक *ni:ce tak* ‘up to under’ preceded by the case suffixes added to nouns.

32. ज़मीन के नीचे पानी निकला।  
*zami:n ke ni:ce pa:ni: nikla:.*  
ground-obl under water came out  
Water appeared from under the ground.
33. ज़मीन के नीचे से पानी चलता है।  
*zami:n ke ni:ce se pa:ni: calta: hε.*  
ground-obl under from water flow-pr is  
Water is passing through under the ground.
34. दीवार के नीचे तक पानी है।  
*di:va:r ke ni:ce tak pa:ni: hε.*  
wall-obl under upto water is  
Water is underneath the wall.

Lateral and lateral-contact locations are expressed by the postpositions के पास *ke pa:s/*के साथ *sa:th* ‘in the company of/besides.’

35. अमर उमा के पास/साथ बैठा।  
*amar uma: ke pa:s/sa:th bεṭha:.*  
Amar Uma near sat  
Amar sat near Uma.

Cterior location is expressed by की ओर *ki: or* ‘towards’ preceded by the proximate demonstrative इस *is* ‘this’ in the oblique case. It is also denoted by the term इस ओर *is or* ‘this side’ which does not take a separate proximate demonstrative.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

36. उसकी दुकान सड़क के इस ओर है।  
*uski: duka:n sarak ke is or hε.*  
his shop road-obl this side  
His house is on this side of the road.
37. नदी के इस ओर कितने बच्चे हैं?  
*nadi: ke is or kitne bacce hε?*  
river this side how many children are  
How many children are there on this side of the river?

Ulterior location is expressed by की ओर *ki: or* ‘side’ preceded by the remote demonstrative उस *us* ‘that.’ It can also be denoted by the use of उस पार *us pa:r* ‘on the other side.’

38. सड़क के उस ओर नए मकान बने हैं।  
*sarak ke us or naye maka:n bane hε.*  
road-obl that-obl side new houses constructed are  
New houses are constructed on that side of the road.
39. सड़क के उस पार काफी आवादी है।  
*sarak ke us pa:r kaphi: a:ba:di: hε.*  
road that side abundant population is  
There is a large population on the other side of the road.

Medial location is expressed by the terms के बीच में *ke bi:c mē* ‘in the middle,’ के भीतर *ke bhi:tar* ‘inside,’ or के दरमियान/मध्य में *ke darmia:n/madhy mē* ‘in the middle,’ के बीच से *ke bi:c se* ‘through the middle,’ के बीच तक *ke bi:c tak* ‘up to the middle of.’

40. मेरा घर बाज़ार के बीच में है।  
*mera: ghar ba:za:r ke bi:c mē hε.*  
my house market middle in is  
My house is in the middle of the market.
41. यह दुकान दो सड़कों के बीच में है।  
*yah duka:n do sarkō ke bi:c mē hε.*  
this shop two roads-obl middle is  
This shop is between the two roads.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

42. गाँव के दरमियान एक मस्जिद है।  
*ga:ū: ke darmiya:n ek masjid hε.*  
village middle is one mosque is  
There is a mosque in the middle of the village.
43. गाँव के बीच में से एक नदी बहती है।  
*ga:ū: ke bi:c mē se ek nadi: bahti: hε.*  
village middle through one stream flow-ptc is  
A stream passes through the village.
44. गाँव के बीच तक पानी पहुँचता है।  
*ga:ū: ke bi:c tak pa:ni: pahūcta: hε.*  
village center up to water reach-ptc is  
Water reaches up to the center of the village.

Circumferential location is denoted by adding के इर्द गिर्द *ke ird gird* ‘around,’ के चारों ओर *ke ca:rō* or ‘on all sides’ preceded by the oblique forms of subject nouns.

45. इस बाग के इर्द गिर्द/चारों ओर एक दीवार है।  
*is ba:g ke ird gird/ca:rō or ek di:va:r hε.*  
this-obl garden around/four sides one wall is  
There is a wall around this garden.
46. पुलीस बैंक के चारों तरफ खड़ी है।  
*puli:s bank ke ca:rō tarph khari: hε.*  
police bank all sides standing is  
The police are standing on all the sides of the bank.

Cterior-anterior location is expressed by सामने *sa:mne* ‘in front of’ preceded by the subject nouns in oblique case. The expression के सामने से *ke sa:mne se* is used to denote ‘in the opposite direction.’

47. अमर चोर के सामने खड़ा है।  
*amar cor ke sa:mne khara: tha:.*  
Amar thief-gen front-obl standing was  
Amar was standing in front of the thief.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

48. वह पुलिसवाला के सामने से गुज़रा।  
*vah pulisva:la: ke sa:mne se guzra:.*  
he policeman-gen front-obl from passed  
He passed in front of the policeman.

Motion past an object at some distance is expressed by के बीच में से *ke bi:c mē se* ‘past/through in(side)’ preceded by the noun in the oblique case.

49. तेल लंबी पाइप से कारखाने तक पहुँचता है।  
*tel lambi: payip se ka:rxa:ne tak pahūcta: he.*  
oil long-fs pipe through factory-obl up to reach-ptc is  
Oil reaches the factory through the long pipe.

Motion past an object at right and left angles to it is expressed using phrases such as दाईं ओर *da:i:ñ: or* ‘on the right-hand side’ and बाईं ओर *ba:i:ñ: or* ‘on the left-hand side.’

50. सड़क के आग्निक पर सीधे दाईं ओर निकलो।  
*sarak ke a:khir par si:dhe da:i:ñ: or niklo.*  
road-gen end at straight right hand side go-imp  
At the end of this road, go straight towards the right.
51. पुल पार करके बाईं ओर जाना।  
*pul pa:r karke ba:i:ñ: or ja:na:.*  
bridge cross-cp left towards go-imp  
After crossing the bridge, go straight towards the left.

Other directional locatives are exemplified as follows.

52. भारत के उत्तर/दक्षिण/पूर्व/पश्चिम में मौसम ठीक है।  
*bha:rat ke uttar/dakšin/pu:rv/pascim mē mōsim thi:kh he*  
India-gen north/south/east/west in climate good is  
The climate is good in the north/south/east/west of India.

The directional postposition की ओर *ki: or* ‘towards’ is added to the above terms of directional locatives to indicate the meaning of ‘toward north/south/east/west.’

The expression नाक के सीधे में *na:k ke si:dh mē* ‘straight in the direction of nose’ is used to denote the directional locative ‘straight ahead.’

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

53. तुम नाक के सीध में चलो ।  
*tum na:k ke si:dh mē calo.*  
you nose-gen straight in walk  
Walk straight ahead.

Directional/locational precision is expressed by adding the emphatic particle - ही *hi:* to the locative expression.

54. वह घर में ही रहा ।  
*vah ghar mē hi: raha:*  
he home inside-emp remained  
He stayed right inside the house.

55. उसने मुझे सूचना दरवाजे पर ही दी ।  
*usne mujhe su:cna: darva:ze par hi: di:*  
he-erg me message door-at-emp gave  
He conveyed the message to me right at the door.

#### **3.1.3. Noun Derivation**

A large number of nouns in Hindi are derived from nouns, adjectives, and verbs by using prefixes and suffixes. In this process certain morphophonemic changes take place.

##### **3.1.3.1. Nouns from Nouns**

Mostly Persian and Sanskrit prefixes and suffixes are used with the nouns of Persian and Sanskrit origin respectively. Some of these are used with native words. The most common prefixes are: बे *be-*, बद *bad-*, वर *bar-*, ना *na:-* अप *ap-*, कु *ku-*, दुर *dur-*, and निर *nir-*.

| बे <i>be-</i> (Persian) without |        |         |        |          |             |
|---------------------------------|--------|---------|--------|----------|-------------|
| शर्म                            | śarm   | shame   | बेशर्म | beśarm   | shameless   |
| ईमान                            | i:ma:n | faith   | बेईमान | bei:ma:n | dishonest   |
| मतलब                            | matlab | meaning | बेमतलब | bematlab | meaningless |

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

| बद bad- (Persian) bad |        |             |           |           |                 |
|-----------------------|--------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------------|
| तमीज़                 | tami:z | manner      | बदतमीज़   | badtami:z | mannerless      |
| मिज़ाज़               | miza:j | temperament | बदमिज़ाज़ | badmiza:j | bad temperament |
| ज़ात                  | za:t   | character   | बदज़ात    | badza:t   | bad character   |

| वर bar- (Persian) on |      |      |                |         |
|----------------------|------|------|----------------|---------|
| वक्त                 | vakt | time | बरवक्त barvakt | on time |

| ना na:- (Persian) not |        |      |                  |         |
|-----------------------|--------|------|------------------|---------|
| पसंद                  | pasand | like | नापसंद na:pasand | dislike |

| अप ap- (Sanskrit) opposite |      |       |               |           |
|----------------------------|------|-------|---------------|-----------|
| मान                        | ma:n | honor | अपमान apma:n  | dishonor  |
| शब्द                       | śabd | word  | अपशब्द apśabd | bad words |

| दुर dur- (Sanskrit) bad |       |           |         |          |               |
|-------------------------|-------|-----------|---------|----------|---------------|
| दशा                     | daša: | condition | दुर्दशा | durdaša: | bad condition |
| गति                     | gati: | position  | दुर्गति | durgati: | bad position  |

| कु ku- (Sanskrit) bad |       |           |                |              |
|-----------------------|-------|-----------|----------------|--------------|
| कर्म                  | karm  | deed      | कुकर्म kukarm  | bad deed     |
| पोशन                  | pošan | nutrition | कुपोशन kupošan | malnutrition |

| निर nir- (Sanskrit) without |       |         |                 |            |
|-----------------------------|-------|---------|-----------------|------------|
| आदर                         | a:dar | respect | निरादर nira:dar | disrespect |
| दोष                         | doš   | fault   | निर्दोष nirdoš  | innocent   |

The most common suffixes are -दार *-da:r*, -गर *-gar*, -बद *-band*, and -दान *-da:n*.

| - दार da:r (Persian) owner |        |      |           |            |            |
|----------------------------|--------|------|-----------|------------|------------|
| दुकान                      | duka:n | shop | दुकानदार  | duka:nda:r | shopkeeper |
| ज़मीन                      | zami:n | land | दज़मीनदार | zami:nda:r | landlord   |

| गर -gar (Persian) with |        |       |                  |          |
|------------------------|--------|-------|------------------|----------|
| सोदा                   | soda:  | items | सोदागर soda:gar  | merchant |
| जादू                   | ja:du: | magic | जादूगर ja:du:gar | magician |

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

| -वंद band (Persian) bound |        |       |           |            |          |
|---------------------------|--------|-------|-----------|------------|----------|
| कमर                       | kamar  | waist | कमरवंद    | kamarband  | belt     |
| विस्तर                    | bistar | bed   | विस्तरवंद | bistarband | hold-all |

| -दची ci: (Persian) with |          |                     |              |  |  |
|-------------------------|----------|---------------------|--------------|--|--|
| खड़जाना xaza:na:        | treasure | खड़जानची xaza:anci: | cashier      |  |  |
| अफीम afi:m              | opium    | अफीमची afi:mcii:    | opium addict |  |  |

| -दान da:n (Persian) container |       |                   |           |           |
|-------------------------------|-------|-------------------|-----------|-----------|
| कलम kalam                     | pen   | कलमदान kalamda:n  | kalamda:n | penholder |
| रोशन rošan                    | light | रोशनदान rošanda:n | rošanda:n | window    |

| -खाना kha:na: (Persian) house |        |                       |         |
|-------------------------------|--------|-----------------------|---------|
| कार ka:r                      | work   | कारखाना ka:rxa:na:    | factory |
| शराब šara:b                   | liquor | शराबखाना šara:bxa:na: | bar     |

#### 3.1.3.2. Nouns from Adjectives

The most productive suffixes used for deriving abstract nouns from adjectives are -ई -i:, -ता -ta:, -pan, -आई -a:i:, -इयत -iyat, -आस -a:s.

| -ई -i:        |       |                  |             |
|---------------|-------|------------------|-------------|
| कमज़ोर kamzor | weak  | कमज़ोरी kamzori: | weakness    |
| खुश xuš       | happy | खुशी xuši:       | happiness   |
| गरम garam     | hot   | गरमी garmi:      | heat        |
| गरीब gari:b   | poor  | गरीबी gari:bi:   | poverty     |
| सर्द sard     | cold  | सर्दी sardi:     | coldness    |
| मोटा mota:    | fat   | मोटाई mota:i:    | thickness   |
| ख़राब xara:b  | bad   | ख़राबी xara:bi:  | defect      |
| साफ sa:f      | clean | सफाई safai:      | cleanliness |
| ऊँचा ū:ca:    | high  | ऊँचाई ū:ca:i:    | height      |
| चौड़ा cɔra:   | wide  | चौड़ाई cɔra:i:   | width       |
| नेक nek       | noble | नेकी neki:       | nobility    |
| सच्चा sacca:  | true  | सच्चाई sacca:i:  | truth       |
| मीठा mi:tha:  | sweet | मिठाई miṭha:i:   | sweets      |

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

| -ता -ta:       |         |                     |             |
|----------------|---------|---------------------|-------------|
| मूर्ख mu:rkh   | stupid  | मूर्खता mu:rkhta:   | stupidity   |
| पवित्र pavitr  | pure    | पवित्रता pavitarta: | purity      |
| विशेष višeš    | special | विशेषता višešta:    | specialty   |
| विशाल viša:l   | large   | विशालता viša:lta:   | largeness   |
| सुंदर sundar   | beauty  | सुंदरता sundarta:   | beautiful   |
| समान sama:n    | equal   | समानता sama:nta:    | equality    |
| गंभीर gambhi:r | serious | गंभीरता gambhi:rta: | seriousness |

| -पन -pan         |      |                       |          |
|------------------|------|-----------------------|----------|
| कच्चा kacca:     | raw  | कच्चापन kacca:pan     | rawness  |
| कर्मीना kami:na: | mean | कर्मीनापन kami:na:pan | meanness |
| पागल pa:gal      | mad  | पागलपन pa:galpan      | madness  |

| -आई -a:i:   |        |                |          |
|-------------|--------|----------------|----------|
| चढ़ carh    | climb  | चढ़ाई carha:i: | climbing |
| पढ़ parh    | study  | पढ़ाई parha:i: | studies  |
| कर्मा kama: | earn   | कर्माई kama:i: | earning  |
| सुन sun     | listen | सुनाई suna:i:  | hearing  |

| -इयत -iyat |         |                 |           |
|------------|---------|-----------------|-----------|
| असली asli: | real    | असलियत asliyat  | reality   |
| खास xa:s   | special | खासियत xa:siyat | specialty |

| - आस -a:s    |       |               |           |
|--------------|-------|---------------|-----------|
| मीठा mi:ṭha: | sweet | मिठास miṭha:s | sweetness |

#### 3.1.3.3. Nouns from Verbs

The suffix **-ना -na:** is used to derive gerundive nouns from verb stems. The suffixes **-आस -as**, **-अन -an**, **-ई -i:**, **-वत -vat**, and **-2** are also used to derive abstract nouns from verb stems.

| -ना -na: |       |               |          |
|----------|-------|---------------|----------|
| आ a:     | come  | आना a:na:     | coming   |
| ला la:   | bring | लाना la:na:   | bringing |
| लिख likh | write | लिखना likhna: | writing  |
| पढ़ parh | read  | पढ़ना parhna: | reading  |

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

|                 |        |                |           |
|-----------------|--------|----------------|-----------|
| <b>- अन -an</b> |        |                |           |
| धड़क dharak     | throb  | धड़कन dharhkan | throbbing |
| पलग lag         | attach | पलगन lagan     | devotion  |

|                |         |                |         |
|----------------|---------|----------------|---------|
| <b>- ई -i:</b> |         |                |         |
| जोड़ jor       | add     | जोड़ी jori:    | a pair  |
| लड़ lar        | quarrel | लड़ाई lara:i:  | dispute |
| लिख likh       | write   | लिखाई likha:i: | writing |
| पढ़ parh       | read    | पढ़ाई parha:i: | studies |

|                 |          |                 |            |
|-----------------|----------|-----------------|------------|
| <b>-वट -vat</b> |          |                 |            |
| बना bana:       | make     | बनावट bana:vat  | shape      |
| सजा saja:       | decorate | सजावट saja:vat  | decoration |
| थक thak         | be tired | थकावट thaka:vat | tiredness  |

**-2**

|            |             |            |               |
|------------|-------------|------------|---------------|
| छाप cha:p  | print       | छाप cha:p  | printing      |
| ठग thag    | cheat       | ठग thag    | cheat         |
| दौड़ dɔṛ   | run         | दौड़ dɔṛ   | race          |
| मार ma:r   | beat        | मार ma:r   | beating       |
| मोड़ mor   | turn        | मोड़ mor   | turning point |
| उपज upaj   | produce     | उपज upaj   | product       |
| हार ha:r   | be defeated | हार ha:r   | defeat        |
| खर्च kharc | spend       | खर्च kharc | expenditure   |
| खेल khel   | play        | खेल khel   | play          |
| समझ samajh | understand  | समझ samajh | understanding |
| सोच soc    | think       | सोच soc    | thinking      |

#### **3.1.4. Noun Compounds**

Compounds belonging to the noun category are headed by a noun, which is a final member of the group. The first member may be a noun, an adjective, or a participle and may be declined for number, gender and case. A postposition is attached to the final member of the compound.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

#### 3.1.4.1. Noun-Noun Compounds

Noun-noun compounds can be divided into several subgroups based on semantic criteria: copulative compounds, partial duplicated compounds, superordinate compounds, complex compounds, hybrid compounds, genitive-noun compound, and participial compounds.

#### 3.1.4.2. Copulative Compounds

Copulative compounds, also known as co-compounds, are composed of semantically-related nouns. Each noun behaves as an independent constituent in the sense that each may be separately inflected for gender and number, though not for a postposition. Members of some compounds occur in a fixed order.

|                        |                      |               |
|------------------------|----------------------|---------------|
| माता पिता ma:ta: pita: | mother and father    | *pita: ma:ta: |
| भाई बहिन bha:i: bahan  | brother and sister   | ?bahan bha:i: |
| सुख दुःख sukh dukh     | happiness and sorrow | dukh sukh     |
| पाप पुण्य pa:p puny    | sin and good deeds   | *puny pa:p    |
| ऊँच नीच ū:c ni:c       | high and low         | *ni:c ū:c     |

#### 3.1.4.3. Reduplicated Compounds

Reduplicated compounds express exhaustive meaning.

|                           |               |             |
|---------------------------|---------------|-------------|
| घर घर ghar ghar           | (house-house) | every house |
| बच्चा बच्चा bacca: bacca: | (child-child) | every child |
| पैसा पैसा pesa: pesa:     | (penny-penny) | every penny |

#### 3.1.4.4. Partially Duplicated Compounds

In a partial duplicated compound, also known as an echo-compound, the second member is formed by changing the initial letter of the first member. An initial व /v/ is changed into श /š/ or प /p/; all other initial consonants or vowels are replaced by व /v/ or श /š/. The meaning of the compound extends beyond the meaning of their members. The compounds usually represent the meaning of similar or associative things.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

|  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| वानर शानर va:nar řa:nar                | monkey and the like  |
| वादा शादा va:da: řa:da:                | promise and the like |
| वोट शोट voṭ řoṭ                        | vote and the like    |
| काम शाम/वाम ka:m řa:m/va:m             | work and the like    |
| कहानी वानी/शानी kaha:ni: va:ni:/řahni: | story and the like   |
| दूध शूध du:dh řu:dh                    | milk and the like    |
| पानी वानी/शानी pa:ni: va:ni:/řa:ni:    | water and the like   |

#### **3.1.4.5. Superordinate Compounds**

In this type of compound, the meaning projected by the members does not in any way relate to the meaning of the compound as a whole.

|                          |                   |             |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-------------|
| हाथ पांव ha:th pa:ū:     | (hand-feet)       | body        |
| खाना पीना kha:na: pi:na: | (eating-drinking) | lifestyle   |
| जल वायु jal va:yu        | (water-air)       | climate     |
| चाय पानी ca:y pa:ni:     | (tea-water)       | refreshment |

#### **3.1.4.6. Complex Compounds**

Complex compounds involving three or more nouns are not very common in Hindi.

|                       |                   |          |
|-----------------------|-------------------|----------|
| तन मन धन tan man dhan | (body-mind-money) | devotion |
|-----------------------|-------------------|----------|

#### **3.1.4.7. Hybrid Compounds**

In hybrid compounds, one member is usually borrowed from another language and the second member is a Hindi noun.

|                      |                  |       |
|----------------------|------------------|-------|
| डबल रोटी dabal roti: | (double-bread )  | bread |
| रेल गाड़ी rel ga:ri: | (tracks-vehicle) | train |

#### **3.1.4.8. Adjective-Noun Compounds**

A large number of compounds are composed of an adjective followed by a noun. There are no single terms for them.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

|                             |                  |          |
|-----------------------------|------------------|----------|
| काली मिर्च ka:li: mirc      | (black-pepper)   | pepper   |
| छोटी इलायची choṭi: ila:yci: | (small cardamom) | cardamom |

#### 3.1.4.9. Modifier-Noun Compounds

In modifier-noun compounds, the first member acts like a modifier or source and the second member is a noun.

|                      |                |                 |
|----------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| बैल गाड़ी bel ga:ri: | (bull-vehicle) | bullock cart    |
| गंगा जल gaṇa: jal    | (Ganges-water) | water of Ganges |

#### 3.2. Pronouns

Pronouns are inflected for number and case. Broadly, there are seven classes of pronouns in Hindi: personal, demonstrative, relative, possessive, reflexive, interrogative, and indefinite. Pronouns in the direct and oblique cases are presented below.

##### 3.2.1. Personal Pronouns

| Case          | Person               | Sg  | Pl  |     |
|---------------|----------------------|-----|-----|-----|
| <b>Direct</b> |                      |     |     |     |
|               | 1 <sup>st</sup>      | मैं | mē  | हम  |
|               | 2 <sup>nd</sup> (sg) | तू  | tu  | तुम |
|               | (hon sg/pl)          | आप  | a:p | आप  |
|               | 3 <sup>rd</sup> prox | यह  | yah | ये  |
|               | rem                  | वह  | vah | वे  |

Note that the personal pronoun आप *a:p* is used as an honorific form of address for both singular and plural subjects. In the polite speech, it is occasionally used for a person spoken about in place of ये *ye*. The term लोग *log* may be attached to a plural pronoun for defining or emphasizing plurality: आप लोग *a:p log*, हम लोग *ham log*, तुम लोग *tum log*, ये लोग *ye log*, वे लोग *ve log*.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

| Case   | Person               | Sg                       | Pl                        |
|--|----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Dative को ko</b>                              |                      |                          |                           |
|  | 1 <sup>st</sup>      | मुझे mujhe/ मुझको mujhko | हमें hamē/ हमको hamko     |
|  | 2 <sup>nd</sup>      | तुम्हे tumhe/तुमको tumko | तुम्हें tumhē/तुमको tumko |
|  |                      | आपको a:pko               | आपको a:pko                |
|  | 3 <sup>rd</sup> prox | इसे ise/इसको isko        | इन्हें inhē/इनको inko     |
|  | rem                  | उसे use/उनको unko        | उन्हेंunhē/उनको unko      |
| <b>Ergative ने ne</b>                            |                      |                          |                           |
|  | 1 <sup>st</sup>      | मैंने mēne               | हमने hamne                |
|  | 2 <sup>nd</sup>      | तूने tu:ne               | तुमने tumne               |
|  |                      | आपने a:pne               | आपने a:pne                |
|  | 3 <sup>rd</sup> prox | इसने isne                | इन्होंने inhōne           |
|  | rem                  | उसने usne                | उन्होंने unhōne           |
| <b>Locative पर par</b>                           |                      |                          |                           |
|  | 1 <sup>st</sup>      | मुझपर mujhpar            | हमपर hampar               |
|  | 2 <sup>nd</sup>      | तुझपर tujhpar            | तुमपर tumpar              |
|  |                      | आपपर a:ppar              | आपपर a:ppar               |
|  | 3 <sup>rd</sup> prox | इसपर ispar               | इनपर inpar                |
|  | rem                  | उसपर uspar               | उनपर unpar                |
| <b>Ablative से se</b>                            |                      |                          |                           |
|  | 1 <sup>st</sup>      | मुझसे mujhse             | हमसे hamse                |
|  | 2 <sup>nd</sup>      | तुमसे tum se             | तुमसे tumse               |
|  |                      | आपसे a:pse               | आपसे a:pse                |
|  | 3 <sup>rd</sup> prox | इससे isse                | इनसे inse                 |
|  | rem                  | उससे usse                | उनसे un se                |
| <b>Possessive / Genitive का ka:/ के ke/की ki</b> |                      |                          |                           |
|  | 1 <sup>st</sup>      | मेरा mera:               | हमारा hama:ra:            |
|  | 2 <sup>nd</sup>      | तेरा tera:               | तुम्हारा tumha:ra:        |
|  |                      | आपका a:pka:              | आपका a:pka:               |
|  | 3 <sup>rd</sup> prox | इसका iska:               | उसका uska:                |
|  | rem                  | उसका uska:               | उनका unka:                |

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

#### 3.2.2. Demonstrative Pronouns

| Direct/Nominative Case |        |       |
|------------------------|--------|-------|
|                        | Sg     | Pl    |
| prox                   | यह yeh | ये ye |
| rem                    | वह vah | वे ve |

| Oblique Case को ko/मैं mẽ/पर par/का ka:/के ke/की ki:/ असे se |       |       |
|--|-------|-------|
|  | Sg    | Pl    |
| prox   | इस is | इन in |
| rem  | उस us | उन un |

Note that the demonstrative pronouns are also used as personal pronouns of the third person.

There are two additional pronouns which are used in the sense of ‘so and so’ to refer to third person subjects: अमुक *amuk* and फलाना *fala:na:/* फलाना *fala:na:*.

#### 3.2.3. Relative Pronouns

Hindi has one relative pronoun: जो *jo* ‘who, which, that, what’ in both the singular and plural. It is accompanied with वह *vah* in the main sentence called correlative of जो *jo*. The correlative form सो *so* ‘he, they’ is now obsolete, it is used in proverbs and sayings. The term लोग *log* may be added to जो *jo* to indicate or emphasize plurality: जो लोग *jo log*. The oblique forms of the relative pronoun used along with the case-signs are as follows.

| Singular              | Plural                    |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| जिस jis/जिसने jisne   | जिन jin/जिन्होंने jinhõne |
| जिसको jisko/जिसे jise | जिनको jinko/जिन्हें jinhẽ |
| जिससे jis se          | जिनसे jin se              |

#### 3.2.4. Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive pronouns substitute and refer to a noun or pronoun which is the logical subject of the sentence. Hindi has three reflexive pronouns: आप *a:p*, its oblique forms अपना *apna:* and अपने *apne*, and a compound form of these two, अपने आप *apne-a:p*. The oblique form

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

आपस *a:pas* means ‘each other’ or ‘one another.’ The reflexive pronoun आप *a:p* is also substituted by the Sanskrit borrowed term स्वयं *svayam* or Persian-borrowed term खुद *khud* in Sanskritized and Persianized styles respectively. The reflexive pronoun आप *a:p* optionally followed by the emphatic form ही *hi:* has an adjectival meaning. It can also be used as an adverb in the meaning ‘of one’s own accord, spontaneously.’ Similarly, अपने आप *apne-a:p* can either be used in an emphatic sense or in the adverbial meaning of ‘of one’s own accord.’

1. वह आप ही/अपने आप घर गया।  
*vah a:p hi:/ apne-a:p ghar gaya:*  
he himself emp home went  
He himself went home.

Note that the oblique forms of अपने *apne* and अपने आप *apne-a:p* (except when adverbial) mean ‘oneself’ with the case-signs/postpositions को *ko*, से *se*, में *mē*, and पर *par*.

#### **3.2.5. Interrogative Pronouns**

In both singular and plural, there are two basic interrogative pronouns: कौन *kōn* ‘who’(referring to person) and क्या *kya:* ‘what’(referring to things). The interrogative pronoun क्या *kya:* is a neutral form. It is also used for denoting the interrogative nature of the sentence. Note that कौन *kōn* and क्या *kya:* can be used as relative pronouns too.

2. कौन आया, कोई नहीं जानता।  
*kōn a:ya:, koyi: nahī: ja:nta:*  
who came no one neg knows  
Nobody knows who came.

The interrogative pronoun क्या *kya:* is also used as an exclamatory adjective.

3. क्या सुंदर बाग है!  
*kya: sundar ba:g hε!*  
what beautiful garden is  
What a beautiful garden!

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

It is also used as an emphatic negation.

4. लड़की क्या है, नाजुक फूल है।  
*larki: kya: he, na:zuk phu:l he.*  
girl what is delicate flower is  
It is not a girl; it is a delicate flower.  
(What a girl! Just like a delicate flower.)

Interrogative adverbial forms related to these pronouns are: कब *kab* ‘when,’ कैसा *kaisa:* ‘how,’ कौनसा *konsa:* ‘which one,’ कितना *kitna:* ‘how much.’

#### 3.2.6. Indefinite Pronouns

There are two indefinite pronouns in Hindi: कोई *koi:* ‘someone, somebody’ and कुछ *kuch* ‘something.’ कुछ *kuch* is also used as an adjective (numeral and quantitative) and as an adverb meaning ‘some, a few, a little, partly.’ Similarly, कोई *koi:* can be used as an adverb in the sense of ‘some, about.’ It can refer to ‘something’ if used with -रा/-री *-ra/-ri:* = कोई रा *koi: sa:/* कोई री *koi: si:.* कोई *koi:* may also be used as the plural form to indicate ‘some people.’

#### 3.2.7. Oblique Forms of Pronouns

Whereas the same case-signs namely ने *ne*, को *ko*, क से *se*, में *mē*, पर *par* and का *ka:* are attached to pronouns as they are attached to nouns, in some cases the oblique forms of pronouns are formed differently.

| Direct          |                 | Oblique           |                      |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| Sg              | Pl              | Sg                | Pl                   |
| यह <i>yeh</i>   | ये <i>ye</i>    | इस <i>is</i>      | इन <i>in</i>         |
| वह <i>vah</i>   | वे <i>ve</i>    | उस <i>us</i>      | उन <i>un</i>         |
| जो <i>jo</i>    | जो <i>jo</i>    | जिस <i>jis</i>    | जिन <i>jin</i>       |
| सो <i>so</i>    | सो <i>so</i>    | तिस <i>tis</i>    | तिन <i>tin</i>       |
| कोई <i>koi:</i> | कोई <i>koi:</i> | किसी <i>kisi:</i> | किंहीं <i>kinhī:</i> |

Note that (i) when the case-signs are added the singular forms यह *yeh*, वह *vah*, जो *jo*, and सो *so* change to इस *is*, उस *us*, जिस *jis* and तिस *tis* respectively; कौन *kon* and क्या *kya:* change to किस *kis;* and कुछ *kuch* changes to किसी *kisi:.* (ii) In the plural, except before ने *ne*, these

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

change to इन *in*, उन *un*, जिन *jin*, तिन *tin*, किन *kin*, and किंहीं *kinhīः*. (iii) Before ने *ne*, the plural oblique forms are: इन्हूं *inhūः*; उन्हों *unhūः*; जिन्हों *jinhūः*; किन्हों *kinhūः*; and किंहीं *kinhīः*. (iv) मैं *mē* and तू *tuः* remain unchanged before ने *ne*: (मैंने *mēne*, तूने *tuःne*). v) Followed by other case-signs, मैं *mē* and तू *tuः* change to मुझ *mujh* and तूझ *tujh* (मुझको *mujhko*, तूझको *tujhko*). (vi) The pronouns हम *ham* and तुम *tum* remain unchanged before all case-signs: हमको *hamko*, तुम्हें *tumhēः*. (vii) The postposition का *kaः* is not attached to मैं *mē*, तू *tuः*, and तुम *tum*. They change to the following forms agreeing with the object noun in gender and number.

| Masculine          |                   | Feminine           |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| Sg                 | Pl                | Sg/Pl              |
| मेरा meraः         | मेरे              | मेरी meriः         |
| तेरा teraः         | तेरे tere         | तेरी teriः         |
| तुम्हारा tumha:raः | तुम्हारे tumha:re | तुम्हारी tumha:riः |

(viii) As an alternative to को *ko*, all oblique forms attach an ए *e* in singular and हैं *hē* in plural: इसे *ise*/इसको *isko*, उसे *use*/उनको *unko*, इन्हें *inhē*/इनको *inko*, उन्हें *unhēः*/उनको *unko*, तुम्हें *tumhēः*/तुझे *tujhe*, हमें *hamēः*/हमको *hamko*. In the case of *ham*, एं *ē* is added, not हैं *hē*. Note that एं *ē* or हैं *hē* is not attached to the indefinite pronouns कोई *koiः* and कुछ *kuch*.

As pointed out earlier, the reflexive pronoun उआप *a:p* changes to उअपने *apne* before the case signs को *ko*, उसे *se*, मैं *mē*, and पर *par*. ने *ne* is not added to the reflexive आप *a:p* but only to the subject to which आप *a:p* refers. For denoting various senses of का *kaः*, आप *a:p* changes to अपना *apnaः*, अपने *apne*, and अपनी *apniः*.

#### **3.2.8. Compound Pronouns**

Two, or more than two pronouns may be compounded or the same pronoun may be repeated to convey various shades of meanings. The following are some important compound pronouns.

|                             |                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| अपने आप <i>apne a:p</i>     | by oneself             |
| आप ही आप <i>a:p hiः a:p</i> | by oneself, to oneself |
| जो कोई <i>jo koiः</i>       | who(so)ever            |
| जो कुछ <i>jo kuch</i>       | what(so)ever           |
| जो जो <i>jo jo</i>          | whoever/whatever       |

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

|                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| कोई कोई koi: koi:         | some, a few (archaic)                     |
| सब कोई sab koi:           | all, everybody (archaic)                  |
| हर कोई har koi:           | all, everybody                            |
| कोई koi: na koi:          | someone or the other                      |
| कोई कोई koi: ... koi:     | some ... others <i>or</i> one ... another |
| कुछ न कुछ kuch na kuch    | something or the other                    |
| कुछ का कुछ kuch ka: kuch  | something different from expected         |
| सब कुछ sab kuch           | everything                                |
| बहुत कुछ bahut kuch       | a great deal                              |
| कुछ कुछ kuch kuch         | somewhat, a little                        |
| कोई और koi: or            | someone else                              |
| और कोई or koi:            | someone else                              |
| कोई दूसरा koi: du:sra:    | someone else                              |
| कुछ और kuch or            | something else, a little more             |
| और कुछ or kuch            | something else                            |
| कुछ ... कुछ kuch ... kuch | some ... some (Conjunctive)               |
| कोई सा koi: sa:           | anything, something                       |
| कोई सा kōn sa:            | which one                                 |
| कौन कौन kōn kōn           | which persons, which ones                 |
| क्या क्या kya: kya:       | which things                              |
| क्या से क्या kya: se kya: | something contrary to expectations        |
| क्या क्या kya: ... kya:   | equally, without difference               |
| आपस में की a:pas mē/ki:   | each other, one another                   |

All the pronouns can be combined with the emphatic particle ही *hi*: like मैं ही *mē hi*: ‘I myself,’ तू ही *tu: hi*: ‘thou thyself,’ आप ही *a:p hi*: ‘you yourself,’ कोई ही *koi: hi*: ‘hardly any one,’ and कुछ ही *kuch hi*: ‘hardly a few.’ Note that most of these compounds are affected by Sandhi and are modified: मुझ *mujh* + ही *hi*: = मुझी *mujhi*; तुझ *tujh* + ही *hi*: = तुझी *tujhi*; हम *ham* + ही *hi*: = हम्ही *hamhi*; , तुम *tum* + ही *hi*: = तुम्ही *tumhi*; वह *vah* + ही *hi*: = वही *vahi*; , यह *yeh* + ही *hi*: = यही *yahi*; उस *us* + ही *hi*: = उसी *usi*; , इस *is* + ही *hi*: = इसी *isi*; , किस *kis* + ही *hi*: = किसी *kisi*; , इन *in* + ही *hi*: = इन्हीं *inhi*; , उन *un* + ही *hi*: = उन्हीं *unhi*; , जिन *jin* + ही *hi*: + जिन्हीं *jini*; , किन *kin* + ही *hi*: = किन्हीं *kinhi*.

### 3.3. Adjectives

Adjectives in Hindi can be classified into two groups: (i) inflected and (ii) uninfl ected.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

#### **3.3.1. Inflected**

These adjectives are inflected for gender and number.

| Masculine    |             | Feminine     |       |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|-------|
| Sg           | Pl          | Sg / Pl      |       |
| बड़ा bara:   | बड़े bare   | बड़ी barī:   | big   |
| छोटा choṭa:  | छोटे choṭe  | छोटी choṭī:  | small |
| लंबा lamba:  | लंबे lambe  | लंबी lambi:  | tall  |
| काला ka:la:  | काले kale   | काली ka:li:  | black |
| हरा hara:    | हरे hare    | हरी hari:    | green |
| अच्छा accha: | अच्छे acche | अच्छी acchi: | good  |

#### **3.3.2. Uninflected**

These adjectives are not inflected for number and gender.

|  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| सुंदर लड़का/लड़की sundar larka: /larki:  | beautiful boy/girl |
| दुःखी आदमी /ओरत dukhi: admi:/ ṣrat       | sad man/woman      |
| सफेद कपड़ा /कर्मज् saphed kapra: /kami:z | white cloth/shirt  |

#### **3.3.3. Types of Adjectives**

There are two broad types of adjectives: (i) those that describe a quality or quantity, and (ii) those that distinguish one person or thing from another.

(i) Quality is expressed either by a basic adjective or by an adjective derived from a noun.

|                                |                  |
|--------------------------------|------------------|
| सुंदर लड़की sundar larki:      | a beautiful girl |
| शर्मिला लड़का šarmi:la: larka: | a bashful boy    |

The adjective शर्मिला šarmi:la: is derived by adding the suffix - ईला i:la: to the noun stem. Negative qualities are expressed by a separate set of adjectives and also by adding negative prefixes.

|                             |                 |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| बदसूरत औरत bad-su:rat ṣrat  | an ugly woman   |
| बेशर्म लड़का be-šarm larka: | a shameless boy |

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

Quantity may be expressed either by numerals or by the adjectives of quantity like बहुत *bahut* / अधिक *adhik* ‘a lot,’ काफी *ka:fī*: ‘sufficient,’ कम *kam* ‘less,’ थोड़ा *thora:* ‘a little.’

|            |                     |               |
|------------|---------------------|---------------|
| छे किताबें | <i>che kita:bē</i>  | six books     |
| बहुत लोग   | <i>bahut log</i>    | many people   |
| थोड़ा दूध  | <i>thora: du:dh</i> | a little milk |

Adjectives of quantity may also be formed by the combination of numeral + unit of measure + (classifier (terms of weight, length))/genitive postposition (+ the particle वाला *va:la:*) + noun.

दो सौ गज़ लंबी (वाली) रस्सी।  
*do so gaz lambi: (va:li:) rassi:*  
 two hundred yards long (gen.) rope  
 the two-hundred-yard long rope

दो किलो वजन वाला पत्थर।  
*do kilo vazan va:la: patthar*  
 two kilo weight-gen stone  
 the stone weighing two kilograms

The postposition से *se* is used in the formation of reduplicated adjectival phrases.

|                |                           |                 |
|----------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| अधिक से अधिक   | <i>adhik se adhik</i>     | at most         |
| कम से कम       | <i>kam se kam</i>         | at least        |
| अच्छे से अच्छा | <i>acche se accha:</i>    | the best of all |
| बुरे से बुरा   | <i>bure se bura:</i>      | worst of all    |
| मीठे से मीठा   | <i>mi:the se mi: tha:</i> | very sweet      |

Almost all pronouns can function as adjectives. The demonstrative adjectives that point out persons or things यह - *yeh* ‘this,’ ये ‘these’ वह *vah* ‘that,’ वे ‘those’ - are used in the initial position.

|            |                   |                |
|------------|-------------------|----------------|
| यह घर      | <i>yeh ghar</i>   | this house     |
| ये किताबें | <i>ye kita:bē</i> | these books    |
| वह लड़का   | <i>vah larķā:</i> | that boy       |
| वे बच्चे   | <i>ve bacce</i>   | those children |

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

Interrogative pronouns are used to ask questions.

|                        |            |
|------------------------|------------|
| कौन लड़का? kən ləṛkə:? | which boy? |
| क्या काम? kya: ka:m?   | what work? |

The possessive pronouns particularize or show relation.

|                   |                    |                   |
|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| मेरा / तेरा दोस्त | mera:/tera: dost   | my/your friend    |
| मेरी / आपकी बहिन  | meri:/a:pki: bahan | my/your sister    |
| उसका / उनका भाई   | uska:/unka: bha:i: | his/their brother |

Indefinite and relative pronouns, too, function as adjectives.

|               |               |                 |
|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| कोई अखबार     | koi: akhba:r  | some newspaper  |
| कुछ सब्ज़ियाँ | kuch sabziyā: | some vegetables |
| जो बच्चा      | jo bacca:     | the child who   |

#### **3.3.4. Degree of Adjectives**

There are three varieties of adjectival degrees: superlative, comparative and minimal. Superlative and comparative degrees of qualities are denoted with the help of the postposition *से se* attached to the noun or pronoun (in oblique form) with which the comparison is made. Superlative involves comparison with all. For example,

|                   |                      |                         |
|-------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| सब से बड़ी इमारत  | sab se barī: ima:rat | the biggest building    |
| सब से सुंदर लड़की | sab se sundar ləṛkī: | the most beautiful girl |

Comparative involves comparison between two.

|                    |                     |                        |
|--------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| अपने दोस्त से लंबा | apne dost se lamba: | taller than his friend |
|--------------------|---------------------|------------------------|

Minimal involves no comparison.

|                  |                   |                |
|------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| मेरा अच्छा दोस्त | mera: accha: dost | my good friend |
|------------------|-------------------|----------------|

The postposition *में mē* is also alternately used to denote the superiority of one out of two or more.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

|                |                |                   |
|----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| दोनों में बड़ा | donõ: mẽ bara: | bigger of the two |
| सब में ऊँचा    | sab mẽ ū:ca:   | the tallest       |

Sometimes, the phrase की अपेक्षा *ki: apekša:* ‘in comparison to’ is substituted for से *se*.

|                     |                         |                 |
|---------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| उमा की अपेक्षा लंबी | uma: ki: apekša: lambi: | taller than Uma |
|---------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|

Notice that words अधिक/ज्यादा *adhik/zya:da:* ‘more’ and कम *kam* ‘less’ may be prefixed to adjectives for denoting comparison.

|                        |                            |                             |
|------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| सोने से अधिक<br>चमकीला | sone se adhik<br>camki:la: | brighter than gold          |
| फूल से ज़्यादा कोमल    | phu:l se zya:da: komal     | more delicate than a flower |
| वीस से कम              | bi:s se kam                | less than twenty            |

#### 3.3.5. Derivation of Adjectives

A large number of adjectives are derived from nouns by adding the suffixes -आ -a:, -ई -i:, -उ-*u:*, -इला -i:la:, -लू -lu:, -इक -ik, -जनक -janak, -दाई-*da:i*, -मय -mai:, -वन -van, -आना -a:na:, -नाक -na:k, -ईन -i:n, -मंद -mand, and -दार -da:r.

| -आ -a:     |           |               |          |
|------------|-----------|---------------|----------|
| Noun       | Adjective |               |          |
| सच sac     | truth     | सच्चा saccā:  | truthful |
| झूठ jhu:th | lie       | झूठा jhu:tha: | liar     |
| भूख bhukh  | hunger    | भूखा bhukha:  | hungry   |

| -ई -i:       |          |                 |             |
|--------------|----------|-----------------|-------------|
| कीमत ki:mat  | price    | कीमती ki:mti:   | expensive   |
| सुख sukh     | comfort  | सुखी sukhi:     | happy       |
| नेक nek      | good     | नेकी neki:      | goodness    |
| पहाड़ paha:r | mountain | पहाड़ी paha:ri: | mountainous |

| -ऊ -u:        |         |                  |           |
|---------------|---------|------------------|-----------|
| पेट peṭ       | stomach | पेटू petu:       | voracious |
| बाजार ba:za:r | market  | बाज़ार ba:za:ru: | common    |

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

| -ईला -i:la: |         |                    |           |
|-------------|---------|--------------------|-----------|
| रस ras      | juice   | रसीला rasi:la:     | juicy     |
| ज़हर zahar  | poison  | ज़हरीला zahri:la:  | poisonous |
| खर्च kharc  | expense | खर्चीला kharci:la: | expensive |
| पथर patthar | stone   | पथरीला patthri:la: | stony     |

| -लू -lu:        |          |                      |         |
|-----------------|----------|----------------------|---------|
| श्रद्धा šradha: | faith    | श्रद्धालू šradha:lu: | devotee |
| दया daya:       | kindness | दयालू daya:lu:       | kind    |

| -इक -ik         |         |                     |            |
|-----------------|---------|---------------------|------------|
| समाज sama:j     | society | समाजिक sama:jik     | social     |
| विज्ञान vigya:n | science | विज्ञानिक vigya:nik | scientific |
| वर्ष varš       | year    | वार्षिक va:ršik     | yearly     |

| -जनक -janak  |       |                      |         |
|--------------|-------|----------------------|---------|
| आशा a:ša:    | hope  | आशाजनक a:ša:janak    | hopeful |
| चिंता cinta: | worry | चिंताजनक cinta:janak | worried |

| -दाई -da:i: |         |                  |             |
|-------------|---------|------------------|-------------|
| सुख sukh    | comfort | सुखदाई sukhda:i: | comfortable |
| दुख dukh    | pain    | दुखदाई dukhda:i: | painful     |

| -मई -mai: |      |                 |         |
|-----------|------|-----------------|---------|
| आशा a:ša: | hope | आशामई a:ša:mai: | hopeful |

| -वान -va:n |          |                |         |
|------------|----------|----------------|---------|
| धन dhan    | wealth   | धनवान dhanva:n | wealthy |
| बल bal     | strength | बलवान balva:n  | strong  |

| -आना -a:na: |      |                   |        |
|-------------|------|-------------------|--------|
| साल sa:l    | year | सालाना sa:la:na:  | yearly |
| रोज़ roz    | day  | रोजाना roza:na:   | daily  |
| मर्द mard   | man  | मर्दाना marda:na: | manly  |

| -नाक -na:k |      |                  |           |
|------------|------|------------------|-----------|
| दर्द dard  | pain | दर्दनाक dardna:k | painful   |
| ख़ौफ xɔ:f  | fear | ख़ौफनाक xɔ:fna:k | frightful |

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

|             |        |                  |           |
|-------------|--------|------------------|-----------|
| खतरा xatra: | danger | खतरनाक xatarna:k | dangerous |
|-------------|--------|------------------|-----------|

| -ईन -i:n  |        |               |          |
|-----------|--------|---------------|----------|
| रंग rang  | color  | रंगीन rangi:n | colorful |
| नमक namak | salt   | नमकीन namki:n | salty    |
| शौक šok   | liking | शौकीन šoki:n  | fond     |

| -मंद -mand |        |                   |         |
|------------|--------|-------------------|---------|
| अक्ल akl   | wisdom | अक्लमंद aklmand   | wise    |
| दौलत dɔlat | wealth | दौलतमंद dɔlatmand | wealthy |

| -दार -da:r          |            |
|---------------------|------------|
| माल ma:l            | property   |
| मालदार ma:lda:r     | wealthy    |
| ज़मीन zami:n        | land       |
| ज़मीनदार zami:nda:r | landlord   |
| दुकान duka:n        | shop       |
| दुकानदार duka:nda:r | shopkeeper |

When सा sa: ‘like’ is attached to the oblique forms of nouns or pronouns, they function as adjectives.

|                               |                  |
|-------------------------------|------------------|
| फूल सा phu:l sa:              | flower-like      |
| मुझसा mujh sa:/ तुमसा tum sa: | me-like/you-like |

सा sa: is also attached to adjectives to denote ‘looking, seeming.’ When added to quantitative adjectives, it intensifies the meaning.

|                      |               |
|----------------------|---------------|
| लाल सा la:l sa:      | red-looking   |
| बड़ा सा bara: sa:    | big-looking   |
| दुबला सा dubla: sa:  | slim-looking  |
| कमज़ोर सा kamzor sa: | weak-looking  |
| ऊँचा सा ū:ca: sa:    | high-looking  |
| बहुत सा bahut sa:    | a great deal  |
| थोड़ा सा thora: sa:  | just a little |

The forms of सा sa: (agreeing in number and gender with the noun) are also added to the genitive/possessive forms to denote a similarity of quality, or possession.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

|  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| गाय का सा मुँह ga:y ka: sa: mūh          | a face like that of a cow |
| उनके से कपड़े unke se kapre              | clothes similar to his    |
| मेरी meri:/ तेरी सी नाक teteri: si: na:k | a nose like mine/yours    |

सा *sa:* may be replaced by जैसा *jesa:* with nouns and pronouns (other than indefinite or interrogative ones.)

|                               |                     |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| बंदर सा/जैसा bandar sa:/jesa: | similar to a monkey |
| तुम सा/जैसा tum sa:/jesa:     | like you            |

The forms of सा *sa:* can be added to कोई *koi:* and कौन *kon* to indicate ‘any one,’ and ‘which one’ respectively.

|                              |             |
|------------------------------|-------------|
| कोई सा रंग koi:-sa: raŋ      | any color   |
| कोई सी कमीज़ koi:-si: kami:z | any shirt   |
| कौन सा कोट kon-sa: koṭ       | which coat  |
| कौन सी कमीज़ kon-si: kami:z  | which shirt |

#### **3.3.6. Numerals**

Numerals are adjectives indicating number. They may be divided into cardinals, ordinals, or multiplicatives.

##### **3.3.6.1. Cardinals**

Cardinal numeral forms in Hindi are given below.

|        |         |    |       |          |    |
|--------|---------|----|-------|----------|----|
| एक     | ek      | 1  | दो    | do       | 2  |
| तीन    | ti:n    | 3  | चार   | ca:r     | 4  |
| पाँच   | pā:c    | 5  | छे    | che      | 6  |
| सात    | sa:t    | 7  | आठ    | a:ṭh     | 8  |
| नौ     | nav     | 9  | दस    | das      | 10 |
| स्यारह | gia:rah | 11 | बारह  | ba:rah   | 12 |
| तेरह   | terah   | 13 | चौदह  | cōdah    | 14 |
| पंद्रह | pandrah | 15 | सोलह  | solah    | 16 |
| सत्रह  | satrah  | 17 | अठारह | atha:rah | 18 |
| उन्नीस | unni:s  | 19 | बीस   | bi:s     | 20 |
| इक्कीस | ikki:s  | 21 | बाईस  | ba:i:s   | 22 |

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

|          |           |    |          |            |    |
|----------|-----------|----|----------|------------|----|
| तेर्स    | tei:s     | 23 | चौवीस    | cɔbi:s     | 24 |
| पच्चीस   | pacci:s   | 25 | छब्बीस   | chabbi:s   | 26 |
| सत्ताईस  | satta:i:s | 27 | अट्टाईस  | aṭṭha:i:s  | 28 |
| उनतीस    | untti:s   | 29 | तीस      | ti:s       | 30 |
| इकतीस    | ikatti:s  | 31 | बत्तीस   | batti:s    | 32 |
| तैंतीस   | tēnti:s   | 33 | चौंतीस   | cɔnti:s    | 34 |
| पैंतीस   | pēti:s    | 35 | छत्तीस   | chatti:s   | 36 |
| सैंतीस   | sēti:s    | 37 | अड़तीस   | aṛṭi:s     | 38 |
| उनतालीस  | unta:li:s | 39 | चालीस    | ca:li:s    | 40 |
| इकतालीस  | ikta:li:s | 41 | बयालीस   | baya:li:s  | 42 |
| तैंतालीस | tēta:li:s | 43 | चवालीस   | cava:li:s  | 44 |
| पैंतालीस | pēta:li:s | 45 | छियालीस  | chiya:li:s | 46 |
| सैंतालीस | sēta:li:s | 47 | अड़तालीस | aṛṭa:li:s  | 48 |
| उनचास    | unca:s    | 49 | पचास     | paca:s     | 50 |
| इक्यावन  | ikya:van  | 51 | बावन     | ba:van     | 52 |
| तिरपन    | tirpan    | 53 | चौवन     | cɔvan      | 54 |
| पचपन     | pacpan    | 55 | छप्पन    | chappan    | 56 |
| सतावन    | sata:van  | 57 | अठावन    | aṭha:van   | 58 |
| उनसठ     | unsath    | 59 | साठ      | sa:ṭh      | 60 |
| इक्सठ    | iksath    | 61 | बासठ     | ba:sath    | 62 |
| तिरसठ    | tirsath   | 63 | चौंसठ    | cɔsath     | 64 |
| पैंसठ    | pēsath    | 65 | छियासठ   | chiya:sath | 66 |
| सरसठ     | sarsath   | 67 | अड़सठ    | aṛṣath     | 68 |
| उनहत्तर  | unahttār  | 69 | सत्तर    | sattar     | 70 |
| इकहत्तर  | ikahttār  | 71 | बहत्तर   | bahttar    | 72 |
| तिहत्तर  | tehttār   | 73 | चौहत्तर  | cɔhttar    | 74 |
| पचहत्तर  | pacahttār | 75 | छिहत्तर  | chihttar   | 76 |
| सतहत्तर  | satahttār | 77 | अठहत्तर  | aṭhahttār  | 78 |
| उनासी    | una:si:   | 79 | असी      | assi:      | 80 |
| इक्यासी  | ikya:si:  | 81 | बयासी    | baya:si:   | 82 |
| तिरासी   | tira:si:  | 83 | चौरासी   | cɔra:si:   | 84 |
| पचासी    | paca:si:  | 85 | छियासी   | chiya:si:  | 86 |
| सतासी    | sata:si:  | 87 | अठासी    | aṭha:si:   | 88 |
| नवासी    | nava:si:  | 89 | नब्बे    | nabbe      | 90 |
| इक्यानवे | ikya:nave | 91 | बयानवे   | baya:nave  | 92 |
| तिरानवे  | tira:nave | 93 | चौरानवे  | cɔra:nave  | 94 |
| पचानवे   | paca:nave | 95 | छियानवे  | chiya:nave | 96 |
| सतानवे   | sata:nave | 97 | अठानवे   | aṭha:nave  | 98 |

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

|           |            |      |      |        |       |
|-----------|------------|------|------|--------|-------|
| निन्यानवे | ninya:nave | 99   | सौ   | sɔ     | 100   |
| शून्य     | šu:ny      | zero | हजार | haza:r | 1,000 |

Starting with one hundred, the numerals proceed regularly.

|             |                |      |
|-------------|----------------|------|
| (एक) सौ     | (ek) sɔ        | 100  |
| एक सौ एक    | ek sɔ ek       | 101  |
| एक सौ दो    | ek sɔ do       | 102  |
| दो सौ       | do sɔ          | 200  |
| दो सौ       | do sɔ ek       | 201  |
| एक हजार     | ek haza:r      | 1000 |
| दो हजार तीन | do haza:r ti:n | 2003 |
| दो हजार सात | do haza:r sa:t | 2007 |

The numerals one thousand and above are as follows.

|           |             |                            |
|-----------|-------------|----------------------------|
| (एक) हजार | (ek) haza:r | one thousand               |
| दस हजार   | das haza:r  | ten thousand               |
| लाख       | la:kh       | hundred thousand           |
| दस लाख    | das la:kh   | million                    |
| करोड़     | karor       | ten million                |
| अरब       | arab        | thousand million (billion) |
| खरब       | kharab      | hundred billion            |

#### **3.3.6.2. Ordinals**

The first six ordinals are पहला *pahla*: ‘first,’ दूसरा *du:strā*: ‘second’; तीसरा *ti:sra*: ‘third’; चौथा *cɔtha*: ‘fourth’; पांचवा *pā:cva*: ‘fifth’; छठा *chaṭha*: ‘sixth.’ The suffix - अं -ā is added to the cardinals from seven onwards to make ordinals: सातवां *sa:tvā*: ‘seventh’; आठवां *a:thvā*: ‘eighth’; नौवां *navā*: ‘ninth’; दसवां *dasvā*: ‘tenth’; बीसवां *bi:svā*: ‘twentieth’; तीसवां *ti:svā*: ‘thirteenth’; सौवां *sɔvā*: ‘hundredth’; हजारवां *haza:rvā*: ‘thousandth’ etc.

#### **Adjectives of Quantity**

Nouns denoting measure, and weight preceded by a numeral or by an adjective denoting an indefinite number, such as कोई *koi*: or कुछ *kuch*, are used as adjectives of quantity.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

|               |                  |                         |
|---------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| तीन किलो चावल | ti:n kilo ca:val | three kilograms of rice |
| दो प्याले चाय | do pya:le ca:y   | two cups of tea         |
| कुछ बोतल शहद  | kuch botal šahad | some bottles of honey   |
| कई किलो दूध   | kai: kilo du:dh  | several kilos of milk   |

#### Collective Adjectives

Some regular numerals can be replaced by collective adjectives like जोड़ा *jɔṛa*: ‘pair,’ चौकड़ा *cɔkṛa*: ‘four,’ पंजा *panja*: ‘five,’ छक्का *chakka*: ‘six,’ दर्जन *darjan* ‘dozen,’ बीसी *bi:sı:/* कोड़ी *kori*: ‘score,’ सैंकड़ा *sɛkṛa*: ‘hundred.’ They are treated as nouns and may be qualified by the regular numerals.

|                |                 |                        |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| दो जोड़े कपड़े | do jɔṛे kapڑe   | two pairs of clothes   |
| तीन दर्जन सेब  | ti:n darjan seb | three dozens of apples |

The सैंकड़ा *sɛkṛa*: is also used in the sense of ‘per hundred.’

|                  |                   |                           |
|------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| बीस रुपए सैंकड़ा | bi:s rupyे sɛkṛa: | twenty rupees per hundred |
|------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|

#### 3.3.6.3. Fractions

Fractions are expressed as follows:

|  |                             |                         |
|--|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| एक बटे चार/पाव                             | ek bate ca:r/pa:v           | one quarter             |
| (pa:v is used mainly for denoting weights) |                             |                         |
| एक बटे तीन/तिहाई                           | ek bate ti:n/tihā:i         | one-third               |
| एक बटे दो/आधा                              | ek bate do/a:dha:           | half                    |
| तीन बटे चार/पौन                            | ti:n bate ca:r/pɔn          | three quarters          |
| एक सही एक बटे चार/सौवा                     | ek sahi: ek bate ca:r/sava: | one and a quarter       |
| एक सही एक बटे दो डेढ़                      | ek sahi: ek bate do/derh    | one and a half          |
| दो सही एक बटे दो ढाई                       | do sahi: ek bate do/dha:i:  | two and a half          |
| पौने दो                                    | pɔne do                     | two less by a quarter   |
| पौने तीन                                   | pɔne ti:n                   | three less by a quarter |
| साढ़े तीन                                  | sa:rhe ti:n                 | three and a half        |

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

Note that साहे *sa:rhe* denoting ‘half’ is attached to the numerals beginning with three: साहे चार *sa:rhe ca:r* ‘four and half,’ साहे पांच *sa:rhe pā:c* ‘five and half,’ etc. The system of denoting fractions is also used to denote fractions of hundred, thousand, ten thousand, etc.

|            |                       |          |
|------------|-----------------------|----------|
| सवा सौ     | <i>sava: sɔ</i>       | 125      |
| डेढ़ सौ    | <i>derh sɔ</i>        | 150      |
| स्हाई सौ   | <i>dha:i: sɔ</i>      | 250      |
| इङ्ह हजार  | <i>derh haza:r</i>    | 1,500    |
| सवा दो लाख | <i>sava: do la:kh</i> | 2,25,000 |

#### **3.3.6.4. Multiplicatives**

Multiplicatives are formed by attaching युना *guna*: ‘multiplied by’ to the numerals 2 to 8 are slightly modified.

दुगुना *dugna*: or दूना *du:na*: ‘double,’ तिगुना *tiguna*: ‘threefold,’ चौगुना *coguna*: ‘fourfold,’ पंचगुना *pancguna*: ‘fivefold,’ छुगुना *chaguna* ‘sixfold,’ सत्तगुना *satguna*: ‘sevenfold,’ अठगुना *athguna*: ‘eightfold.’ After this the forms are regular: नवगुना *navguna*: ‘ninefold,’ दसगुना *dasguna*: ‘tenfold,’ बीसगुना *bi:sguna*: ‘twentyfold,’ तीसगुना *ti:sguna*: ‘thirtyfold,’ सौगुना *sɔguna*: ‘hundredfold,’ हजारगुना *haza:rguna*: ‘thousandfold. The युना *guna*: can be attached to fractions too: सवा युना *sava: guna*: 1½ times as much, डेढ़ युना *derh guna*: 1½ times as much, स्हाई युना *dha:i: guna*: 2 ½ times as much.

#### **3.3.6.5. Approximation**

Approximation is expressed by placing कोई *koi*:, लगभग *lagbhag*, or प्रायः *pra:ya*: before the numeral.

|                            |                                     |                                |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| कोई वीस आदमी               | <i>koi: bi:s a:dmi:</i>             | about twenty persons           |
| लगभग पाँच सौ लोग           | <i>lagbhag pā:c sɔ log</i>          | about five hundred people      |
| प्रायः दो सौ वर्ष<br>पहिले | <i>pra:ya: do sɔ varš<br/>pahle</i> | about two hundred years<br>ago |

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

It is also expressed by certain pairs of numerals.

|           |              |                    |
|-----------|--------------|--------------------|
| दो-एक     | do-ek        | one or two         |
| दो-तीन    | do-ti:n      | about two or three |
| दस-पाँच   | das-pā:c     | about ten          |
| सौ-सवा सौ | sɔ- sava: sɔ | about 125          |

Reduplication of a numeral denotes ‘... at a time,’ or ‘...per piece.’

|                                       |  |                                  |
|---------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------|
| दो-दो लड़के                           | do-do larke                            | two boys at a time               |
| एक-एक लड़के को तीन-तीन<br>किताबें दो। | ek-ek larke ko ti:n-ti:n<br>kita:bē do | Give three books to<br>each boy. |

#### 3.3.6.6. Aggregation

Aggregation is expressed by adding -ओ -ō to a numeral. In the case of दो do, -नो -nō is added. (e.g., दोनों *donō* ‘both,’ तीनों *ti:nō* ‘all the three,’ चारों *ca:rō* ‘all the four,’ दसों *dasō* ‘all the ten,’ बीसों *bi:sō* ‘all the twenty,’ etc.). Notice that -इयों -iyō is added to numerals दस das or बीस *bi:s* to indicate an indefinite large number (e.g., दसियों *dasiyō* ‘several tens,’ बीसियों *bi:siyō* ‘several scores,’ etc.)

The suffix -ओ -ō is also added to the nouns signifying duration, measures, weight to indicate large and indefinite number or quantity. (e.g., महीनों *mahi:nō* ‘a number of months,’ वर्षों *barsō* ‘a number of years,’ बोरियों अनाज *boriyō ana:j* ‘sackfulls of grains,’ etc.

### 3.4. Verbs

There are two types of verbs: main and auxiliary.

#### 3.4.1. The Verb *hona:*

The verb होना *hona:* ‘to be’ is used as a copula in simple predicative sentences, as well as an auxiliary in different types of verbal constructions. The verb होना *hona:* has four sets of verbal forms: present, past, presumptive, and subjunctive.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

(a) The present tense forms of होना *hona*: agree with their subjects in number and person.

| Person                     | Singular | Plural |
|----------------------------|----------|--------|
| 1 <sup>st</sup>            | हूँ hū:  | हैं hē |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup> (intimate) | हैं hē   | हों ho |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup> (polite)   | हैं hē   | हैं hē |
| 3 <sup>rd</sup>            | हैं hē   | हैं hē |

|         |        |                    |         |        |           |
|---------|--------|--------------------|---------|--------|-----------|
| मैं हूँ | mē hū: | I am               | हम हैं  | ham hē | we are    |
| तू हैं  | tu: hē | you are            | तुम हों | tum ho | you are   |
| आप हैं  | a:p hē | you are            | वह हैं  | vah hē | he/she is |
| वे हैं  | ve hē  | (s)he is/ they are |         |        |           |

(b) The past tense forms of होना *hona*: agree with their subjects in gender and number.

| Masculine |        | Feminine |          |
|-----------|--------|----------|----------|
| Sg        | Pl     | Sg       | Pl       |
| था tha:   | थे the | थी thi:  | थीं thī: |

|                          |                        |                      |
|--------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| मैं था/थी                | mē tha:/thi:           | I was                |
| वह था/थी                 | vah tha:/thi:          | he/she was           |
| तू था/थी                 | tu: tha:/thi:          | you were             |
| हम/ तुम/ आप/ ये/ वे थे।  | ham/tum/a:p/ye/ve the. | we/you/she/they were |
| हम/ तुम/ आप/ ये/ वे थीं। | ham/tum/a:p/ye/ve thī: | we/you/she/they were |

(c) The presumptive forms of the verb होना *hona*: agree with their subjects in person, gender, and number.

| Person                      | Masculine    |            | Feminine     |             |
|-----------------------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------------|
|                             | Sg           | Pl         | Sg           | Pl          |
| 1 <sup>st</sup>             | हूँगा hū:ga: | होंगे hōge | हूँगी hū:gi: | होंगी hōgi: |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup> (intimate)  | होगा hogā:   | होगे hōge  | होगी hogī:   | होगी hogī:  |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup> (hon sg/pl) | होगे hōge    | होगे hōge  | होगी hogī:   | होगी hogī:  |
| 3 <sup>rd</sup>             | होगा hogā:   | होगे hōge  | होगी hogī:   | होगी hogī:  |

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

(d) The subjunctive forms of होना *hona*: are used to indicate the situations of speculative, hypothetical, contingent, or desired nature. They agree with their subjects in person and number.

| Person                      | Singular  | Plural |
|-----------------------------|-----------|--------|
| 1 <sup>st</sup>             | होऊँ hoū: | हों hō |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup> (intimate)  | हों ho    | हों ho |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup> (hon sg/pl) | हों hō    | हों hō |
| 3 <sup>rd</sup>             | हों ho    | हों hō |

|           |          |          |            |
|-----------|----------|----------|------------|
| मैं होऊँ  | mē hoū:  | हम हों   | ham hō     |
| तू हो     | tu: ho   | तुम हो   | tum ho/ho  |
| आप हों    | a:p hō   | यह/वह हो | yeh/vah ho |
| ये/वे हों | ye/ve hō |          |            |

#### 3.4.2. Main Verbs

There are three types of main verbs: simple verbs, conjunct verbs, and compound verbs. A simple verb may consist of one main verb and person, gender, number, tense, and aspect markers. In the compound verb construction, the person, gender, number, and aspect markers are taken by the explicators/operators, and in the conjunct verbal construction they are taken by the verb element. We will classify the verbal constructions as intransitive, transitive, ditransitive, causative, dative, conjunct, and compound.

##### 3.4.2.1. Intransitive Verbs

Intransitive verbs like आ *a*: ‘come,’ जा *ja*: ‘go’ उठ *uth* ‘get up,’ and बैठ *beth* ‘sit.’ do not take a direct object and are not marked by any postposition in the present or future tense. Subjects in such cases are controlled by the verb agreement.

1. वह जाता है।  
*vah ja:ta: hε.*  
he go-ptc is  
He goes.
2. अमित घर जाएगा।  
*amit ghar ja:ega.*  
Amit home go-fut  
Amit will go home.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

Besides verb agreement, subjects demonstrate a number of other properties which are explained below. Intransitive verbs in the past tense take their subjects in the direct case.

3. वह बहुत थक गई।  
*vah bahut thak gai:*  
she very tired aux  
She was dead tired.

4. अमित समय पर आया।  
*amit samay par a:ya:*  
Amit time at came  
Amit came on time.

Some intransitive verbs, such as खेल *khel* ‘play’ and लड़ *lar* ‘fight,’ may sometimes be used as transitives when they take abstract nouns as objects.

| Intransitive         | Transitive |
|----------------------|------------|
| खेलना <i>khelna:</i> | to play    |
| लड़ाई <i>lara:i:</i> | fight      |

5. मोहन खेला।  
*mohan khela:*  
Mohan played.
- 5a. मोहन खेल खेला।  
*mohan ne khel khela:*  
Mohan played a game.

#### **3.4.2.2. Transitive Verbs**

Transitive verbs, such as पढ़ *parh* ‘read,’ लिख *likh* ‘write,’ ला *la:* ‘bring,’ दे *de* ‘give,’ ले *le* ‘take,’ and कर *kar* ‘do,’ take direct objects, and in the past tense they require their subjects must be marked with the ergative case markers agreeing with the object in gender and number.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

6. उमा ने किताब पढ़ी ।  
*uma: ne kita:b parhi:.*  
 Uma-erg book-fs read-fs  
 Uma read a book.

7. अमर ने अखबार खरीदा ।  
*amar ne axba:r xari:da:.*  
 Amar-erg newspaper-ms bought-ms  
 Amar bought a newspaper.

Some transitive verbs are derived from intransitives by certain vocalic changes to the verb roots.

| Intransitive |                | Transitive   |             |
|--------------|----------------|--------------|-------------|
| मर mar       | die            | मार ma:r     | kill        |
| छप chap      | be printed     | छाप cha:p    | print       |
| कट kat       | be cut         | काट ka:t     | cut         |
| गिर gir      | fall           | गिरा gira:   | fell        |
| पिस pis      | be ground      | पीस pi:s     | grind       |
| बंद bandh    | be tied        | बांद ba:ndh  | tie         |
| खुल khul     | be open        | खोल khol     | open        |
| उठ uṭh       | rise           | उठा uṭha:    | raise       |
| जग jag       | wake up        | जगा jaga:    | awaken      |
| फैल phel     | stretch        | फैला phela:  | spread      |
| दिख dikh     | be able to see | देख dekh     | see         |
| बन ban       | be made        | बना bana:    | make        |
| सूम ghu:m    | go round       | सूमना ghuma: | turn round  |
| दौड़ dɔṛ     | run            | दौड़ा dɔṛa:  | make x race |

In certain cases besides vocalic changes, some consonantal changes also take place.

| Intransitive |           | Transitive |                    |
|--------------|-----------|------------|--------------------|
| टूट tu:t     | break     | तोड़ tor   | break              |
| बिक bik      | be sold   | बेच bec    | sell               |
| फट phat      | be torn   | फाड़ pha:r | tear               |
| सो so:       | be asleep | सुला sula: | to make x to sleep |
| बन ban       | be made   | बना bana:  | to make            |

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

A few transitive verbs like बोल *bol* ‘to speak,’ समझ *samjh* ‘to understand’ and भूल *bhu:l* ‘to forget’ are sometimes used as intransitives and do not take an ergative case marker.

8. मैं बोला/ समझा/ भूला।  
*mē bola:/ samjha:/ bhu:la:.*  
I said/ understood/ forgot.

#### **3.4.2.3. Ditransitive Verbs**

Some verbs like देना *dena:* ‘to give,’ सुना *suna:* ‘to tell,’ बेचना *becna:* ‘to sell’ are called ditransitives. Ditransitives take three arguments, namely, subject, object, and indirect objects. Indirect objects are always marked in the dative. Other arguments follow the transitive pattern noted above.

9. अमर ने उमा को किताब दी।  
*amar ne uma: ko kita:b di:.*  
Amar-erg Uma-dat book-fs gave-fs  
Amar gave a book to Uma.
10. उमा ने बच्चे को कहानी सुनाई।  
*uma: ne bacce ko kaha:ni: suna:i:.*  
Uma-erg child-dat story-fs told-fs  
Uma told a story to the child.

#### **3.4.2.4. Causative Verbs**

Causative verbs may be derived from transitive verbs by adding causative suffixes. They include the transitive verbs derived from intransitives. Causative verbs are, therefore, invariably transitive and take the same forms as other transitive verbs. There are two types of causative forms: causal I and causal II.

##### **Causal I forms**

Causal I verbs are formed by adding the causal suffix *-a:* to the transitive verb form. As a result of adding this suffix, certain morphophonemic changes take place.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

(a) Consonant ending roots with short vowels remain unchanged.

| Transitive |        | Causal I    |             |
|------------|--------|-------------|-------------|
| कर kar     | do     | करा kara:   | make x do   |
| सुन sun    | listen | सुना suna:  | make x tell |
| पढ़ parh   | study  | पढ़ा parha: | teach x     |

(b) The long vowels of the verb roots are shortened. The vowels ए /e/ and ई /i:/ change to इ /i/.

| Transitive |       | Causal I    |              |
|------------|-------|-------------|--------------|
| देख dekh   | see   | दिखा dikha: | show         |
| सीख si:kh  | learn | सिखा sikha: | make x learn |

(c) The long vowel ending verb roots are shortened and the suffix -ला -la: instead of -आ-aa:, is added to derive the first causal forms. As a result of adding the causative suffix to the verb root, the vowels ए /e/ and आ /a:/ change to इ/i/, and ओ /o/ changes to /u/.

| Transitive |        | Causal I    |               |
|------------|--------|-------------|---------------|
| पी pi:     | drink  | पिला pila:  | make x drink  |
| सी si:     | stitch | सिला sila:  | make x stitch |
| खा kha:    | eat    | खिला khila: | feed x        |
| दे de      | give   | दिला dila:  | make x give   |
| धो dho     | wash   | धुला dhula: | make x wash   |

#### Causal II

Causal II or extended causatives are formed by adding the causal II suffix -वा -va: to the verb roots.

| Causal I    |              | Causal II      |                    |
|-------------|--------------|----------------|--------------------|
| सुना suna:  | tell         | सुनवा sunva:   | cause x to tell    |
| पढ़ा parha: | teach        | पढ़वा parhva:  | cause x to teach y |
| उठा utha:   | lift         | उठवा uthva:    | make x to lift     |
| पिला pila:  | make x drink | पिलवा pilva:   | cause x to drink   |
| जगा jaga:   | awaken       | जगवा jagva:    | cause to awaken    |
| घुमा ghuma: | move         | घुमवा ghumva:  | cause x to move    |
| दौड़ा dɔra: | make x run   | दौड़वा dɔrvva: | cause x to run     |
| दिला dila:  | cause x give | दिलवा dilva:   | cause x to give y  |

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

|             |             |                 |                   |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| खिला khila: | feed        | खिलवा khilva:   | cause x to feed y |
| बना bana:   | make        | बनवाना banva:na | cause x to make   |
| कर kar      | get done    | करवा karva:     | cause x to do     |
| धुला dhula: | make x wash | धुलवा dhulva:   | cause x to wash   |

(a) As a result of adding the causal II suffix to the transitive verb root, the vowel ओ /o/ changes to उ /u/.

|          |       |               |                  |
|----------|-------|---------------|------------------|
| तोड़ tor | break | तुड़वा turva: | cause x to break |
|----------|-------|---------------|------------------|

(b) There are few irregular forms. In the following example, the causal suffix -वा -va is added to the intransitive verb root बिक bik ‘sell’ instead of its transitive verb form बेच be:c:

|         |      |              |                 |
|---------|------|--------------|-----------------|
| बेच bec | sell | बिकवा bikva: | cause x to sell |
|---------|------|--------------|-----------------|

(c) In certain cases, the meanings of the first and second causals are the same as in करना kara:na:/ करवाना karva:na: ‘to get done’ or धुलाना dhula:na:/ धुलवाना dhulva:na: ‘to get washed.’

11. माँ ने बच्चे को दूध पिलाया।  
*mā: ne bacce ko du:dh pila:ya:.*  
 mother-erg child to milk drink-caus-past  
 The mother made the child drink milk.

11a. माँ ने बच्चे को नर्स से दूध पिलवाया।  
*mā: ne bacce ko nars se du:dh pilva:ya:.*  
 mother-er child to nurse by milk drink-cause  
 The mother caused the child to drink milk from the nurse.

#### 3.4.2.5. Dative Verbs

Most dative verbs fall into the stative-inchoative category of verbs. They represent a small class of verbs but are very frequently used. They can be derived by substituting the intransitive verbs होना hona: ‘to be,’ and आना a:na: ‘to come’ in place of करना karna: ‘to do’ in active/conjunct verbs as given below.

| Stative      | Inchoative   | Active        |         |
|--------------|--------------|---------------|---------|
| पसंद होना    | पसंद आना     | पसंद करना     |         |
| pasand hona: | pasand a:na: | pasand karna: | to like |

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

|             |            |              |             |
|-------------|------------|--------------|-------------|
| याद होना    | याद आना    | याद करना     |             |
| ya:d hona:  | ya:d a:na: | ya:d karna:  | to remember |
| पता होना    |            | पता करना     |             |
| pata: hona: | ...        | pata: karna: | to find out |

12. उसको यह किताब पसंद है।  
*usko yeh kita:b pasand hε.*  
 he-dat this book like is  
 He likes this book.
- 12a. उसको यह किताब पसंद आई।  
*usko yeh kita:b pasand a:i:.*  
 he-dat this book like came  
 He liked this book.
- 12b. उसने यह किताब पसंद की।  
*usne yeh kita:b pasand ki:.*  
 he-erg this book like did  
 He liked this book.
13. उसको सारी बात याद है।  
*usko sa:ri: ba:t ya:d hε.*  
 he-dat all matter remember is  
 He remembers the whole matter.
- 13a. उसको सारी बात याद आई।  
*usko sa:ri: ba:t ya:d a:i:.*  
 he-dat all matter remember came  
 He remembered the whole matter.
- 13b. उसने सारी बात याद की।  
*usne sa:ri: ba:t ya:d ki:.*  
 he-erg all matter remember did  
 He remembered the whole matter.
14. उसको यह बात पता है।  
*usko yah ba:t pata: hε.*  
 he-dat this matter know be  
 He knows this matter.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

- 14a. उसने यह वात पता की ।  
*usne yah ba:t pata: ki:.*  
he-dat this matter find did  
He found out this thing.

#### **3.4.2.6. Conjunct Verbs**

A conjunct verb consists of a noun or an adjective and a verb, which takes all the verbal inflections. The verbs may be transitive or intransitive. The most frequent verbs used in conjunct verbal const+structions are करना *karna*: ‘to do’ and होना *hona*: ‘to be.’ Other verbs used are देना *dena*: ‘to give,’ आना *a:na*: ‘to come,’ and लगना *lagna*: ‘to feel.’

15. मैंने अपना काम समाप्त किया ।  
*m̐ne apna: ka:m sama:pt kiya:.*  
I-erg self's work finish did  
I finished my work.

- 15a. यह काम समाप्त हुआ ।  
*yeh ka:m sama:pt hua:.*  
this work finish be-past  
This work is done.

16. दरवाज़ा बंद करो ।  
*darva:za: band karo.*  
door close do-imp  
Close the door.

- 16a. दरवाज़ा बंद हुआ ।  
*darva:za: band hua:.*  
door close be-past  
The door was closed.

One class of conjunct verbs is formed by the combination of a noun and an intransitive verb, which requires the subject to be marked in the oblique case. This class includes psychological predicates such as गुस्सा आना *gussa: a:na*: ‘to be angry,’ भूख लगना *bhu:kh lagna*: ‘to be hungry,’ प्यास लगना *pya:s lagna*: ‘to be thirsty,’ तरस आना *taras a:na*: ‘to have pity.’ It also includes non-volitional verbs such as दिखाई देना *dikha:i: dena*: ‘to be seen.’

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

17. अमर को गुस्सा आया।  
*amar ko gussa: a:ya:.*  
 Amar-dat anger came  
 Amar was angry.
18. सुनीता को भूख़/ प्यास लगी।  
*suni:ta ko bhu:kh/pya:s lagi:.*  
 Sunita-dat hunger/thirst struck  
 Sunita was hungry/thirsty.
19. मोहन को गरीब पर तरस आया।  
*mohan ko gari:b par taras a:ya:.*  
 Mohan-dat poor on pity came  
 Mohan took pity on the poor.
20. उसको अंतर दिखता नहीं।  
*usko antar dikhta: nahī:.*  
 he-dat difference see-ptc neg  
 He is not able to see the difference.

#### 3.4.2.7. Compound Verbs

Compound verbs in Hindi are combination of Verb 1 + Verb 2 (+ inflections). Whereas Verb 1 (also called main verb) expresses general meaning and occurs in its stem form, verb 2, which is called an explicator/operator, takes all the inflections. The explicators belong to a small group of verbs. The original meaning of the explicator is lost. They add certain aspectual values, such as completion of an action, benefaction, or intensification, to the main verb. The most frequent explicators are listed below with their actual meaning and the aspectual meanings they add to main verbs.

| Explicators |         | Aspectual Values                        |
|-------------|---------|---|
| आ a:        | come    | change of state from within             |
| जा ja:      | go      | change of state                         |
| ले le       | take    | action for or toward others             |
| पड़ par     | fall    | action for or towards self              |
| दे de       | give    | change of state, suddenness             |
| जा ja:      | go      | direction away, simple completion       |
| डाल da:l    | throw   | speed, recklessness, relief, completion |
| छोड़ chor   | release | psychological separation, relief        |

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

|             |          |                                   |
|-------------|----------|-----------------------------------|
| रख rakh     | put/keep | proactiveness, future use in view |
| बैठ bēṭh    | sit      | action for or towards self        |
| उठ uṭh      | rise     | action for or towards self        |
| पहुंच pahūc | reach    | action for completion, direction  |
| चल cal      | walk     | direction away, completion        |
| मर mar      | die      | completion, lack of control       |
| मार ma:r    | kill     | change of state, suddenness       |

Thus, a compound verb is made of two verbs, the first, the main verb which expresses its general meaning and, the second, an explicator/operator which is conjugated for different inflections. A large number of compound verbs are formed by the combination of verbs in which the first verb represents the meaning and the explicator takes all the grammatical inflections. Examples of such verbs are: आ जाना *a: ja:na:* ‘to come,’ मिल जाना *mil ja:na:* ‘to get,’ खा लेना *kha: lena:* ‘to eat,’ पी लेना *pi: lena:* ‘to drink,’ ले आना *le a:na:* ‘to bring,’ खरीद लेना *xari:d lena:* ‘to buy,’ चल देना *cal dena:* ‘to leave,’ कर बैठना *kar bēṭhna:* ‘to do,’ कर डालना *kar da:lna:* ‘to do,’ कर छोड़ना *kar chorna:* ‘to do,’ दे देना *de dena:* ‘to give.’

21. सभी बच्चे समय पर आ गए।  
*sabhi: bacce samay par a: gaye.*  
 all children time on came went  
 All the children came on time.
22. बच्चे ने सेब खा लिया।  
*bacce ne seb kha: liya:.*  
 child-erg apple eat took  
 The child ate an apple.
23. वह सारे पैसे ले गया।  
*vah sa:re pese le gaya:.*  
 he all money take went  
 He took all the money.
24. उसने नई कार खरीद ली।  
*usne nai: ka:r xari:d li:.*  
 he-erg new car buy took-fs  
 He bought a new car.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

25. मैंने अपना काम कर डाला ।  
*m̐ne apna: ka:m kar da:la:.*  
I-erg self's work do threw  
I completed my work.

There are verbal phrases in which there are two or more inflexible verbs, such as पीता गया *pi:ta gaya:* ‘went on drinking,’ सुनता रहा *sunta: raha:* ‘kept on listing,’ सोया पड़ा रहा *soya: para: raha:* ‘remained sleeping,’ चला गया *cala: gaya:* ‘gone.’

26. वह सारी रात चाय पीता गया ।  
*vah sa:ri: ra:t ca:y pi:ta: gaya:.*  
he all night tea drink-ptc went-ms  
He kept on drinking tea throughout the night.
27. वह मेरी बात ध्यान से सुनता रहा ।  
*vah meri: ba:t dhya:n se sunta: raha:.*  
he my talk attention with listened-ptc remained-ms  
He kept on listening to my story with attention.
28. वह सारा दिन सोया पड़ा रहा ।  
*vah sa:ra: din soya: para: raha:.*  
he whole day slept fell remained-ms  
He kept on sleeping for the whole day.

#### 3.4.3. Tense

Tense and aspect are major grammatical categories of the verbal system in Hindi. There are three grammatical aspects: habitual, progressive, and perfective. Each of them is expressed by marking the verbal stems.

Hindi has six tenses: present, past, future, present perfect, habitual past, and past perfect. The present tense represents an ongoing action, a habitual, repeated or characteristic action, or simply expresses a fact.

1. अमर घर जा रहा है।  
*amar ghar ja: raha: he.*  
Amar home go-prog is  
Amar is going home.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

2. वह कालिज में पढ़ता है।  
*vah ka:lej mē par̥ta: hε.*  
he college in study-pre-hab. be  
He studies in college.

The verb in (1) is in the progressive aspect and in (2) in the habitual aspect.

The past tense represents an ongoing action or an action completed in the past.

3. अमर दिल्ली जा रहा था।  
*amar dilli: ja: raha: tha:.*  
Amar Delhi-obl go-prog was  
Amar was going to Delhi.
4. उसने अखबार पढ़ा।  
*usne axba:r parha:.*  
he-erg newspaper read-perf  
He read the newspaper.

The verb in (3) is in the progressive aspect and in (4) is in the perfect aspect.

The future tense represents an action yet to take place or a state yet to come into being.

5. उमा कल दिल्ली जाएगी।  
*uma: kal dilli: ja:egi:.*  
Uma tomorrow Delhi-obl go-fut  
Uma will go to Delhi tomorrow.

The present perfect tense represents a completed act the effect of which is still present.

6. उसने यह जगह देखी है।  
*usne yah jagah dekhi: hε.*  
he-erg this place see-perf be  
He has seen this place.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

The habitual past tense represents an act habitually done in the past.

7. वह हमेशा मेहनत करता था।  
*vah hameša: mehnat karta: tha:*  
he always hard work do-hab be-past  
He always used to work hard.

The past perfect tense represents an action completed in the past or before a certain past time.

8. अमर परसों सवेरे आया था।  
*amar parsō savere a:ya: tha:*  
Amar day before yesterday morning-obl came be-past  
Amar had come the day before yesterday in the morning.

#### **3.4.4. Aspect**

Verbal forms indicating one of these aspects are specified for one of the four tenses: present, past, presumptive, and subjunctive. The combination of one of the three aspects with the four different tenses results in the production of various aspectual-tenses: present-habitual, past-habitual, presumptive-habitual, subjunctive-habitual, present-progressive, past-progressive, presumptive-progressive, subjunctive-progressive, present-perfective, past-perfective, presumptive-perfective, and subjunctive-perfective. It also permits the simple-perfective form. Besides these aspectual verb forms, some non-aspectual verb forms of Hindi are the future, root subjunctive, and the imperative and infinitive forms. They will be discussed separately.

##### **3.4.4.1. Habitual Aspect**

The habitual aspectual-tenses are formed by adding the following suffixes to the verb stems agreeing with the subject in gender and number:

| Masculine |         | Feminine |
|-----------|---------|----------|
| Sg        | Pl      | Sg / Pl  |
| -ता -ta:  | -ते -te | -ती -ti: |

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

They are followed by appropriate forms of the auxiliary verb होना *hona*. Present and past habitual forms are used to express habitual actions or the state of affairs viewed from the perspective of the present and the past respectively.

#### ***Present-habitual***

1. मैं घर रोज़ आता/ आती हूँ।  
*mĒ ghar roz a:ta:/a:ti: hū:*.  
I home daily come-ptc-ms/-fs be  
I come home daily.
2. हम घर रोज़ आते / आती हैं।  
*ham ghar roz a:te/a:ti: hĒ*.  
we home daily come-ptc-mp/-fp be  
We come home daily.
3. तू घर रोज़ जाता/ जाती है।  
*tu: ghar roz ja:ta:/ja:ti: hĒ*.  
you home daily go-ptc-ms/go-fs be  
You go home daily.
4. तुम घर रोज़ जाते/ जाती हो।  
*tum ghar roz ja:te/ja:ti: ho*.  
you home daily go-ptc-mp/go-fs be  
You go home daily.
5. आप घर रोज़ जाते/ जाती हैं।  
*a:p ghar roz ja:te/ja:ti: hĒ*.  
you home daily go-m/go-f be  
You go home daily.
6. यह/ वह शहर जाता/ जाती है।  
*yah/vah šahar ja:ta:/ja:ti: hĒ*.  
(s)he city go-ptc-ms/go-fs be  
He/she goes to the city.
7. वे शहर जाते/ जाती हैं।  
*ve šahar ja:te/ja:ti: hĒ*.  
they city go-ptc-mp/go-f be  
He/she/they goes/goes/go to the city.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

#### **Past-habitual**

8. मैं रोज़ बाज़ार जाता था /जाती थी ।  
*m̥e̥ roz ba:za:r ja:ta: tha:/ja:ti: thi:.*  
 I daily market go-ptc-ms was /go-fs was  
 I used to go to the market daily.
9. तू रोज़ बाज़ार जाता था/ जाती थी ।  
*tu: roz ba:za:r ja:ta: tha:/ja:ti: thi:.*  
 you daily market go-ptc-ms was/go-ptc-fs was  
 You used to go to the market daily.
10. तुम/ आप रोज़ दफ्तर जाते थे/जाती थों ।  
*tum/a:p roz daftar ja:te the/ja:ti: thi:.*  
 you-fam/you-hon daily office go-ptc-ms were/go-ptc-fs were  
 You used to go to the office daily.
11. वह सबेरे गाँव जाता था/ जाती थी ।  
*vah savere ga:ū: ja:ta: tha:/ja:ti: thi:.*  
 he/she morning-abl village go-ptc-ms was/go-ptc-fs was  
 He/She used to go to the village in the morning.
12. वे शाम को गाँव जाते थे / जाती थों ।  
*ve ūa:m ko ga:ū: ja:te the/ja:ti: thi:.*  
 they evening-dat at village go-ptc-ms was/go-ptc-fs was  
 They used to go to the village in the evening.

Present-habitual in conjunction with the adverb अभी *abhi*: ‘right away’ indicates that an action is to be carried out in the near future.

13. मैं अभी जाता हूँ ।  
*m̥e̥ abhi: ja:ta: hū:.*  
 I right away go-ptc.ms am  
 I'll go right away.

In the negative construction of the present-habitual form, the present form of the verb होना *hona*: is usually deleted.

14. वह सुबह चाय नहीं पीता ।  
*vah subah ca:y nahī: pi:ta:.*  
 he morning-abl tea neg drink-ptc.ms  
 He doesn't drink tea in the morning.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

Past-habitual also indicates that an action has taken place in remote past.

15. उमा होटल में गाना गाती थी ।  
*uma: hotel mē ga:na: ga:ti: thi:.*  
Uma hotel in song sing-ptc was  
Uma used to sing at the hotel.

#### ***Presumptive-habitual***

Presumptive-habitual forms are used to indicate that an action or state of affairs is both habitual and presumed, but not known definitely.

16. मैं आता होऊँगा/ आती होऊँगी ।  
*mē a:ta: hoū:ga: /a:ti: hoū:gi:.*  
I come-ms be-pre.hab/ go-fs be-pre.hab.  
I would be coming.
17. हम आते होंगे/ आती होंगी ।  
*ham a:te hōge/a:ti: hōgī:.*  
We would be coming.
18. तू/ वह आता होगा/ आती होगी ।  
*tu:/vah a:ta: hogā:/a:ti: hogī:.*  
You/he would be coming.
19. तुम/ आप/ वे आते होंगे / आती होंगी ।  
*tum/a:p/ve a:te hōge/ a:ti: hōgī:.*  
You/they would be coming.

#### ***Subjunctive-habitual***

Subjunctive-habitual forms are used to indicate actions that are both habitual and hypothetical, contingent, or speculative, but not directly guaranteed to take place.

20. मैं चाहता हूँ वह आएँ ।  
*mē ca:hta: hū: vah a:yē.*  
I want him/her to come.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

21. मेरी इच्छा है आप यह किताब पढ़ें।  
*meri: iccha: hε a:p yeh kita:b parhε.*  
I want you to read this book.
22. वह घर पर काम करता था/ करती थी।  
*vah ghar par ka:m karta: tha: /karti: thi:.*  
he/she home at work do-ms/do-fs was  
He/she used to work at home.

#### 3.4.4.2. Progressive Aspect

Progressive aspect verbs are formed by adding the following auxiliary forms immediately after the verb stems and appropriate forms of the verb *hona:* 'to be' and they agree with the person, gender, and number of the subject of the verb:

| Masculine |          | Feminine  |
|-----------|----------|-----------|
| Sg        | Pl       | Sg / Pl   |
| रहा raha: | रहे rahe | रही rahi: |

The progressive aspect is used to indicate actions or states of affairs of a continuous nature or extended through time. There are two primary categories: present-progressive and past-progressive.

##### **Present-progressive**

23. मैं घर जा रहा/ जा रही हूँ।  
*mε̃ ghar ja: raha:/ja: rahi: hū:.*  
I home go-prog-ms/ go-prog-fs am  
I am going home.
24. मैं/ हम/ वे घर जा रहे/ जा रही हैं।  
*ham/ve ghar ja: rahe/ja rahi: hε̃.*  
we/they home go-prog-mpl/-prog-fpl be-pl  
We/they are going home.
25. तू कालिज से आ रहा है/ रही है।  
*tu: ka:lej se a: raha: he / rahi: he.*  
you-fam/he/she college from come-prog-ms /-prog-fs be-sg  
You are coming from the college.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

26. तुम खाना खा रहे/ रही हो।  
*tum kha:na: kha: rahe/rahi: ho.*  
you-non.hon pl food eat-prog-mpl/-fpl be  
You are eating food.

27. आप/ वे चाय पी रहे हैं।  
*a:p/ve ca:y pi: rahe h̥e.*  
you/they tea drink-prog are  
You /they are drinking tea.

#### **Past-progressive**

28. मैं गा रहा था/ रही थी।  
*m̥e ga: raha: tha:/ rahi: thi:.*  
I sing-prog was-ms/sing-prog was-fs  
I was singing.

29. तू सेब खा रहा था/ रही थी।  
*tu: seb kha: raha: tha:/ rahi: thi:.*  
you-fam. apple eat-prog-ms was/ -prog-fs was  
You were eating an apple.

30. तुम किताब पढ़ रहे थे / रही थी।  
*tum kita:b parh rahe/rahi: ho.*  
you book read-prog-mp/ -fp be  
You are reading a book.

31. आप पत्र लिख रहे थे।  
*a:p patr likh rahe the.*  
you-hon letter write-prog be  
You were writing a letter.

#### **Presumptive-progressive**

Presumptive-progressive forms are used to indicate that an action or state of affairs is extended in time and presumed to be occurring.

32. उमा दिल्ली से आ रही होगी।  
*uma: dilli: se a: rahi: hogi:.*  
Uma Delhi from come-prog be-presumptive  
Uma must be coming from Delhi.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

#### ***Subjunctive-progressive***

33. सम्भव है वह जा रहा हो।  
*sambhav he vah ja: raha: ho.*  
 possible is he go-prog be-subj  
 It is possible he would be going.
34. मुम्किन हैं वे आ रहे हौं।  
*mumkin he ve a: rahe hō.*  
 possible is they come-prog be-subj  
 It is possible they would be coming.

#### **3.4.4.3. Perfective Aspect**

Perfective aspect indicates an action or state of affairs that has been completed. There are five sets of perfective forms in Hindi: simple-perfective, present-perfective, past-perfective, presumptive-perfective and subjunctive-perfective. The following perfect participle suffixes are added to the main verb stems. In constructions with intransitive verbs, they agree with the subject in gender and number. In constructions with transitive verbs, they agree with the object's gender and number.

| Masculine |       | Feminine |        |
|-----------|-------|----------|--------|
| Sg        | Pl    | Sg       | Pl     |
| -आ -a:    | -ए -e | -ई -i:   | -ई -ī: |

These suffixes are added to both intransitive and transitive verbs.

| Verb     |       | Masculine   |            | Feminine    |              |
|----------|-------|-------------|------------|-------------|--------------|
|          |       | Sg          | Pl         | Sg          | Pl           |
| गिर gir  | fall  | गिरा gira:  | गिरे gire  | गिरी giri:  | गिरीं girī:  |
| चल cal   | walk  | चला cala:   | चले cale   | चली cali:   | चलीं calī:   |
| पढ़ parh | read  | पढ़ा parha: | पढ़े parhe | पढ़ी parhi: | पढ़ीं parhī: |
| लिख likh | write | लिखा likha: | लिखे likhe | लिखी likhi: | लिखीं likhī: |

In vowel-ending verb stems, the glide -य -y is inserted before the masculine singular ending -आ -a: is added to the verb stem.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

| Verb     |       | Masculine    |            | Feminine   |            |
|----------|-------|--------------|------------|------------|------------|
|          |       | Sg           | Pl         | Sg         | Pl         |
| आ a:     | come  | आया a:ya:    | आए a:e     | आई a:i:    | आई a:i:    |
| सो so    | sleep | सोया soya:   | सोए soe    | सोई soi:   | सोई soi:   |
| सी si:   | sew   | सिया siya:   | सिए sie    | सी si:     | सी sī:     |
| खें khe  | row   | खेया kheyā:  | खेये kheyē | खेई khei:  | खेई khei:  |
| जा ja:   | go    | गया gaya:    | गए gae     | गई gai:    | गई gaī:    |
| खां kha: | eat   | खाया kha:ya: | खाए kha:e  | खाई kha:i: | खाई kha:i: |

Notice that the verbs सो *so* ‘sleep’ and सी *si:* ‘sew’ have alternate feminine plural forms; the verb खें *khe* ‘row’ has the feminine plural form with inserted य *y* glide; the verb जा *ja:* ‘go’ has an irregular past perfective form.

Some transitive verbs have irregular perfective participle forms.

| Verb   |       | Masculine  |           | Feminine |         |
|--------|-------|------------|-----------|----------|---------|
|        |       | Sg         | Pl        | Sg       | Pl      |
| कर kar | do    | किया kiya: | किए kiye  | की ki:   | कीं kī: |
| ले le  | take  | लिया liya: | लिए liye  | ली li:   | लीं lī: |
| पी pi: | drink | पिया piya: | पिये piye | पी pi:   | पीं pī: |
| दे de  | give  | दिया diya: | दिये diye | दी di:   | दीं dī: |

#### *Simple-perfective*

The simple-perfective form appears without verbal auxiliaries.

35. लड़का/लड़की घर गया/ गई।  
*larka:/larki: ghar ga:ya:/ ga:yi:.*  
 boy/girl home went-ms/went-fs  
 The boy/girl went home.

36. मैंने /उसने/ उहोने तस्वीर देखी।  
*mēnē /hamne/usne/unhōne tasvi:r dekhi:.*  
 I-erg/we-erg/(s)he-erg/they-erg picture-fs saw-fs  
 I/we/(s)he/they saw the picture.

#### *Present-perfective*

37. मैं कोलकता गया हूँ।  
*mē kolkata: gaya: hū:.*

I Kolkata went be-pre  
I have gone to Kolkata.

38. मैंने/ हमने /उन्होंने कोलकता देखा है।  
*m̤ne/hamne/unhõne kolkata: dekha: hε.*  
 I-erg/we-erg/thy-erg Kolkata see-perf be-pre  
 I/we/they have seen Kolkata.

**Past-perfective**

39. मैं/ तू/वह बाज़ार गया था।  
*m̤/tu:/vah ba:za:r gaya: tha:*  
 I/you/(s)he market went-perf be-past  
 I/you/(s)he had gone to the market.
40. मैंने/ तुमने /उन्होंने/ खाना खाया था।  
*m̤ne/tumne/unhõne kha:na: kha:ya: tha:*  
 I-erg/you-erg/(s)he-erg/they-erg food eat-perf be-past  
 I/ you/(s)he/they had eaten the food.

**Presumptive-perfective**

41. वह कल दिल्ली गया होगा।  
*vah kal dilli: gaya: hoga:.*  
 he tomorrow Delhi went be-pre.perf  
 He would have gone to Delhi tomorrow.
42. उसने कल यह किताब पढ़ी होगी।  
*usne kal yah kita:b parhi: hogi:.*  
 he-erg tomorrow this book read-fs be-pre.perf  
 He would have read this book tomorrow.

**Subjunctive-perfective**

43. वह आया हो।  
*vah a:ya: ho.*  
 he came be-subj.perf  
 He might have come.
44. पत्ते पेड़ से गिरे हौं।  
*patte per se gire hō.*  
 leaves tree from fell be-subj.perf  
 The leaves may have fallen from the tree.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

#### **3.4.5. Mood**

In Hindi there are three moods: indicative, imperative, and optative.

##### **3.4.5.1. Indicative Mood**

The indicative represents the action as a fact or makes a query about it. The verb can be used in habitual (hab), progressive (prog), or perfective (perf) aspects. The present and past participle forms of these verbs have been explained above. The following aspectual marks are added to the verb stem *bol* ‘say’ in the indicative mood.

|             | Masculine |          | Feminine  |           |
|-------------|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
|             | Sg        | Pl       | Sg        | Pl        |
| Habitual    | बोलता     | बोलते    | बोलती     | बोलतीं    |
|             | bolta:    | bolte    | bolti:    | bolti:    |
| Progressive | बोल रहा   | बोल रहे  | बोल रही   | बोल रहीं  |
|             | bol raha: | bol rahe | bol rahi: | bol rahī: |
| Perfective  | बोला      | बोले     | बोली      | बोलीं     |
|             | bola:     | bole     | boli:     | bolī:     |

The above paradigm shows the agreement of indicative mood with gender and number.

##### **3.4.5.2. Imperative Mood**

The imperative expresses an action as a command, a request, a warning, a prohibition, etc. The imperative is restricted to the future and cannot refer to the present or past tenses. Since the imperative denotes a command, request, etc., its proper domain is the second person. Indirect commands or requests made to a third person are expressed by the subjunctive form. In imperative constructions, the subject is omitted and can be guessed from both the context and the form of the verb. The verb agrees with the second person subject which has three second person pronominal forms: (i) intimate, (ii) familiar, and (iii) polite.

The intimate imperative forms are used in issuing orders/commands for those who are usually addressed with the intimate second person pronoun तू *tu*: ‘you.’ The familiar imperatives are used in issuing commands to all those who are normally addressed by the familiar

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

second-person pronoun तुम *tum* ‘you.’ Polite imperatives are used for making requests to those who are normally addressed by the second person pronoun आप *a:p* ‘you.’

| Second Person |       |             |               |                  |
|---------------|-------|-------------|---------------|------------------|
| Verb          |       | Intimate    | Familiar      | Polite           |
| आ a:          | come  | आ a:        | आओ a:o        | आइए a:iye        |
| जा ja:        | go    | जा ja:      | जाओ ja:o      | जाइए ja:iye      |
| खा kha:       | eat   | खा kha:     | खाओ kha:o     | खाइए kha:iye     |
| पढ़ parh      | read  | पढ़ parh    | पढ़ो parho    | पढ़िए parhiye    |
| लिख likh      | write | लिख likh    | लिखो likho    | लिखिए likhiye    |
| खरीद xari:d   | buy   | खरीद xari:d | खरीदो xari:do | खरीदिए xari:diye |

In the above, the intimate forms are the same as the verb stem forms; in familiar forms, -ओ -o is added to the verb stem form and in polite forms -इए -iye is added.

1. (तू) आ / जा / खा / पढ़ / लिख / खरीद।  
*(tu:) a:/ja:/kha:/parh/likh/xari:d*  
 you-intimate come/go/eat/read/write/buy  
 Come/go/eat/read/write/buy.
- 1a. (तुम) आओ / जाओ / खाओ / पढ़ो / लिखो / खरीदो।  
*(tum) a:o/ja:o/kha:o/parho/likho/xari:do*  
 you-familiar come/go/eat/read/write/buy
- 1b. (आप) आइए / जाइए / खाइए / पढ़िए / लिखिए / खरीदिए।  
*(a:p) a:iye/ja:iye/ kha:iye/pr̥hiye/likhiye/khari:diye.*  
 (you-polite) come/go/read/write/ buy  
 Please come/go/eat/read/write/buy

A few verbs have irregular familiar and polite forms.

|        |      |        |          |                           |
|--------|------|--------|----------|---------------------------|
| दे de  | give | दे de  | दो do    | दीजिए di:jiye             |
| ले le  | take | ले le  | लो lo    | लीजिए li:jiye             |
| कर kar | do   | कर kar | करो karo | करिए kariye/कीजिए ki:jiye |

In the above forms, -ओ -o is added to the vowel-ending verb stems in the intimate form and the stem vowel is elided. The suffix -इजिए -i:jiye is added in the polite form and the stem vowel is elided. The

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

verb कर *kar* ‘do’ has an alternate form करिए *kariye* ‘do’ in its polite form, as well.

2. (तू) दे / ले / कर  
*(tu:) de/le/kar*  
(you-familiar.sg) give/take/do
- 2a. (तुम) दो / लो / करो  
*(tum) do/lo/karo*  
(you-familiar.pl) give/take/do
- 2b. (आप) दीजिए / लीजिए / कीजिए  
*(a:p) di:jiye/li:jiye/ki:jiye*  
(polite) give/take/do

The operators take the same imperative forms in the compound verb constructions.

3. यह किताब ले लो।  
*yah kita:b le lo.*  
this book take-explicator  
Take this book.
- 3a. यह किताब ले लीजिए।  
*yah kita:b le li:jiye.*  
this book take explicator-polite  
Please take this book.
4. दरवाज़ा बंद कर लो।  
*darva:za: band kar lo.*  
door close do take-explicator-familiar  
Close the door.
- 4a. दरवाज़ा बंद कर लीजिए।  
*darva:za: band kar li:jiye.*  
door close do take-explicator-polite  
Please close the door.

In negative or prohibitive imperative constructions, the negative markers *na /nahii* ‘no’ may precede the verb in the infinitive form.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

However, it is optional with the use of prohibitive morpheme *mat* ‘don’t.’

5. दवाई मत / न / नहीं खाना / खा लेना।  
*dava:i: mat/na/nahī: kha:na:/kha: lena:.*  
 medicine neg eat-inf./eat take-inf.  
 Don't take medicine.
  
- 5a. दवाई मत खा लीजिए।  
*dava:i: mat kha: li:jiye.*  
 medicine neg eat take-inf.  
 Don't take medicine.

#### 3.4.5.3. Subjunctive Mood

The subjunctive forms are formed by adding certain suffixes to the verb stems that agree with the subjects in person and number, e.g.,

|                                   | Sg    | Pl    |
|-----------------------------------|-------|-------|
| 1 <sup>st</sup> person            | -ঁ -ঃ | -ঁ -ঃ |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup> person (familiar) | -এ -ে | -ও -ো |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup> person (polite)   | -ঁ -ঃ | -ঁ -ঃ |
| 3 <sup>rd</sup> person            | -এ -ে | -ঁ -ঃ |

The subjunctive forms of the verb होना *hona:* ‘to be’ have been given in 3.4.1.(d). Here we will illustrate the subjunctive forms of a few other verbs.

6. मैं जाऊँ / करूँ / पढ़ूँ।  
*m̤e ja:ū:/karū:/parhū:.*  
 I go-subj /do-subj /read-subj
  
- 6a. हम जाएँ / करें / पढ़ें।  
*ham ja:ē/karē/parhē*  
 we go-subj /do-subj /read-subj
  
- 6b. तू जाए / करे / पढ़े।  
*tu: ja:e/kare/parhe*  
 you go-subj /do-subj /read-subj

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

- 6c. तुम जाओ / करो / पढ़ो ।  
*tum ja:o/karo/ par̥ho*  
you go-subj /do-subj /read-subj
- 6d. आप जाएँ / करें / पढ़ें ।  
*a:p ja:ẽ/karẽ/ parhẽ*  
you go-subj /do-subj /read-subj
- 6e. वह आए / करे / पढ़े ।  
*vah a:e/kare/ parhe*  
he come-subj /do-subj /read-subj
- 6f. वे आएँ / करें / पढ़ें ।  
*ve a:ẽ/karẽ/ parhẽ*  
they come-subj/do-subj /read-subj

The stem final vowels -इ -ी and -ऊ -ू, as in पि *pi:* ‘drink,’ and चु *chu:* ‘touch’, are shortened in length as -इ -i and -ऊ -u before the subjunctive verb suffixes are added to them.

7. मैं पिऊँ /चुउँ ।  
*mẽ piū:/chuū:*  
I drink-subj /touch-subj
- 7a. हम पिएँ /चुएँ ।  
*ham piẽ/chuẽ*  
we drink-subj/touch-subj
- 7b. तू पिए /चुए ।  
*tu: pie/chue*  
you drink-subj/touch-subj
- 7c. तुम पिओ /चुओ ।  
*tum pio/chuo*  
you drink-subj/touch-subj
- 7d. आप पिएँ /चुएँ ।  
*a:p piẽ/chuẽ*  
yiu drink-subj/touch-subj

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

7e. वह पिए / छुए।  
*vah pie/chue*  
he drink-subj/touch-subj

7f. वे पिएं / छुएं।  
*ve piē/chue̡*  
they drink-subj/touch-subj

#### 3.4.6. Voice

The verbal stem can also be used to indicate the passive voice. It indicates the subject of a verb in the passive voice and it has agreement of number, person, and gender.

1. उमा से पत्र न लिखा गया।  
*uma: se patr na likha: gaya:.*  
Uma by letter neg write-pass  
Uma couldn't write a letter.
2. उससे चला न गया।  
*us-se cala: na gaya:.*  
she-by walk neg be able  
She couldn't walk.
3. उससे यह काम नहीं हो सकता।  
*us-se yah ka:m nahī: ho sakta:.*  
she-by this work neg be able-model  
She would not be able to do this work.
4. मुझसे किताब गिर गई।  
*mujh-se kita:b gir gayi:.*  
me-by book fell down  
The book fell from my hands.
5. उससे आईना टूट गया।  
*us-se a:yi:na: tu:t gaya:.*  
she-by mirror break explicator  
The mirror was broken by her.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

6. पुराने अखबारों को फेंका गया।  
*pura:ne akhba:rō ko phēka: gaya:*  
old newspapers-obl dat thrown explicator  
The old newspapers were thrown away.

It can also be used to express ‘from’ or ‘through’

7. मुझसे अंग्रेजी पढ़ लो।  
*mujh-se āgrezi: parh lo.*  
me-from English learn explicator  
Learn English from me.

It is used with the indirect objects of verbs meaning ‘to tell, say, ask, ask for, beg, demand, claim, request,’

8. उसने उमा से कहा कि ...  
*usne uma: se kaha: ki ...*  
he-erg Uma said that  
He told Uma that ...
9. उमा ने मुझसे पूछा कि ...  
*uma: ne mujh se pu:cha: ...*  
Uma er me-obl from asked  
Uma asked me ...
10. अमित ने उससे प्रार्थना की  
*amit ne us-se pra:rthana: ki:*  
Amit-erg him/her request made  
Amit requested him/her.

#### **3.4.7. Non-finite Verb Forms**

We have discussed various finite verbal forms under tense, aspect, mood, and voice above. We will now discuss the non-finite forms of verbs which include infinitives and participles.

##### **3.4.7.1. Infinitives**

Infinitives are formed by adding the suffix -ना -na: to the verb stems: आना *a:na:* ‘to come,’ जाना *ja:na:* ‘to go,’ करना *karna:* ‘to do,’ लिखना *lkhna:* ‘to write,’ etc. Infinitives are used both as nouns and as

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

adjectives. An infinitive is usually an abstract noun and, being an abstract noun, it is not used in the plural.

1. जल्दी सोना ठीक है।  
*jaldi: sona: thi:kh he.*  
early sleep-inf good is  
It is good to go to sleep early.
2. उसके आने में देर हुई।  
*uske a:ne mē der hui:.*  
he-gen-obl come-inf-obl in late be-fsg  
He/she arrived late.
3. मैंने उसे जाने से रोका।  
*mēne use ja:ne se roka:.*  
I-erg he-dat go-inf-obl from stop-pst  
I stopped him from going.

Despite being a noun, the infinite can take an object.

4. वह काम करने में तेज़ है।  
*vah ka:m karne mē tez he.*  
he work do-inf-obl in fast is  
He is prompt in (his) work.

The postposition को *ko* ‘to’ is not added when the infinitive is used as an object.

5. वह किताब लाना भूल गया।  
*vah kita:b la:na: bhu:l gaya:.*  
he book bring-inf forget go-operator-pst  
He forgot to bring the book.
6. मैं उसे मिलने जाऊँगा।  
*mē use milne ja:ū:ga:.*  
I him-obl meet-inf-obl go-fut  
I will go to see him.

Infinitives are frequently used as adjectives in combination with verbs denoting obligation, necessity, requirement, or compulsion like चाह *ca:h* ‘want,’ हो *ho* ‘be,’ and पड़ *par* ‘compulsion.’ The

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

compounds made are passive in meaning.

7. मैं चाय पीना चाहता हूँ।  
*mĒ ca:y pi:na: cahta: hū:*  
I tea drink-inf want-ptc am  
I want to drink tea.
8. मुझे दिल्ली जाना पड़ा।  
*mujhe dilli: ja:na: para:.*  
I-dat Delhi go-inf fell(explicator)  
I had to go to Delhi.
9. उसे काम शाम तक समाप्त करना था।  
*use ka:m ša:m tak sama:pt karna: tha:*  
he-obl work evening up to finish do-inf be-past-obligatory  
He had to finish the work by evening.

When an infinitive is transitive, it is used as an adjective for its object and changes its ending -ना -na: to -नी -ni: or -ने -ne.

10. उसे पैसे लाने हैं।  
*use pese la:ne hē.*  
he-obl money bring-inf-obl-pl be-obligatory  
He has to bring money.
11. उसे / उसको दवाई पीनी पड़ेगी।  
*use/usko dava:i: pi:ni: paregi:.*  
he-obl tea medicine drink-inf-fs necessary-fut  
He has to drink medicine.
12. मैंने उसकी मदद करनी चाही।  
*umĒne uski: madad karni: ca:hi:.*  
I-erg his/her help-f. do-inf.fs want-fs  
I wanted to help him/her.

#### **3.4.7.2. Participles**

Participles in Hindi are largely verbal in nature and function as adjectives and adverbs. They are of two types: imperfective and perfective. Whereas imperfective participles represent incomplete or unfinished activities, perfective participles designate completed

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

verbal activities.

#### 3.4.7.2.1. Imperfective Participles

When used adjectivally, imperfective participles are formed by adding the suffixes -ता -ta: (ms), -ते -te (mp), -ती -ti (fs), and -तीं -tī: (fp) that are made to agree with the noun in gender and number. Adjectival imperfective participles are expanded with one of the simple perfective forms of होना hona: ‘to be,’ like हुआ hua: (ms), and हुए hue (p), and हुई hui: (fs).

1. दौड़ता हुआ आदमी रुक गया।  
*dɔṛta: hua: a:dmi: ruk gaya:.*  
run-imp.ptc be-ms man stop went  
The running man stopped.
2. दौड़ते हुए बच्चे शोर कर रहे हैं।  
*dɔṛte hue bacce šor kar rahe hε~.*  
run-imp.ptc be-mp children noise do-prog.asp are  
The running children are making noise.
3. चलती हुई बस रुक गई।  
*calti: hui: bas ruk gai:.*  
move-imp.ptc-fs bus stop went  
The moving bus stopped.

When used adverbially, the suffix -ते -te is added to the verb stem and is followed by हुए hue.

4. दफ्तर से लौटते हुए मैंने फल खरीदे।  
*daftar se lɔ̄te hue mēne phal khari:de.*  
office from return-while I-erg fruit bought  
I bought fruit while returning from the office.
5. बच्चे स्कूल जाते हुए गा रहे थे।  
*bacce sku:l ja:tee hue ga: rahe the.*  
children school go-while sing-prog.asp were  
The children were singing songs while going to school.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

Adverbial imperfective participles may be reduplicated.

6. वह पैदल चलते - चलते थक गया।  
*vah pedal calte-calte thak gaya:*  
he on foot walk-ptc walk-ptc tired went  
He was tired of walking on foot.

7. वह छत से गिरते - गिरते बच गया।  
*vah chat se girte-girte bac gaya:*  
he roof from fall-ptc-fall-ptc save went  
He almost fell from the roof.

Adverbial imperfective participles are used with different time expressions.

8. वह घर जाते समय मायूस था।  
*vah ghar ja:te samay ma:yu:s tha:*  
he home go-ptc time sad was  
He was sad when it was time to go home.

#### **3.4.7.2.2. Perfective Participles**

Perfective participles are formed by adding the adjectival suffixes -आ -a:, -ए -e, and -ई -i: to verb stems agreeing with the noun in person, gender, and number. A few perfective stems are irregular. Perfective participles represent a verbal activity carried through to completion. Perfective participles may be employed either adjectivally or adverbially. The adjectival participles are expanded with the forms of हुआ *hua:*, हुए *hue*, and हुई *hui:* that agree with the modified noun in person, gender, and number.

9. बैठा (हुआ ) लड़का  
*bætha: (hua:) larka:*  
the sitting (i.e., seated) boy
- 9a. बैठे (हुए ) लड़के  
*bæthe (hue) larke*  
the sitting boys

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

- 9b. बैठी (हुई) लड़की लड़कियाँ  
*bə̥thi (hui:) larki:/larkiyā:*  
the sitting girl/girls

The adjectival participles may precede or follow the noun they qualify.

- 10a. कमीज़ धुली (हुई) है।  
*kami:z dhuli: (hui:) hε.*  
shirt washed (perf-ptc) is  
The shirt is washed.

- 10b. धुली (हुई) कमीज़ अलमारी में है।  
*dhuli: (hui:) kami:z alma:ri: mē hε.*  
washed (ptc) shirt almirah in is  
The washed shirt is in almirah.

There are two types of adverbial participles. In one type, the invariable suffix -ए -e is employed.

11. छत पर बैठे हुए वह गा रहा था।  
*chat par bə̥the hue vah ga: raha: tha:.*  
roof at sitting-perf.ptc he sing-prog was  
He was singing while sitting on the roof.

In the other type, the adverbial participle uses the adjectival suffixes -आ -a;,- ए -e, and -ई -i:.

12. नई कमीज़ पहनी हुई रमा बाजार जा रही थी।  
*nai: kami:z pahni: hui: rama: baza:r ja: rahi: thi:.*  
new shirt wear-perf.ptc Rama market go-prog was  
Wearing a new shirt, Rama was going to market.

The perfective adverbial participles are frequently reduplicated.

13. वह घर पर बैठे - बैठे थक गया।  
*vah ghar par bə̥the-bə̥the thak gaya:*  
he home at sitting-perf.ptc tired went(explicator)  
He was tired of sitting at home.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

The perfective participles are used to indicate the passing of time.

14. अमर को अमरीका से आए हुए दो साल हो गए हैं।  
*amar ko amri:ka: se a:ye hue do sa:l ho gaye hE.*  
Amar-dat America from came-perf.ptc two years elapsed are  
It has been two years since Amar came from America.

#### **3.4.7.2.3. Conjunctive Participles**

Conjunctive participles are used to form sentences in which two verbal activities share the same subject and one of the activities is a temporal antecedent of the other. In this construction, the verb of the first clause is used in the verb stem form and is immediately followed by *kar*, while the verb of the subsequent clause takes all the conjugation markers.

15. वह घर पहुँचकर बाज़ार गया।  
*vah ghar pahūckar ba:za:r gaya:.*  
he home reach after-cp market went  
He went to the market after coming home.
16. उसने अख्तिवार पढ़कर चिट्ठी लिखी।  
*usne axba:r parh kar ciṭṭhi: likhi:.*  
he-erg neewspaper read after-cp letter-fs wrote-fs  
He wrote a letter after reading the newspaper.
- If the verb करना *karna:* ‘to do’ appears in the main clause either independently or as a part of a compound, the form *ke* is used in place of कर *kar*.
17. दफ्तर का काम समाप्त करके वह घर गया।  
*daftar ka: ka:m sama:pt karke vah ghar gaya:.*  
office of work finish do-cp he home went  
He went home after finishing the office work.  
Sometimes the conjunctive clauses are used in the adverbial sense.
18. अमर दौड़कर आया।  
*amar dɔṛ̥ kar a:ya:.*  
Amar run do-cp came  
Amar came running.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

19. उमा मुस्कराकर बोली ...  
*uma: muskara kar boli: ...*  
Uma smile do-cp said  
Uma said smilingly ...

The conjunctive participle marker *kar* is also used in certain fixed expressions.

20. मैं विशेष/ ग़्राम करके अमर से मिला।  
*m̥e višeš/xa:s karke amar se mila:.*  
I especially do-cp Amar with met  
I especially met Amar.
21. वह दिल्ली होकर आया।  
*vah dilli: ho kar a:ya:.*  
he Delhi be do-cp came  
He came via Delhi.
22. एक - एक करके सभी विद्यार्थी आए।  
*ek - ek karke sabhhi: vidhya:rthi: a:ye.*  
one one do-cp all students came  
All the students came one by one.

#### **3.5. Adverbs**

An adverb may precede an adjective, a verb, and sometimes another adverb as a qualifier or modifier.

##### ***Preceding an adjective***

1. वह मेरा बहुत अच्छा दोस्त है।  
*vah mera: bahut accha: dost he.*  
He my very good friend is  
He is my very good friend.

##### ***Preceding a verb***

2. मेरा दोस्त रोज़ आता है।  
*mera: dost roz a:ta: he.*  
my friend daily come-ptc is  
My friend comes daily.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

#### ***Preceding another adverb***

3. वह कल बहुत तेज़ दौड़ा।  
*vah kal bahut tez dɔṛha::*  
he yesterday very fast ran  
He ran very fast yesterday.

#### **3.5.1. Types of Adverbs**

Adverbs can be classified by form or function. By function, adverbs can be grouped into the following subclasses.

- (a) Adverbs of time/duration: आज *a:j* ‘today,’ कल *kal* ‘yesterday,’ सुबह *subah* ‘morning.’
- (b) Adverbs of place or direction: अंदर *andar* ‘in/inside,’ बाहर *ba:har* ‘out/outside.’
- (c) Adverbs of manner: आसानी से *a:sa:ni: se* ‘easily,’ धीरे-धीरे *dhi:re-dhi:re* ‘slowly.’
- (d) Adverbs of reason: गरीबी के कारण *gari:bi: ke ka:raṇ* ‘for the reason of poverty,’ कमज़ोरी के कारण *kamzori: ke ka:raṇ* ‘for the reason of weakness.’
- (e) Adverbs of instrument: कलम से *kalam se* ‘with pen,’ चाकू से *ca:ku: se* ‘with knife.’
- (f) Adverbs of purpose: पढ़ने के लिए *parhne ke liye* ‘for reading,’ काम के लिए *ka:m ke liye* ‘for work.’
- (g) Comitative: X -के साथ *-ke sa:th* ‘with/ in the company of X,’ and
- (h) Adverbs of degree/intensity: बहुत *bahut* ‘very,’ काफी *ka:phi:* ‘enough,’ विरला ही कोई *virla: hi: koyi:* ‘hardly any,’ लगभग *lagbhag* ‘approximately.’

By form, adverbs can be classified into the following subgroups: (a) basic or non-derived adverbs, (b) derived adverbs, (c) phrasal adverbs, (d) reduplicated adverbs, and (e) particles.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

(a) The basic or non-derived adverbs may be either pure adverbs like आज *a:j* ‘today,’ सदा *sada:/* हमेशा *hameša:* ‘always,’ or may be formed by adding the postposition *se* to nouns, adjectives, or adverbs.

4. वह हमेशा अच्छी मेहनत करता है।  
*vah hameša: acchi: mehnat karta: he.*  
he always good hard work do-ptc is  
He always works very hard.
5. उसने अपना काम खुशी से किया।  
*usne apna: ka:m khuši: se kiya:.*  
she-erg own work happiness with did  
She did her work very happily.
6. नीचे से ऊपर अच्छा दिखता है।  
*ni:ce se u:par accha: dikhta: he.*  
below from top good appear is  
It looks better at the top than at the bottom.
7. बाहर से अंदर अधिक ठंडा है।  
*ba:har se andar adhik thāda: he.*  
outside from inside more cold is  
It is colder inside than outside.
8. उसने एकदम से मेरा हाथ पकड़ा।  
*usne ekdam se mera: ha:th pakra:.*  
he-erg at once my hand caught  
He caught hold of my hand at once.
9. मैंने झट से उसकी बात मान ली।  
*mēne jhat se uski: ba:t ma:n li:.*  
I-erg at once his talk agreed  
I agreed with what he said immediately.

(b) Derived adverbs are formed by adding adverbial suffixes to the base form of demonstrative, relative, correlative, and interrogative pronouns. Locative adverbs are formed by adding the -इ -i:/ -आं पर -ā: *par* suffixes: यहाँ *yahā:/* यहीं पर *yahi:(par)* ‘here,’ वहाँ *vah-ā:/* वहीं *vahi:/* वहाँ ही *vahā: hi:* ‘there,’ कहाँ *kahā:/* कहीं *kahi:* ‘where.’ Directional adverbs are formed by adding the suffix -से -se/-की -ki: or

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

as in यहाँ से *yahā: se*/इधर से *idhar se* ‘in this direction,’ वहाँ से *vahā: se*/वहाँ की ओर *vahā: ki: or*/ उधर से *udhar se* ‘in that direction’, कहाँ से *kahā: se*/ कहाँ की ओर *kahā: ki: or* ‘in which direction.’ Manner adverbs are formed by adding the suffixes -तरह *tarah*/प्रकार *praka:r* as in इस तरह *is tarah*/ इस प्रकार *is praka:r* ‘in this manner,’ उस तरह *us tarah*/ उस प्रकार *us praka:r* ‘in that manner,’ किस तरह *kis tarah* ‘in which manner.’

(c) Phrasal adverbs are formed by adding a simple or a compound postposition to a noun.

10. वह तीन दिन के बाद/पश्चात आया।

*vah ti:n din ke ba:d/pašča:t a:ya:.*  
he three days post. after came  
He came after three days.

11. उसने पढ़ने से पहले अपनी ऐनक साफ़ की।

*usne patr parhne se pahle apnii ēnak sa:f ki:.*  
he-erg letter read-inf-obl post before self's glasses clean did  
He cleaned his glasses before reading the letter.

12. हमारे घर के पीछे एक बड़ा पार्क है।

*hama:re ghar ke pi:che ek bara: pa:rk he.*  
our house post. behind a big park is  
There is a big park behind our house.

(d) Adverbs can be reduplicated to show intensity and distribution:  
धीरे- धीरे *dhi:re-dhi:re* ‘slowly,’ तेज़ - तेज़ *tez- tez* ‘fast’, कहाँ- कहाँ *kahā: - kahā:* ‘where’, कभी- कभी *kabhi: - kabhi:* ‘sometimes.’

13. वह धीरे/ धीरे/ तेज़ - तेज़ चलता है।

*vah dhi:re- dhi:re/tez- tez calta: he.*  
he slowly/fast walk-ptc is  
He walks slowly/quickly.’

14. पता नहीं वह कहाँ- कहाँ गया।

*pata: nahī: vah kahā: - kahā: gaya:.*  
aware neg he where where went  
One doesn't know which places did he go to?

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

Reduplicated adverbs may be separated by the negative particle *na* to express indefiniteness: कभी न कभी *kabhi: na kabhi:* ‘sometime or other.’

15. कभी न कभी वह अपनी गल्ती मानेगी।  
*kabhi: na kabhi: vah apni: galti: ma:nega::*  
sometime neg sometime he self's mistake accept-fut  
He will realize his mistake some day.

#### **3.5.2. Expressions of Time**

##### **3.5.2.1. General Time Expressions**

General time expressions employ nouns in the direct and oblique cases. The dative suffix को *ko* is added to adverbs of time, such as दुपहर *duphar* ‘noon,’ शाम *śa:m* ‘evening,’ रात *ra:t* ‘night,’ दिन *din* ‘day,’ कल *kal* ‘tomorrow/yesterday.’

1. आप दुपहर को आइए।  
*a:p duphar ko a:yiye.*  
you noon dat come-pol  
Please come at noon.
2. रात को अधिक गर्मी नहीं रहती।  
*ra:t ko adhik garmi: nahī: rahti::*  
night dat more hot neg remain-ptc  
It is not very hot during the night.

##### **3.5.2.2. Time of Day**

Time of day is expressed by बजे *baje*. It is used in reporting time and not in expressions such as एक घंटे के बाद *ek ghanṭe ke ba:d* ‘after one hour.’ In such cases, घंटा *ghanṭa:* ‘hour’ is used in the oblique case with a postposition.

3. वह दफ़तर से दस बजे आई।  
*vah daftari se das baje a:yi::*  
she office from ten o'clock came-fs  
She came from the office at ten o'clock.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

4. वह दो घंटे के बाद आई।  
*vah do ghanṭe ke ba:d a:yi:.*  
she two hour-obl post came-fs  
She came after two hours.'

The expressions ‘quarter,’ ‘three-quarters,’ and ‘half an hour’ precede the numerals.

5. वह सबा/ पौने/ साड़े चार बजे गया।  
*vah sab:/paone/sa:re ca:r baje: gaya:.*  
he quarter past/quarter to/half past four o'clock went  
He went at quarter past/quarter to/half past four.

Expressions indicating minutes before the hour add the dative suffix to the infinitive of the verb followed by the postposition में *mē* ‘in’. The expression कम *kam* ‘less’ also is used.

6. वह छे बजने में दस मिनट पर आया।  
*vah che bajne mē das minaṭ par a:ya:.*  
he six o'clock-inf-obl in ten minute at came  
He came at ten minutes to six.
- 6a. वह दस मिनट कम छे बजे आया।  
*vah das minaṭ kam che bajne a:ya:.*  
he ten minutes less six o'clock came  
He came at ten minutes to six.

Two types of expressions are used to ask for the time.

7. सनय क्या हुआ/ है?  
*samay k'a: hua:/he?*  
time what happened/is  
What time is it?
- 7a. कितने बज गए?  
*kitne baj gaye?*  
how much strike went  
What time is it?

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

#### 3.5.2.3. Period of Day

Periods of day are usually expressed by various nouns in the direct or oblique case with or without postpositions: सवेरे- सवेरे *savere* (*savere*) ‘early in the morning,’ रात को *ra:t ko* ‘during the night’, दिन में *din mē* ‘during the day,’ देर से *der se* ‘late.’ Other frequent expressions are: प्रातः काल *pra:ta: ka:l* ‘early in the morning,’ संध्या *sandhya*: ‘dusk/evening,’ दोपहर *dophar* ‘noon’, दोपहर के बाद *dophar ke ba:d* ‘afternoon.’

#### 3.5.2.4. Days of the Week

The days of the week are:

|                                      |           |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| सोमवार <i>somva:r</i>                | Monday    |
| मंगलवार <i>mangalva:r</i>            | Tuesday   |
| बुधवार <i>budhva:r</i>               | Wednesday |
| गुरुवार <i>guruva:r</i>              | Thursday  |
| शुक्रवार <i>šukrva:r</i>             | Friday    |
| शनिवार <i>šaniva:r/šani:car va:r</i> | Saturday  |
| रविवार/इतवार <i>raviva:r/itva:r</i>  | Sunday    |

#### 3.5.2.5. Months of the Year

Months are expressed in both indigenous and English forms.

##### 1. Hindi months

|                         |                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| बैसाख <i>vaiša:kh</i>   | April-May         |
| ज्येष्ठ <i>jyešṭh</i>   | May-June          |
| अषाढ <i>aśa:rh</i>      | June-July         |
| आवन <i>śra:van</i>      | July-August       |
| भाद्र <i>bha:dr</i>     | August-September  |
| आश्विन <i>a:śvin</i>    | September-October |
| कार्तिक <i>ka:rtik</i>  | October-November  |
| मार्ग <i>ma:rg</i>      | November-December |
| पौष <i>pōś</i>          | December-January  |
| माघ <i>ma:gh</i>        | January-February  |
| फाल्गुन <i>pha:lgun</i> | February-March    |
| चैत्र <i>caitra</i>     | March-April       |

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

2. English nativized versions: जनवरी *janvari:*, फरवरी *pharvari:*, मार्च *ma:rc*, अप्रिल *april*, मई *mai:*, जून *ju:n*, जुलाई *julay*, अगस्त *agast*, सितम्बर *sitambar*, अक्टोबर *akto:bar*, नवंबर *navambar*, दिसंबर *disambar*.

#### **3.5.2.6. Year**

In Hindi, a reference to a year is usually to the year AD called ईस्वी *i:svi:*. Hindus refer to their indigenous calendar as विक्रमी *bikrami* or शाक *sha:k* and Muslims as हिजरी *hijiri*. The term सन् *san* used before the Christian year, is optionally followed by ईस्वी *i:svi:*. Similarly, an indigenous year starts with संवत् *samvat* before the year and ends with विक्रमी *bikrami*.

8. सन् उनीस सौ साठ ईस्वी में  
*san uni:s sɔ sa:ṭh i:svi: mē*  
year nineteen hundred sixty Christian era in  
in the year 1960 AD
9. संवत् दो हज़ार साठ विक्रमी में  
*samvat do haza:r sa:ṭh bikrami: mē*  
year two thousand sixty Bikrami in  
in the year 2060 Bikrami

The terms ईसा पूर्व *i:sa: pu:rv* ‘before Christ’ are used to denote BC.

10. ईसा पूर्व छे सौ वर्ष  
*i:sa: pu:rv che sɔ varṣ*  
Christ before six hundred years  
six hundred years before Christ

#### **3.5.2.7. Seasons**

There are five major seasons: वसंत *vasant* ‘spring,’ ग्रीष्म *gri:śm* ‘summer,’ बरसात *barsa:t* ‘rainy season’, शरद *sharad* ‘autumn,’ and शीतकाल *śi:tka:l* ‘winter.’ These terms can be followed by तु *ritu/* मौसम *mɔsim* ‘season’ in both the direct and oblique cases with or without a postposition.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

11. वसंत (ऋतु)में फूल खिलते हैं।  
*vasant (ritu) mē phu:l khilte hε̤.*  
spring (season) in flowers bloom-ptc are  
Flowers bloom during spring.

#### 3.5.3. Frequentative

Frequentative expressions employ reduplication, an emphatic particle, or प्रति *prati*/ हर *har* ‘every’ before a time expression.

|           |                  |              |
|-----------|------------------|--------------|
| रोज़ रोज़ | <i>roz roz</i>   | every day    |
| प्रति दिन | <i>prati din</i> | every day    |
| हर घंटे   | <i>har gaṇṭe</i> | every hour   |
| रात भर    | <i>ra:t bhar</i> | whole night  |
| वहर पल    | <i>har pal</i>   | every moment |

12. वह रोज़ रोज़ / प्रति दिन पैसे माँगता है।  
*vah roz roz/ prati din pese mā:gta: hε̤.*  
he daily/every day money demand-ptc is  
He asks for money daily.

#### 3.6. Particles

Particles are generally attached to a particular word in a sentence to mark emphasis, or contrast. The main particles used in Hindi are: भी *bhi:*, ही *hi:*, तो *to*, तक *tak*, भर *bhar*, and मात्र *ma:tra*. The use of these particles with different word classes covers a wide range of shades of meaning and semantic interpretations. Here we will illustrate the use of these particles with detailed reference to the prominent particles भी *bhi:* and ही *hi:*.

##### 3.6.1. The Particle भर *bhi:* ‘also’

The particle भी *bhi:* is used with different types of nouns in the direct or oblique case. It immediately follows a noun in the direct case and the postposition in the oblique case.

1. अमर भी गया।  
*amar bhi: gaya:.*  
Amar part went  
Amar also went.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

2. लड़का भी आया।  
*larka: bhi: a:ya:.*  
boy part came  
The boy also came.

3. गर्मी भी है।  
*garmi: bhi: hε.*  
hot part is  
It is hot, too.

In the oblique case, भी *bhi:* is placed immediately after the postposition following the noun.

4. अमर को भी जाना है।  
*amar ko bhi: ja:na: hε.*  
Amar-dat part go-inf is  
Amar, too, will have to go.

5. मोहन ने भी रोटी खायी।  
*mohan ne bhi: roti: kha:yi:.*  
Mohan-erg part bread ate-fem  
Mohan, too, ate his meals.'

6. राधा से भी गलती हुई।  
*radha: se bhi: galti: hui:.*  
Radha-abl part mistake happened  
Radha, too, committed a mistake.

It is to be noted that भी *bhi:* cannot be used between a noun and a postposition.

7. घर में भी गर्मी है।  
*ghar mē bhi: garmi: hε.*  
house in part hot is  
It is hot in the house as well.

But not

- 7a. \*घर भी में गर्मी है।  
*\*ghar bhi: mē garmi: hε.*

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

It is also not used in vocative constructions.

8. \*सोहन भी आओ!  
\*sohan bhi: ao!  
Sohan part come-voc

9. \*हे लड़के भी  
\*he! larke bhi:  
oh! boy-voc part

The particle भी *bhi:* can be used with all types of direct and oblique personal, demonstrative, indefinite, relative, and reflexive pronouns.

10. मैं/ तू/ वह भी आया।  
*m̐/tu:/vah bhi: a:ya:.*  
I/you/he part came  
I/you/he came too.

11. हम/ तुम / वे भी आए।  
*ham/tum/ve bhi: a:ye.*  
we/you/they part came  
We/you/they came too.

12. मुझे / तुझे भी जाना है।  
*mujhe/tujhe bhi: ja:na: hε.*  
I/you/he-obl part go-inf aux  
I/you, too, have to go.

13. हमें/ आपको / उन्हें भी जाना है।  
*hamē/a:pko/unhē bhi: ja:na: hε.*  
we/you/they-obl part go-inf aux  
We/you/they, too, have to go.'

14. मुझको / तुझको / उसको भी वापस आना है।  
*mujhko/tujhko/usko bhi: va:pas a:na: hε.*  
I/you/he-obl part go-inf aux  
I/you/he, too, will have to return.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

15. वह मेरा /तुम्हारा/ आपका/ उसका/ उनका भी दोस्त है।  
*vah mera:/tumha:ra:/a:pka:/uska:/unka: bhi: dost he.*  
he my/your/his/their friend is part friend is  
He is my/your/his/their friend, too.
16. वह मुझसे /तुम्हारे से/ आपसे/उससे/ उनसे भी बड़ा है।  
*vah mujhse/tuma:hre se/a:pse/usse/unse bhi: bara: he.*  
he me/you/him/they also elder is  
He is older than me/you/him/her.
17. उसे/उसको/ उन्हें/उनको भी बुला लाइए।  
*use/usko/unhē/unko bhi: bula: la:yie.*  
he/they part call bring.  
Please call him/her/them also.
18. आप इसके बारे में भी कुछ कीजिए।  
*a:p iske ba:re mē bhi: kuch ki:jiye.*  
you this-gen about part something do-pl  
Please do something for it.
19. आप कितनी भी कोशिश कीजिए सफल नहीं होंगे।  
*a:p kitni: bhi: kośiš ki:jiye, saphal nahī: hōge.*  
you how much part try do success neg be  
No matter how much you try, you won't succeed.
20. आप मुझे कोई भी किताब दे दीजिए।  
*a:p mujhe koyi: bhi: kita:b de di:jiye.*  
you me-dat any part book give-pl  
Please give me any book.

In the oblique form of the indefinite pronouns, the particle भी *bhi:* is placed after the postpositions.

21. आप किसी को भी बुलाइए।  
*a:p kisi: ko bhi: bula:iye.*  
you any-dat part call-pl  
Please call anyone.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

Not

- 21a. \*आप किसी भी को बुलाइए।  
\*a:p kisi: bhi: ko bula:yie.

The use of the particle भी *bhi*: with the indefinite pronouns कोई *koyi*: and कुछ *kuch*, represent different meanings: कोई भी *koyi: bhi*: ‘anyone,’ कुछ भी *kuch bhi*: ‘anything.’

22. आप जो भी काम करना चाहते हैं, कर लीजिए।  
*a:p jo bhi: ka:m karna: cahte h̄e, kar li:jiye.*  
you any part work want is do take  
Whatever work you want to do, go ahead.
23. जब भी आप आते हैं, किताब साथ ले आते हैं।  
*jab bhi: a:p a:te h̄e, kita:b sa:th le a:te h̄e.*  
when part you come are book with bring past aux  
Whenever you come, bring your book with you.
24. वह आप जैसा भी नहीं है।  
*vah a:p jesa: bhi: nahī: h̄e.*  
he you like part neg is  
'He is not even like you.'
25. आप जितना भी पैसा दे सकते हैं, दे दीजिए।  
*a:p jitna: bhi: pesa: de sakte h̄e, de di:jiye.*  
you as much part money give can give-pl  
Whatever money you can give, please give it.

In the oblique case, the particle भी *bhi*: is placed after the postpositions.

26. जिसको/जिनको भी जाना है, जाओ/ चले जाएँ।  
*jisko/jinko bhi: ja:na he, ja:o/cale ja:yē.*  
who-dat part go-inf. is go go-subj  
Whosoever has to go may leave.

The use of the particle भी *bhi*: with relative pronouns represents different meanings: जो भी *jo bhi*: ‘whosoever’ or ‘whatsoever,’ जब भी *jab bhi*: ‘whenever,’ जितना भी *jitna: bhi*: ‘whatever.’

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

27. वह आप भी मेहनत करता है, दूसरों को भी करवाता है।  
*vah a:p bhi: mehnat karta: hε, du:srōko bhi: karva:ta: hε.*  
he self part hard work do is others-obl dat part do-caus is  
He works hard himself and makes others work hard too.

28. आप अपने आप/ स्वयं / स्वतः भी यह काम कर सकते हैं।  
*a:p apne a:p/svayam/ svatah bhi: yah ka:m kar sakte hε.*  
you self part this work do-abl are  
You can do this work yourself.

In the case of oblique forms, the particle भी *bhi:* is placed after the postposition, not between the pronoun and the postposition.

The particle भी *bhi:* is used with different types of adjectives. It always follows the adjectives.

29. वह लड़की सुंदर भी है और बुद्धिमान भी।  
*vah larki: sundar bhi: hε or buddhima:n bhi:.*  
that girl beautiful part is and intelligent part  
That girl is beautiful as well as intelligent.
30. कितने भी मज़दूर क्यों न आएँ, यह काम आज नहीं हो सकता।  
*kitne bhi: mazdu:r kyō na a:yε, yah ka:m a:j nahī: ho sakta:.*  
how much part laborers neg come-subj this work today neg  
possible  
No matter how many laborers come, this work cannot be finished today.

31. इस दुकान पर किलो भर भी चीनी नहीं है।  
*is duka:n par kilo bhar bhi: ci:ni: nahī: hε.*  
this shop at kilogram about part sugar neg is  
There is not even a kilogram of sugar in this shop.

32. कैसा भी काम हो, वह कर लेगा।  
*kesa: bhi: ka:m ho, vah kar lega:.*  
what type part work be he do explicator-fut  
No matter what type of work it is, he would be able to do it.

In (29), (30), and (31), the particle भी *bhi:* is merely an emphatic marker. In (32), however, the expression कैसा भी *kesa: bhi:* is a combined phrase meaning ‘any type of.’ If भी *bhi:* is deleted, the

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

sentence will be ungrammatical.

The particle भी *bhi:* is used with different forms of the verb हो *ho* ‘be’ and the auxiliary verb.

33. मोहन है (भी) कि नहीं?  
*mohan he (bhi:) ki nahī?:*

Mohan be (part) or neg  
Is Mohan there or not?

34. वह होगा भी कि नहीं?  
*vah hogā: bhi: ki nahī?:*  
he be-fut part or neg  
Will he be there or not?

35. आप आएँगे भी कि नहीं?  
*a:p a:yēge bhi: ki nahī?:*  
you come-fut part or neg  
Will you come or not?

In the above examples, the particle भी *bhi:* is used for emphasis only. Barring the progressive forms, the particle भी *bhi:* is used with different types of verbs.

36. उसका घर जाना भी ठीक नहीं था।  
*uska: ghar ja:na: bhi: thi:k nahī: tha:.*  
his home go-ing part right neg was  
His going home was not good.

37. वह करने वाला भी है और करवाने वाला भी।  
*vah karne va:la: bhi: he or karva:ne va:la: bhi:.*  
he do-ing-obl part is and do-caus part  
He can do it himself and get it done, too.

38. वह दुकान पर जाता भी है कि नहीं।  
*vah duka:n par ja:ta: bhi: he ki nahī:.*  
he shop at go part is or neg  
Does he go to the shop or not?

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

39. आप आए भी और चले भी गए।  
*a:p a:ye bhi: or cale bhi: gaye.*  
you came part and go-obl part went  
You came and have left, too.
40. आपको बहाँ गए भी बहुत दिन हो गए।  
*a:p ko vahā: gaye bhi: bahut din ho gaye.*  
you-dat there went-obl part many days passed  
It is a long time since you have gone over there.
41. वह खा भी रहा है और बातें भी कर रहा है।  
*vah kha: bhi: raha: hε or ba:tē bhi: kar raha: hε.*  
he eat part prog is and talk part do-prog is  
He is eating as well as talking.

It is to be noted that the particle भी *bhi:* cannot follow the progressive aspect marker रहा *raha:*.

42. वह खा भी रहा है।  
*vah kha: bhi: raha: hε.*  
he eat part prog is  
He has been eating.

Not

- 42a. \*वह खा रहा भी है।  
*\*vah kha: raha: bhi: hε.*

The particle भी *bhi:* can be used with conjunct verbs. It is used either between the main verb and the operator (auxiliary verb) or following the main verb and the operator as follows.

43. उसने देखा भी था।  
*usne dekha: bhi: tha:.*  
he-erg saw part was  
He had seen it.
44. उसे लाने भी दो।  
*use la:ne bhi: do.*  
he-abl being-inf-obl part let  
Let him bring (it).

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

45. अब जाने भी दो ।  
*ab ja:ne bhi: do.*  
now go-inf-obl part let  
Now let it go.
46. मैंने चिट्ठी लिख भी दी है ।  
*m̥ne ciṭṭhi: likh bhi: di: hε.*  
I-erg letter write part gave (explicator) is  
I have written a letter, too.

The particle भी *bhi:* is also used between the main verb and the negative marker.

47. वह आया भी नहीं ।  
*vah a:ya: bhi: nahī:.*  
he came part neg  
He did not even come.
48. रमेश भी आया नहीं ।  
*rameś bhi: a:ya: nahī:.*  
Ramesh part came neg  
Even Ramesh did not come.

Notice the change of meaning in the use of the particle भी *bhi:* different from the lexical meaning ‘also’ in the following examples.

49. वह उसके घर गया भी मगर उसे मिल भी न सका ।  
*vah uske ghar gaya: bhi:, magar use mil bhi: na saka:.*  
he his home went part but he-dat met part neg able  
He did go to his house, but could not meet him.
50. वह जाएगा भी या बैठा ही रहेगा ।  
*vah ja:yega: bhi: ya: bεṭha: hi: rahega:.*  
he go-fut part or sit part remain-fut  
Will he go or keep on sitting?
51. वह वहाँ गया भी नहीं ।  
*vah vahā: gaya: bhi: nahī:.*  
he came part neg  
He did not even go there.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

52. जाने भी दो।  
*ja:ne bhi: do.*  
go-inf-obl part let-imp  
Let it go.

53. रहने भी दो।  
*rahne bhi: do.*  
remain-inf-obl part let-imp  
Let it be.

The particle भी *bhi:* can be used with different types of adverbs.

54. यहाँ भी ठंड है।  
*yahā: bhi: ṭhād hε.*  
here part cold is  
It is cold over here, too.

55. वहाँ भी देखो।  
*vahā: bhi: dekho.*  
there part See-imp  
Please look over there, too.

56. दिन भर भी यहाँ काम न हुआ।  
*din bhar bhi: yahā: ka:m na hua:.*  
day part here work neg be-part  
The work could not be done for the whole day over here.

57. पाँच भी बज गए, वह आया नहीं।  
*pā:c bhi: baj gaye, vah a:ya: nahī:.*  
five part struck went he came neg  
It is now five o'clock and he has not come.

58. बार बार भी जाना ठीक नहीं है।  
*ba:r ba:r bhi: ja:na thi:k nahī: hε.*  
again part go-inf right neg is  
It is not good to go time and again.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

59. जैसे भी हो वह आ जाएगा ।  
*jese bhi: ho vah a: ja:yega:.*  
somehow part be he com-fut  
He will come somehow.
60. वह इसलिए गया शायद ऐसे मिले ।  
*vah isliye bhi: gaya: ša:yad pese milē.*  
he for this part went perhaps money get-subj  
He went in the hope of getting money.
61. मैं न भी जाऊँ तुम ज़रूर जाना ।  
*mẽ na bhi: ja:ū: tum zaru:r ja:na:.*  
I neg part go-subj you definitely go-inf-imp  
You should go, even if I don't.
62. कभी हाँ भी करोगे?  
*kabhi: hā: bhi: karoge?*  
sometime yes part do-fut  
Will you ever say yes?
63. यह भी नहीं करोगे तो क्या करोगे?  
*yeh bhi: nahī: karoge to kya: karoge?*  
this part neg do-fut part what do-fut  
If you are not able to do this much, what else will you do?

The use of the particle भी *bhi:* with different adverbs represents different meanings: अब भी *ab bhi:* ‘even now’ तब भी *tab bhi:* ‘even then,’ ‘even so,’ जब भी *jab bhi:* ‘whenever,’ जहाँ भी *jahā: bhi:* ‘where ever’ कहीं भी *kahī: bhi:* ‘anywhere,’ जहाँ कहीं भी *jahā: kahī: bhi:* ‘in any place whatsoever,’ फिर भी *phir bhi:* ‘yet’ ‘even so.’

The particle भी *bhi:* is used after certain case markers and /or postpositions as well.

64. उसके पास भी काम नहीं है ।  
*uske pa:s bhi: ka:m nahī: hε.*  
he-gen-abl near part work neg is  
He, too, doesn't have work.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

65. इसके बिना भी काम होगा ।  
*iske bina: bhi: ka:m hoga:.*  
this-gen-obl without part work be-fut  
The work can be done even without it.

66. उसके बदले भी कोई नहीं आया ।  
*uske badle bhi: koyi: nahī: a:ya:.*  
he-gen-obl place part someone neg came  
No one came in his place.

The particle भी *bhi:* used with और *or* ‘and’ indicates the meaning of ‘more.’

67. नीली साड़ी में वह और भी सुंदर लगती है ।  
*ni:li: sa:ri: mē vah or bhi: sundar lagti: hε.*  
blue saree in she more beautiful appear-ptc-is  
She appears more beautiful in a blue *sari*.

68. और भी अच्छा हुआ ।  
*or bhi: accha: hua:.*  
more good happened  
It is better still.

From the semantic point of view, भी *bhi:* represents different meanings depending on its use in different contexts. The meanings are represented in the following examples.

69. काम आसान भी है और दिलचस्प भी ।  
*ka:m a:sa:n bhi: hε or dilcasp bhi:.*  
work easy part is and interesting part  
The work is easy and interesting, too.

70. वह मेरे साथ बोलता भी नहीं ।  
*vah mere sa:th bolta: bhi: nahī:.*  
he I-poss-obl with speak-ptc part neg  
He doesn't even talk with me.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

71. जाने भी दो।  
*ja:ne bhi: do.*  
go-inf-obl part let-imp  
Let it go.
72. सेब छोटा है फिर भी मीठा है।  
*seb choṭa: he phir bhi: mi:ṭha: he.*  
apple small is even then part sweet is  
Despite of being small, the apple is sweet.
73. माँ को देखकर बच्चा और भी ज़ोर से रोया।  
*mā: ko dekh kar bacca: or bhi: zor se cila:ya:.*  
mother-dat see-cp child more part loudly cried  
On seeing the mother, the child cried more loudly.
74. उसे कुछ भी समझ में नहीं आया।  
*use kuch bhi: samajh mē nahī: a:ya:.*  
he-dat anything understand in neg came  
He was not able to understand anything.

In the above sentences, भी *bhi:* represents the general meaning of ‘too,’ ‘even’ and ‘let’ in the sentences (69), (70), and (71) respectively. In (72), फिर भी *phir bhi:* represents the meaning of ‘even then.’ In (73), और भी *or bhi:* represents the meaning of ‘more,’ and in (74), कुछ भी *kuch bhi:* represents the meaning of ‘anything.’

The particle भी *bhi:* can be used interchangeably with ही *hi:* in certain examples with no change in the meaning.

75. उसे मेरा सुझाव बिल्कुल भी / ही पसंद न आया।  
*use mera: sujha:v bilkul bhi:/hi: pasand na a:ya:.*  
he-dat my suggestion exact part like neg came  
He did not like my suggestion at all.

In such cases, the use of the particle भी *bhi:* or ही *hi:* is meant to emphasize only. Wherever भी *bhi:* adds meaning to the sentence, it cannot be interchanged with ही *hi:*.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

76. नीली साड़ी में वह और भी सुंदर लगती है।  
*ni:li: sa:ṛi: mē vah or bhi: sundar lagti: hε.*  
blue sari in she more part beautiful appear is  
She looks more beautiful in the blue *sari*.
- 76a. \*नीली साड़ी में वह और ही सुंदर लगती है।  
*\*ni:li: sa:ṛi: mē vah or hi: sundar lagti: hε.*

#### **3.6.2. The particle ही *hi:***

The particle ही *hi:* is generally used for emphasis and also in the sense of ‘exclusiveness’ or ‘alone.’ As indicated above, the particle ही *hi:* can be used as an emphatic marker with nouns. It can also be used with different types of pronouns in both the direct and the oblique cases: मैं ही *mē hi:* ‘I myself,’ तू ही *tu: hi:* ‘thou thyself,’ आप ही *a:p hi:* ‘you yourself,’ कोई ही *koi: hi:* ‘hardly anyone,’ कुछ ही *kuch hi:* ‘hardly anything,’ ‘hardly a few.’

1. मैं ही आँँगा।  
*mē hi: a:ū:ga:.*  
I past come-fut  
I will come myself.
2. आप ही बताइए।  
*a:p hi: bata:yiye.*  
you part say  
You say (it) yourself.
3. कोई ही यह काम कर सकता है।  
*koyi: hi: yah ka:m kar sakta: hε.*  
any part this work do able-ptc aux  
Hardly anyone can do this work.
4. कुछ ही लोग आए थे।  
*kuch hi: log a:ye the.*  
some part people came aux  
Hardly a few people had come.

Adding the emphatic particle ही *hi:* to certain words results in certain phonological changes.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

- (a) अब *ab* + ही *hi:* = अभी *abhi:* just now  
 तब *tab* + ही *hi:* = तभी *tabhi:* just then  
 सब *sab* + ही *hi:* = सभी *sabhi:* all, everybody

When ही *hi:* is preceded by pronouns in the oblique case, such as इस *is*, उस *us*, किस *kis*, and जिस *jis*, the ह *h* is elided.

- (b) इस *is* + ही *hi:* = इसी *isi:* this very  
 उस *us* + ही *hi:* = उसी *usi:* that same  
 किस *kis* + ही *hi:* = किसी *kisi:* someone  
 ही *jis* + ही *hi:* = जिसी *jisi:* the very one which

The ह *h* is dropped when preceded by मुझ *mujh*, तुझ *tujh*, यह *yah*, वह *vah*, or हम *ham*.

- (c) मुझ *mujh* + ही *hi:* = मुझी *mujhi:* me myself  
 तुझ *tujh* + ही *hi:* = तुझी *tujhi:* you yourself  
 यह *yah* + ही *hi:* = यही *yahi:* this itself  
 वह *vah* + ही *hi:* = वही *vahi:* he himself  
 हम *ham* + ही *hi:* = हमी *hami:* we ourselves

In certain cases, exclusiveness is dropped in the preceding word and the final vowel is nasalized.

- यहाँ *yahā:* + ही *hi:* = यहीं *yahī:* at this very place  
 जहाँ *jahā:* + ही *hi:* = हीं जहाँ *jahī:* wherever  
 वहाँ *vahā:* + ही *hi:* = वहीं *vahī:* at that very place  
 कहाँ *kahā:* + ही *hi:* = कहीं *kahī:* somewhere

The emphatic particle ही *hi:* is frequently used with different types of pronouns. Its use with reflexive pronouns is quite interesting. Hindi has only four reflexive pronouns: आप *a:p*, its oblique forms अपना *apna:* and अपने *apne*, and a compound of these two अपने आप *apne-a:p* ‘by oneself’; आपस *a:pas* meaning ‘each other,’ or ‘one another.’ When आप *a:p* is followed by ही *hi:*, it has an adjectival intensifying force and qualifies a noun or a pronoun which, as a rule, is the logical subject of the sentences.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

5. मोहन आप ही वहाँ गया ।  
*mohan a:p hi: vahā: gaya:.*  
Mohan self part there went  
Mohan went there on his own.
6. मुझे आप ही जाना पड़ेगा ।  
*mujhe a:p hi: ja:na: parega:.*  
me-dat self part go-inf fall-fut  
I shall have to go myself.
7. वे आप ही आएँगे ।  
*ve a:p hi: a:yēge.*  
they self part come-fut  
They themselves will come.
8. श्याम ने आप ही यह चिट्ठी लिखी है ।  
*śya:m ne a:p hi: yah ciṭṭhi: likhi: hε.*  
Shyam-erg self part this letter wrote is  
Shyam has himself written this letter.
- आप ही *a:p hi:* sometimes qualifies nouns or pronouns which are not the logical subjects of the sentences.
9. उसमें आप ही साहस नहीं हैं ।  
*usmē a:p hi: sa:has nahī: hε.*  
he in self part courage neg is  
He himself has no courage.
10. उसका आप ही दिवाला निकल जाएगा ।  
*uska: a:p hi: diva:la: nikal ja:yega:.*  
he -gen self part bankrupt come go-fut  
He will himself become bankrupt.
- आप ही *a:p hi:* can be used as an adverb to mean ‘of one’s own accord.’
11. वह आप ही अस्पताल गया ।  
*vah a:p hi: aspata:l gaya:.*  
he self part hospital went  
He went to the hospital on his own.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

It is interesting to note the different shades of the meanings of the particle ही *hi:* in the following sentences.

12. अमर के आते ही मोहन चला गया ।  
*amar ke a:te hi: mohan cala: gaya:.*  
Amar-gen-come-ptc part mohan went  
As soon as Amar came, Mohan left.
- 13a. राधा आ रही थी ।  
*ra:dha: a: rahi: thi:.*  
Radha come-prog was-f  
Radha was coming.
- 13b. राधा आ ही रही थी ।  
*ra:dha: a: hi: rahi: thi:.*  
Radha was come-part-prog was-f  
Radha was just coming.
- 14a. मोहन जाएगा ।  
*mohan ja:yega:.*  
Mohan go-fut  
Mohan will go.
- 14b. मोहन जाएगा ही ।  
*mohan ja:yega: hi:.*  
Mohan go-fut part  
Mohan will certainly go.
- 15a. मैं गया नहीं ।  
*m̐ ē gaya: nahī:.*  
I went part neg  
I did not go.
- 15b. मैं गया ही नहीं ।  
*m̐ ē gaya: hi: nahī:.*  
I went part neg  
I did not go at all.
- 16a. वह आज गया होगा ।  
*vah a:j gaya: hogā:.*  
he today went be-presumptive  
He might have gone today.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

- 16b. वह आज ही गया होगा ।  
*vah a:j hi: gaya: hoga:.*  
he today part went be-presumptive  
He might have gone just today.
- 17a. यह अच्छा हुआ ।  
*yeh accha: hua:.*  
this good happened  
It is good.
- 17b. यह अच्छा ही हुआ ।  
*yeh accha: hi: hua:.*  
this good part happened  
It is good (emphatic).
- 18a. अच्छा हूँ ।  
*accha: hū:.*  
good am  
I am fine.
- 18b. अच्छा ही हूँ ।  
*accha: hi: hū:.*  
good part am  
I am fine (emphatic).
- 19a. कुछ और मज़ा आया ।  
*kuch or maza: a:ya:.*  
some more enjoyment came  
It was an extra enjoyment.
- 19b. कुछ ही मज़ा आया ।  
*kuch or hi: maza: a:ya:.*  
some more part enjoyment came  
It was quite a different kind of enjoyment.
20. बच्चे ने तस्वीर क्या देखी, तस्वीर ही फाड़ डाली ।  
*bacce ne tasvi:r kya: dekhi:, tasvi:r (hi:) pha:r da:li:*  
child-erg picture what saw picture (emp) tear explicator-past  
Instead of seeing it, the child has torn off the picture.

In sentence (12), the particle ही *hi:* becomes part of the verb adding the meaning ‘as soon as.’ In (13b), the particle ही *hi:* adds the meaning of ‘just.’ In (14b), the particle ही *hi:* adds the meaning ‘certainly.’ In (15b), it adds the meaning ‘at all.’ In (16b) and (17b), it makes the adjectives emphatic. By adding the particle ही *hi:* to कुछ और *kuch or* in sentence (19b), it gives the meaning ‘different kind of.’ Thus, besides its use for emphasis, the particle ही *hi:* adds different shades of meaning depending on its use.

### 3.6.3. The Particle तो *to*

The particle तो *to* is mostly used as an emphatic marker and also denotes contrast.

1. वह आया तो है।  
*vah a:ya: to hε.*  
he came part is  
He has come indeed.
2. उसे अंदर आने तो दो।  
*use andar a:ne to do.*  
he-dat inside come-inf+obl part let  
Let him come inside.
3. मोमबती तो मिली, दियासलाई नहीं।  
*mombati: to mili:, diya:sala:yi: nahī:.*  
candle part found match-box neg  
The candle was found, (but) not the matchbox.
4. वह उसके पास तो गया, पर बोला नहीं।  
*vah uske pa:s to gaya:, par bola: nahī:.*  
he he-gen+obl near part went but said neg  
He did go near him, but did not speak.

The particle *to* is also added to the negative marker नहीं *nahī:.* The phrase नहीं तो *nahī: to* has several uses including as an emphatic negative reply denoting ‘surprise’ or ‘disapproval.’

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

5. आप आगरा गए थे?  
*a:p a:gra: gaye the?*  
you Agra went were  
Did you go to Agra?

- 5a. नहीं तो।  
*nahī: to.*  
neg part  
Not really/Not at all.

As a coordinate conjunction, नहीं तो *nahī: to* means ‘otherwise.’

6. तेज़ चलो, नहीं तो गाड़ी छूट जाएगी।  
*tez calo, nahī: to ga:ri: chu:t ja:yegi:.*  
Fast walk neg part train miss-fut  
Walk fast, otherwise you will miss the train.

Another use in combination with the particle भी *bhi:* indicates ‘yet, even so.’

7. अगर वह कहेगा भी, तो भी मैं उसके साथ नहीं जाऊँगा।  
*agar vah kahega: bhi:, to bhi: mē uske sa:th nahī: ja:ū:ga:.*  
If he say-fut part part भी he-gen-obl with neg go-fut  
Even if he says so, I will not go with him.

In sentence (7), तो भी *to bhi:* can be replaced by फिर भी *phir bhi:* ‘even so, yet.’ In its adverbial use, तो *to* is a correlative of जब *jab* ‘when’ or of यदि *yadi* ‘if’ and it signifies ‘then.’

8. जब उसे मालूम हुआ, तो वह रोने लगा।  
*jab use ma:lu:m hua, to vah rone laga:.*  
when he-dat know be-past part he cry-inf-obl starts  
When he came to know, (then) he began to cry.

- 8a. यदि तुम घर गए तो पछताओगे।  
*yadi tum ghar gaye to pachta:oge.*  
if you home went part repent-fut  
If you go to your home, (then) you will repent.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

#### 3.6.4. The Particle तक *tak* ‘up to’

The particle तक *tak* has two primary meanings: as the limited particle ‘even’ and as the postposition ‘up to.’

1. उसने तार तक नहीं भेजा।  
*usne ta:r tak nahī: bheja:.*  
he-erg wire part neg sent  
He did not even send a telegram.
2. उसने मेरी वात तक नहीं सुनी।  
*usne meri: ba:t tak nahī: suni:.*  
he-erg my talk part neg listened  
He did not even listen to what I said.

As a postposition, तक *tak* is used in the sense of ‘up to’ or ‘until.’

3. वह कल तक ज़रूर आएगा।  
*vah kal tak zaru:r a:yega:.*  
he tomorrow part definitely come-fut  
He will come by tomorrow definitely.
4. वह कल तक पैसा लौटाएगा।  
*vah kal tak pesa: l̪̪ta:yega:.*  
he tomorrow part money return-fut  
He will return the money by tomorrow.
5. वहाँ पहुँचने तक दो दिन लगेगे।  
*vahā: pahūcne tak do din lagēge.*  
there reach-inf-obl part two days take-fut  
It will take two days to reach there.
6. जब तक आप आज्ञा नहीं देंगे मैं नहीं जाऊँगा।  
*jab tak a:p a:gya: nahī: dēge, mē nahī: ja:ū:ga:.*  
when part you permission neg give-fut I neg go-fut  
Until you permit me, I will not go.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

#### **3.6.5. The Particle भर *bhar***

The particle भर *bhar* denotes the meaning of ‘measuring a ...,’ ‘weighing a...,’ ‘a...ful,’ etc. In this meaning, it acts like a suffix, forming the adjectives from nouns. Unlike the English suffix *-full*, it is a separate word which can be attached to nouns, adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech.

1. मीटर भर कपड़ा दे दीजिए।  
*mi:t̪ar bhar kapra: de di:jiye.*  
meter part cloth give-fut  
Please give (a piece of ) cloth measuring a meter.
  
2. वह किलो भर दूध एक बार पी सकता है।  
*vah kilo bhar du:dh ek ba:r pi: sakta: he.*  
he kilogram part milk one time drink able-ptc aux  
He can drink a kilogram of milk at a time.
  
3. घर में मुर्दगी भर चावल नहीं है।  
*ghar mē muṛḍhi: bhar ca:val nahi: he.*  
home in handful part rice neg is  
There is not even a handful of rice in the house.
  
- As a particle, भर *bhar* denotes the meanings ‘the entire...,’ ‘the whole...,’ ‘only,’ and ‘just.’
  
4. देश भर में चुनाव हो रहे हैं।  
*des̪ bhar mē cuna:v ho rahe h̪e.*  
country part in election be prog are  
The elections are being held throughout the entire country.
  
5. वह दिन भर सोया रहा।  
*vah din bhar soya: raha:.*  
he day part slept remained  
He slept for the whole day.
  
6. उसने पल भर भी आराम नहीं किया।  
*usne pal bhar bhi: a:ra:m nahē kiyā:.*  
he-erg moment part rest neg did  
He did not rest even for a moment.

### 3. MORPHOLOGY

---

7. घर भर में बच्चे शोर करते रहे।  
*ghar bhar mē bacce šor karte rahe.*  
 home part in children noise do-pr remained  
 The children made noise throughout the entire house.'
8. आप देखते भर हो, खरीदते नहीं।  
*a:p dekhte bhar ho, khari:dte nahī:.*  
 you see-pr part be purchase-pr neg  
 You only look but do not purchase.

Notice that in sentence (8), भर *bhar* can be replaced by the particle ही *hi:*.

#### 3.6.6. The Particle मात्र *ma:tr*

The particle मात्र *ma:tr* is borrowed from Sanskrit and means ‘only’ or ‘whole.’ In Sanskrit, it is used as a suffix and is attached to nouns.

|  |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| विध्या <i>vidhya:</i> + मात्र <i>ma:tr</i> = विध्यामात्र <i>vidhya:ma:tr</i> | only learning   |
| पल <i>pal</i> + मात्र <i>ma:tr</i> = पलमात्र <i>palma:tr</i>                 | only a moment   |
| मानव <i>ma:nav</i> + मात्र <i>ma:tr</i> = मानवमात्र <i>ma:navma:tr</i>       | all of humanity |

In Hindi, the particle मात्र *ma:tr* is an equivalent of केवल *keval* or ही *hi:* ‘only,’ ‘alone.’ It is also used as a separate word.

1. आप किताब मात्र दीजिए।  
*a:p kita:b ma:tr di:jiye.*  
 You book part give-fut  
 Please give only the book.
- 1a. आप केवल किताब दीजिए।  
*a:p keval kita:b di:jiye.*  
 Please give only the book.
- 1b. आप किताब ही दीजिए।  
*a:p kita:b hi: di:jiye.*  
 Please give just the book.
2. मुझे सौ रुपए मात्र दीजिए।  
*mujhe so rupaye ma:tr di:jiye.*  
 me hundred rupees part give-fut  
 Please give me a hundred rupees only.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

2a. मुझे मात्र सौ रूपए दीजिए।  
*mujhe ma:tr sɔ rupaye di:jiye.*

2b. मुझे केवल सौ रूपए दीजिए।  
*mujhe keval sɔ rupaye di:jiye.*

The particle भर *ma:tr* can also be used in the initial position in sentences. It can be replaced by भर *keval* as in (3a).

3. मात्र उसने यह काम नहीं किया।  
*ma:tra usne yah ka:m nahī: kiya:.*  
part he-erg this work neg did  
He was the only one not to do this work.

3a. केवल उसने यह काम नहीं किया।  
*keval usne yah ka:m nahī: kiya:..*

To sum up, the use of various particles in Hindi is important from a semantic point of view. Besides their use as emphatic markers, they cover a wide range of meanings and further shades of meanings when used in combination with various word classes. They are frequently used in different dialects and styles of speech in Hindi.

#### **3.7. Connectives**

Connectives are words that join two elements.

| और or         | and       | या ya:           | or                     |
|---------------|-----------|------------------|------------------------|
| लेकिन lekin   | but       | कि ki            | that                   |
| मगर magar     | but       | बल्कि balki      | rather                 |
| वर्ना varna:  | otherwise | इस लिए isi: liye | that is why, therefore |
| क्योंकि kyōki | because   | ताकि ta:ki       | so that                |
| अगर agar      | 'if'      | हालांकि ha:lā:ki | 'though'               |

Structurally, connectives are divided into three classes: (i) monomorphemic, (ii) poly-morphemic, and (iii) phrasal.

#### 3.7.1. Mono-morphemic

Mono-morphemic is composed of only one morpheme.

1. मैं घर गया और अमर बाजार गया।  
*m̥e ghar gaya: or amar ba:za:r gaya:.*  
I house went and Amar market went  
I went home and Amar went to the market.
2. तुम इधर आओगे या मैं उधर आऊँगा।  
*tum idhar a:oge ya: m̥e udhar a:ū:ga:.*  
you here come-fut or I there come-fut  
You will come here or I will come there.

#### 3.7.2. Poly-morphemic

Poly-morphemics are composed of two or more morphemes.

3. मैं आज कालेज नहीं गया, क्योंकि मेरी तबीयत ठीक नहीं है।  
*m̥e a:j ka:lej nahī: gaya: kyūki meri: tabiyat thi:k nahī:hε.*  
I today college neg went because my health right neg be  
Today I didn't go to college because I am not well.
4. उसने खाना नहीं खाया, इसलिए मैंने भी नहीं खाया।  
*usne kha:na: nahī: kha:ya:, is liye m̥ene bhi: nahī: kha:ya:.*  
He food neg ate for that I part neg eat  
He didn't eat the food, therefore I also didn't eat.

#### 3.7.3. Phrasal

Phrasals consist of two elements interrupted by intervening words, such as अगर *agar* ... तो *to* 'if ... then.'

5. अगर तुम कहो तो मैं आऊँगा।  
*agar tum kaho to m̥e a:ūga:.*  
If you say-fut then I come-fut  
If you say so then I will come.

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

#### **3.8. Interjections**

Interjections express some emotions such as pain, pleasure, anger, surprise, and disgust. An interjection is in the vocative case and has no grammatical relation with any other word in the sentence. In Hindi, interjections are used as independent words or they can be prefixed to nouns.

|            |                     |        |
|------------|---------------------|--------|
| हे भगवान्! | <i>he bhagva:n!</i> | O God! |
| ओ लड़के!   | <i>o larke!</i>     | O boy! |

Surprise is expressed by: ओह *oh!* और *are!* ओहो *oho!* क्या *kya:!*

1. ओह / और / ओहों / क्या तुम आ गए!  
*oh/are/oho/kya: tum a: gaye!*  
o/what you came  
O you came!

Applause is expressed by: वाह *va:h!* घूब *khu:b!* शाबाश *ša:ba:š!*

2. वाह / घूब / शाबाश बेटे तुमने अच्छा काम किया!  
*va:h/khu:b/ša:ba:š bete tumne accha: ka:m kiya:!*  
oh son-voc you-erg good work did  
Oh (my) son, you have done good work!

Sorrow or grief is expressed by: हाय *ha:y!* हा *ha:!* अहा *a:h!* उफ *uph!*  
अफसोस *afsos!*

3. हाय / हा / आह / उफ / अफसोस यह क्या हुआ!  
*ha:y/ha:/a:h/uph/afsos yah kya: hua:!*  
alas this what happened  
Alas what happened!

Joy is expressed by: आहा *a:ha:!* अहा *aha:!* वाह वाह *va:h - va:h!*

4. आहा / अहा / वाह - वाह क्या सुंदर जगह है!  
*a:ha:/aha:/va:h-va:h kya: sundar jaga:h he!*  
oh what beautiful place is  
Oh what a beautiful place!

### **3. MORPHOLOGY**

---

Disgust or disapproval is expressed by: छि chi: (छि chi:)! थू thu:!  
धिक्कार dhikka:r!

5. छि (छि)/ थू /धिक्कार कितना गंदा है!  
*chi: (chi:)/thu:/dikka:r kitna: ganda: he!*  
shame, how dirty is  
Shame, how dirty it is!

Distress is expressed by: हाय रे ha:y re!

6. हाय रे मैं लुट गया!  
*ha:y re mē luṭ gaya:*  
oh I rob went(explicator)  
Oh I am robbed (of everything)!

Certain nouns, pronouns, adjectives and verbs are used as interjections.

7. राम राम ra:m ra:m! (expresses sympathy or disapproval)
8. वाप रे वाप ba:p re ba:p! (expresses surprise or distress)
9. अच्छा accha:! (expresses surprise)
10. क्या kya:! (expresses surprise)
11. जा मर ja: mar! (expresses rebuke)

Some interjections can be used as nouns.

12. क्यों हाय हाय कर रहे हो?  
*kyō ha:y ha:y kar rāhe ho?*  
why expression of ditress do-prp be  
Why are you raising the hue and cry?



## 4. Syntax

### 4.1. Structure of Phrases

#### 4.1.1. Noun Phrase

A noun phrase is defined as a nominal head preceded by one or more modifiers. It also serves as a nucleus of a postpositional phrase. It may function as a subject or object (indirect or direct) predicative complement or as a direct object of a postposition. A noun or a pronoun can be the minimum constituent of a noun phrase. A nominal may be modified by a variety of modifiers such as adjectives, quantifiers, numerals, emphatic markers, limiters and comparative, equative, and superlative markers.

Attributive adjectives immediately precede a nominal head as a modifier, e.g., नया कोट *naya: koṭ* ‘new coat’ and सुंदर लड़की *sundar lar̥ki:* ‘beautiful girl.’ Possessive adjectives precede the head noun as modifiers in noun phrases. They may or may not also be preceded by an appropriate form of the genitive postposition का *ka:/* के *ke/* की *ki:* agreeing in gender and number with the object noun.

1. अजीत का बड़ा बेटा आया।  
*aji:t ka: bṛā: betā: a:ya:.*  
 Ajit-gen-ms elder son came  
 Ajit's elder son came.
2. अजीत के दो मित्र आए।  
*aji:t ke do mitr a:ye*  
 Ajit-gen-mpl two friends came  
 Ajit's two friends came.
3. मोहन की छोटी बेटी सुंदर है।  
*mohan ki: choṭi: beti: sundar he..*  
 Mohan-gen-f younger daughter beautiful is  
 Mohan's younger daughter is beautiful.
4. मोहन की छोटी बेटियाँ जा रही हैं।  
*mohan ki: choṭi: betiyā: ja rahi: hē.*  
 Mohan-gen-fpl small daughters go-prog are  
 Mohan's younger daughters are going.

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

There is no distinct category of articles used in Hindi. The concept of definiteness and indefiniteness is expressed indirectly by means of pronouns, and the numeral एक *ek* ‘one.’

5. कोई एक लड़का  
*koi:/ek larka:*  
some /a/one boy
6. यह/वह बच्चा  
*yah/vah bacca:*  
this/that child

The numeral एक *ek* and the indefinite pronoun कोई *koi:* ‘some(one)’ are used in place of an indefinite article. A definite determiner involves either a demonstrative/personal pronoun or a zero marking as given in (6). It is only the context which disambiguates the potential ambiguity present in the above two sentences.

Besides determiners, a noun may be preceded by quantifiers and numerals in the form of (i) approximate/ordinal (e.g., लगभग *lagbhag* ‘about,’ करीब *kari:b* ‘almost,’ केवल *keval* ‘only,’ पहला *pahla:* ‘first’, दूसरा *du:sra:* ‘second’, तीसरा *ti:sra:* ‘third’, चौथा *cautha:* ‘fourth’), (ii) cardinal/ multiplicative/fraction (e.g., एक *ek* ‘one,’ दो *do* ‘two,’ दुगना *dugna:* ‘twice,’ तिगना *tigna:* ‘three-fold,’ आधा *a:dha:* ‘half’, तीसरा भाग *ti:sra: bha:g/* हिसा *hisa:* ‘one-third’, चौथा भाग *cetha:* *bha:g/hisa:* ‘one-fourth,’), and (iii) collective/measure (e.g., जोड़ी *jori:* ‘pair’, दर्जन *darjan* ‘dozen,’ किलो *kilo* ‘kilogram,’ आधा किलो *a:dha: kilo* ‘half a kilogram’).

Definite + Cardinal + Noun

7. ये चार कमीज़ें अच्छी हैं।  
*ye ca:r kami:zē acchi: hε*  
these four shirts good are  
These four shirts are good.

Definite + Ordinal + Noun

8. पहला बच्चा हमेशा लजीला होता है।  
*pahla: bacca: hameša: lajji:la: hota: hε.*

first child always shy be-ptc  
The first child is always shy.

Definite + Ordinal + Cardinal + Noun

9. ये पहले दो लेख छपने योग्य हैं।  
*ye pahle do lekh chapne yogya h̄e.*  
 these first two essays print-inf-obl suitable are  
 These first two essays are worth publishing.

Definite + Cardinal + Collective

10. ये तीन दर्जन अंडे ताजे हैं।  
*ye ti:n darjan ̄ade ta:ze h̄e.*  
 these three dozen eggs fresh are  
 These three dozen eggs are fresh.

Definite + Cardinal + Measure

11. वे पाँच बोरियाँ चावल पिछले साल की हैं।  
*ve pā:c boriyā: ca:val piche sa:l ki: h̄e.*  
 those five sacks rice last year gen-fp are  
 Those five sacks of rice are last year's.

Definite + Ordinal + Fractional + Measure

12. यह दूसरा वाला आधा किलो चावल ठीक नहीं है।  
*yah du:sra:(va:la:) a:dha: kilo ca:val thi:k nahī: h̄e.*  
 this second half kilogram rice good not is  
 This second half kilogram of rice is not good.

Notice that quantifiers such as सारे *sa:re/* तमाम *tama:m* ‘all’ follow a head noun when the head noun is a pronoun.

13. ये सभी किताबें मैंने पढ़ी हैं।  
*ye sabhi: kita:bē mēne parhi: h̄e.*  
 these all books I-erg read-past-fp are  
 I have read all these books.

#### 4. SYNTAX

---

14. हम सारे निशात बाग सैर करने जाएँगे ।  
*ham sa:re niša:t ba:g ser karne ja:yēge.*  
we all Nishat Bagh walk do-inf-abl go-fut  
All of us will go for a walk to Nishat Bagh.

Limiters such as सिर्फ *sirf/* केवल *keval/* ‘only’ precede the head noun, whereas emphatic particles -ही *-hi:* ‘only’ and भी *bhi:* ‘also’ follow the head noun.

15. केवल ये पहले दो बच्चे इम्तिहान में बैठे ।  
*keval ye pahle do bacce imtiha:n mē bēthe.*  
only these first two children exam in sat  
Only these two children appeared in the examination.
16. केवल बच्चा ही बाज़ार आया ।  
*keval bacca: hi: ba:za:r a:ya:.*  
only child-limiter market came  
Only the child came to the market.
17. माँ भी आई और बच्चा भी ।  
*mā: bhi: a:yi: or bacca: bhi:.*  
mother also came and child too  
The mother came and so did the child.

Comparative, superlative and equative structures are formed by adding certain morphological forms after the head noun. The comparatives are formed by adding *se* after adding the ablative case markers to the genitive forms of the head noun.

18. नीरज सुनील से बुद्धिमान है ।  
*neeraj suni:l se buddhima:n hε.*  
Neeraj Sunil than intelligent is  
Neeraj is more intelligent than Sunil.
19. वह मेरे से मोटा है ।  
*vah mere se moṭa: hε.*  
he is me-gen-abl than fat is  
He is fatter than me.

Superlatives are formed by adding सबसे *sab se* before the head noun.

20. सबसे लंबा लड़का कौन है?  
*sabse lamba: larka: kən hε?*  
 superlative tall boy who is  
 Who is the tallest boy?
21. अजीत क्लास में सबसे छोटा है।  
*aji:t kala:s mē sab se choṭa: hε.*  
 Ajit class in superlative young is  
 Ajit is the youngest of all in the class.

Equative structures are formed by adding a form of जैसा *jesa:/* जैसे *jeſe/* जैसी *jesi:* ‘like’ that agrees with the head noun in gender and number.

22. अजीत अमर जैसा चालाक है।  
*aji:t amar jesa: ca:la:k hε.*  
 Ajit Amar like clever is  
 Ajit is as clever as Amar.
23. हम उन जैसे चालाक नहीं हैं।  
*ham un jeſe ca:la:k nahī: hε.*  
 we they like clever not are  
 We are not as clever as they are.
24. शीला उमा जैसी गोरी नहीं है।  
*ši:la: uma: jeſi: gori: nahī: hε.*  
 Shiela Uma like fair complexioned neg is  
 Shiela is not as fair-complexioned as Uma.
25. ये सेब उन सेबों जैसे मीठे हैं।  
*ye seb un sebō jeſe mi:the hε.*  
 these apples those apples like delicious are  
 These apples are as delicious as those ones are.

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

The terms एक जैसे *ek jesē*/ जैसी *jesī*: ‘as good as/alike’ are also used in equative expressions.

26. ये दो भाई एक जैसे हैं।  
*ye do bha:i: ek jesē h̥e*.  
these two brothers alike are  
These two brothers are alike.

27. ये बहनें एक जैसी हैं।  
*ye bahnē ek jesī: h̥e*.  
these sisters alike are  
These sisters are alike.

There are certain co-occurrence restrictions. Indefinite determiners do not co-occur with ordinals. Similarly, the multiplicatives do not co-occur with collective or measure quantifiers. There are other usage constraints on modifiers. For example, the combination of indefinite determiners and cardinal quantifiers is possible; the combination of an indefinite determiner and a demonstrative pronoun is not allowed.

28. कोई बच्चा यह काम नहीं कर सकता।  
*koi: bacca: yah ka:m nahī: kar sakta:*.  
some/any(one) child this work neg do can-ptc  
No child can do this work.

- 28a. \*कोई वह बच्चा यह काम नहीं कर सकता।  
*\*koi: vah bacca: yah ka:m nahī: kar sakta:*.

Similarly, the combination of multiplicative and collective quantifiers do not yield well-formed sentences.

29. \*दुगना जोड़ा दस्ताना  
*\*dugna: jorī: dasta:na:*  
twice pair gloves

As mentioned above, emphatic particles and limiters follow head nouns. All other constituents precede the head noun they modify. There is a flexibility in the word order of the preceding modifiers as illustrated below.

Demonstrative - possessive - quantifier - adjective - head noun

30. ये मेरे सारे अच्छे मित्र  
*ye mere sa:re acche mitr*  
 these my all good friends  
 all these good friends of mine

Possessive - demonstrative - quantifier - adverbial - adjective - noun

- 30a. मेरे ये सारे बहुत अच्छे मित्र  
*mere ye sa:re bahut acche mitr*  
 my these all very good friends  
 all these very good friends of mine

Demonstrative - quantifier - possessive - adverbial -adjective - noun

- 30b. ये सारे मेरे बहुत अच्छे मित्र  
*ye sa:re mere bahut acche mitr*  
 these all my very good friends

Possessive - quantifier - demonstrative - adverbial -adjective - noun

- 30c. मेरे सारे ये बहुत अच्छे मित्र  
*mere sa:re ye bahut acche mitr*  
 my all these very good friends

Quantifier - demonstrative - possessive - adverbial -adjective - noun

- 30d. सारे ये मेरे बहुत अच्छे मित्र  
*sa:re ye mere bahut acche mitr*

The word order constraint for adverbs and adjective is quite strict. The word order of the constituents of demonstrative, possessive and quantifier appear quite flexible.

#### 4.1.2. Postpositional Phrases

A postpositional phrase is defined as a noun phrase followed by an oblique case marker and a postposition. Time adverbials take case markers as well as postpositions.

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

1. वह सवेरे घर से आया।  
*vah savere ghar se a:ya:.*  
he morning-obl home from came  
He came in the morning from home.
- 1a. \*वह सवेरा आया (घर से)  
\**vah savera: a:ya: (ghar se).*
2. अजीत शाम को काम करता है।  
*aji:t ūa:m ko ka:m karta: hε.*  
Ajit is evening-obl work do-ptc is  
Ajit works in the evening.
- 2a. \*अजीत शाम काम करता है।  
\**aji:t ūa:m ka:m karta: hε.*
3. उसने दिन को कुछ नहीं खाया।  
*usne din ko kuch nahī: kha:ya:.*  
he-erg day-obl for nothing neg ate  
He didn't eat anything during the day.
4. उसने दिन भर कुछ नहीं खाया।  
*usne din bhar kuch nahī: kha:ya:.*  
he-erg day for nothing neg ate  
He didn't eat anything for the whole day.
5. वह सवेरे से शाम तक काम करता है।  
*vah savere se ūa:m tak ka:m karta: hε.*  
he morning-obl from evening up to work do-ptc is  
He works from morning till evening.

The use of the direct forms of the time adverbials सवेरा *savera:* and शाम *śa:m* in sentences (1a) and (2a) make them ungrammatical.

A postposition may be added to simple or compound noun phrases that consist of more than one element.

6. हमारे दफ्तर से  
*hama:re daftar se*  
our-obl office from  
from our office

7. मकान के दरवाजे से  
*maka:n ke darva:ze se*  
 house of door-obl from  
 from the door of the house

Notice that the presence of a postposition changes all the elements of the compound noun phrase from direct to oblique by adding the oblique case markers.

There are a limited number of compound postpositions used in Hindi such as आगे *a:ge/* पीछे की ओर *pi:che ki:/ or* ‘in front/back of’, and दाईं *da:i:/* वाई ओर *ba:i:/ or* ‘towards right/left’. All these are directional. The first element indicates the direction, and is followed by the postpositional form की ओर *ki:/ or* ‘toward’. They are always used after the oblique noun. Notice that a free postposition without an argument functions as an adverb.

It is possible to modify postpositions by using a limiter तक *tak* ‘up to/till,’ or a particle ही *hi:* ‘only.’

8. वह शाम तक पहुँचेगा।  
*vah ūa:m tak pahūcega:.*  
 he evening up to reach-m  
 He will reach by evening.
9. तुम किताब मेज पर ही रखो।  
*tum kita:b mez par hi: rakho.*  
 you book table on emp keep  
 You just keep the book on the table.

#### 4.1.3. Adjectival Phrases

Adjective phrases are of two types: simple and complex. Simple adjectives may also be divided into basic and derived adjectives. The derived adjectives are derived from other word classes such as nouns. The examples of basic adjectives are: अच्छा *accha:* ‘good,’ लंबा *lamba:* ‘long,’ साफ *sa:f* ‘clean,’ etc. Derived adjectives are derived from nouns:

#### 4. SYNTAX

---

|                               |                         |  |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| मेहनत <i>mehnat</i> hard work | + ई <i>i:</i>           | = मेहनती <i>mehnati:</i> hard worker       |
| हिम्मत <i>himmat</i> courage  | + ई <i>i:</i>           | = हिम्मती <i>himmati:</i> courageous       |
| दाढ़ी <i>da:rhi:</i> beard    | + वाला<br><i>va:la:</i> | = दाढ़ी वाला <i>da:rhi: va:la:</i> bearded |

Adjectives may also be derived from adverbs:

|                            |                 |                                      |
|----------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|
| पीछे <i>pi:che</i> behind  | + ला <i>la:</i> | = पिछला <i>pichla:</i> last          |
| नज़दीक <i>nazdi:k</i> near | + ई <i>i</i>    | = नज़दीकी <i>nazdi:ki:</i> close one |

The use of the forms of वाला *va:la:* and genitive markers का *ka:/* के *ke/* की *ki:* are frequently employed in the derivation of adjectives. Their forms agree with the following noun in number and gender as follows:

| Masculine          |                   | Feminine           |                    |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Sg                 | Pl                | Sg                 | Pl                 |
| वाला <i>va:la:</i> | वाले <i>va:le</i> | वाली <i>va:li:</i> | वाली <i>va:li:</i> |
| -का <i>ka:</i>     | -के <i>ke</i>     | -की <i>ki:</i>     | -की <i>ki:</i>     |

1. दिल्ली वाला दुकानदार  
*dilli: va:la: duka:nda:r*  
Delhi of shopkeeper  
the shopkeeper from Delhi
2. दूर का रिश्तेदार  
*du:r ka: rišteda:r*  
distance of relative  
a distant relative

Complex adjectives are finite (full relative clauses) as well as non-finite (participle used as adjectives). Adjectives usually precede the nouns they modify.

It is difficult to define adjective phrases because adjectives are not distinguished morphologically from nouns. However, it is possible to distinguish an adjectival phrase from a noun phrase because: (1) the semantics of adjectives is quite distinct from that of nouns; (2) an adjective phrase functions as a modifier for a substantive; (3)

some adjectives are bound forms and their surface form is determined by the number and gender of a following noun. In nouns the gender is marked inherently; (4) adjectives usually precede a head noun and occur in the attributive position. The word order of adjectives with respect to other constituents of an adjective phrase is as follows: determiner - quantifier - adjective - noun.

3. ये दो लंबी कमीज़ें  
*ye do lambi: kami:zē*  
 these-f two long-fp shirts  
 these two long shirts

There are two types of adjectives: those which do not take a complement, and those which do take a complement. Adjectives like मैला *mela:* dirty do not take a complement, whereas adjectives like तैयार *taya:r* ready do take it. The latter type of adjectives with their complements occurs attributively.

4. कपड़े धोने के लिए तैयार लड़का  
*kapre dhone ke liye teya:r larka:*  
 clothes wash-inf-obl for ready boy  
 the boy who is ready to wash clothes
- 4a. \*तैयार लड़का  
*\*teya:r laṛka:*
- 4b. लड़का तैयार है।  
*larka: teya:r hε.*  
 The boy is ready.

Adjectives can be either stative (अच्छा *accha:* good, सुंदर *sundar* beautiful) or non-stative (प्रसन्न *prasann* ‘happy’, नाराज़ *na:ra:z* ‘angry’).

The adverbs of degree in their basic form can serve as modifiers of adjectives.

- 5a. यह बहुत बड़ा/छोटा पेड़ है।  
*yeh bahut bara:/choṭa: per hε.*  
 this very big/ small tree is  
 This is a very big/small tree.

## **4. SYNTAX**

---

The marker **-ही -hi:** can be added to adverbs of degree for intensification of meaning.

- 5b. यह बहुत ही बड़ा/छोटा पेड़ है।  
*yeh bahut hi: bara:/choṭa: per he*  
This is a very big/small tree.

### **4.1.4. Adverbial Phrases**

Phrasal adverbs are formed by adding a simple or a compound postposition to a noun.

1. तीन महीने के बाद  
*ti:n mahi:ne ke ba:d*  
three month-obl after  
after three months
2. पढ़ने से पहले  
*parhne se pahle*  
read-inf-obl before  
before reading
3. दुकान के पीछे  
*duka:n ke pi:che*  
shop-obl back side  
in the back of the shop

Adverbs are reduplicated to show intensity and distribution.

4. आप कहाँ कहाँ गए?  
*a:p kahā: kahā: gaye?*  
you-p where where went  
Which places did you visit?
5. वह कब कब अनुपस्थित रही?  
*vah kab kab anupasthit rahi:?*  
she when absent remained-fs  
On which dates did she remain absent?

6. वह कभी कभी यहाँ आता है।  
*vah kabhi: kabhi: yahā: a:ta: hε.*  
 he sometimes here come-ptc is  
 He comes here sometimes.

Reduplicated adverbs may be separated by the negative particle न *na* as in the phrases कभी न कभी *kabhi: na kabhi:* ‘sometime or other’. This category of adverbials expresses indefiniteness.

7. वह कभी न कभी ज़रूर आएगा।  
*vah kabhi: na kabhi: zaru:r a:yega:.*  
 he sometime neg sometime definitely come-fut  
 He will come sometime or other.

The emphatic particle ही *hi:* can occur with an adverb or a noun to render an adverbial reading.

8. वह केवल समय ही नष्ट करता है।  
*vah keval samay hi: naṣṭ karta: hε.*  
 he is only time-emp waste do-ptc is  
 He merely wastes time.
9. अमर ही आएगा मोहन नहीं आएगा।  
*amar hi: a:yega: mohan nahī: a:yega:.*  
 Amar-emp come-fut Mohan neg come-fut  
 Only Amar will come, not Mohan.

Various case markers and postpositions are employed with a noun to render an adverbial reading, for example, सवेरे *savere* ‘in the morning’, दीवार पर *di:va:r par* ‘on the wall’, घर से *ghar se* ‘from the house’, and चाकू से *ca:ku: se* ‘with the knife’.

10. वह सवेरे जल्दी दफ्तर जाता है।  
*vah savere jaldi: daftar ja:ta: hε*  
 he morning-obl early office go-ptc is  
 He goes to his office early in the morning.
11. यह तस्वीर दीवार पर टाँगो।  
*yeh tasvi:r di:va:r par tā:go.*  
 this picture wall on hang  
 Hang this picture on the wall.

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

12. मैं कल घर से आऊँगा।  
*mẽ kal ghar se a:ũ:ga:.*  
I tomorrow home from come-fut  
I'll come from home tomorrow.

13. सेब चाकू से काटो।  
*seb ca:ku: se ka:to.*  
apple knife with cut  
Cut the apple with the knife.

Adverbials may precede or follow the direct object depending on the emphasis given to it in the sentence. Compare the examples (10-13) with (10a-13a).

- 10a. सवेरे वह जल्दी दफ्तर जाता है।  
*savere vah jaldi: daftar ja:ta: he.*

- 11a. दीवार पर यह तस्वीर टॉँगो।  
*di:va:r par yeh tasvi:r tã:go.*

- 12a. घर से मैं कल आऊँगा।  
*ghar se mẽ kal aũ:ga:.*

- 13a. चाकू से सेब काटो।  
*ca:ku: se seb ka:to.*

Certain adverbs of degree and derived adverbs with *jesa:* like can sometimes serve as adverbial modifiers of an adverb.

14. तेज़ दौड़।  
*tez dɔṛ.*  
fast run  
Run fast.

- 14a. बच्चों जैसी तेज़ दौड़।  
*baccõ jesi: tez dɔṛ.*  
children-obl like fast run  
as fast as children run

Adverbials are always optional and not obligatory in any construction.

## 4.2. Structure of Clauses

In this section major constituents of a sentence namely subordinate clauses, main clauses (or noun clauses), relative clauses, adverbial clauses are discussed.

### 4.2.1. Subordinate Clauses

Subordinate clauses are of two types: finite and non-finite. Finite clauses normally have the same sentence structure as main clauses. Sometimes they may precede the main clause due to the consideration of focus. Consider the following examples:

#### **Main clause**

1. वह आएगा।  
*vah a:yega:.*  
he come-fu  
He'll come.

#### **Subordinate clause**

- 1a. मुझे आशा है कि वह आएगा।  
*mujhe a:śa: hε ki vah a:yega:.*  
I-obl hope that he come-fut  
I hope that he will come.
- 1b. \*कि वह आएगा मुझे आशा है  
*\*ki vah a:yega: mujhe a:śa: hε*

In case non-finite clause precedes the main clause due to the consideration of focus, the complimentizer is dropped and the element यह *yeh* this is added in the initial position of the main clause.

- 1c. वह आएगा यह मेरी आशा है।  
*vah a:yega:, yeh meri: a:śa: hε.*  
he come-fut, this my hope is  
I hope that he will come.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

Non-finite subordinate clauses are structurally quite distinct from the main clauses. They are marked by (i) verb modification, (ii) lack of agreement, and (iii) word order. The subordinate verb undergoes a process of verbal participation or infinitivization/gerundivization. The subordinate verb does not agree with subject and/or object in number and gender and is not marked for tense.

### **Participle subordinate verb**

2. वह चिल्लाते हुए निकला।  
*vah cilla:te hue nikla:.*  
he shriek-ptc left  
He left shrieking.

The infinitive subordinate clause with an adverbial phrase can be put in the initial position.

3. मेरा वापिस आना मुमकिन नहीं।  
*mera: va:pas a:na: mumkin nahī:.*  
my return come-inf possible neg  
It is not possible for me to come back.
4. मशीन चल रही थी।  
*maši:n cal rahi: thi:.*  
machine move prog was  
The machine was working.
- 4a. वह चलती मशीन को देख रहा था।  
*vah calti: maši:n (ko) dekh raha: tha:.*  
he running machine-dat see-prog was  
He was watching the running machine.
- 4b. \*वह मशीन चल रही थी देख रहा था  
*\*vah maši:n cal rahi: thi: dekh raha: tha:.*

### **4.2.2. Noun Clauses**

Noun clauses are of two types: finite and non-finite.

#### 4.2.2.1. Finite Noun Clauses

Finite noun clauses are introduced by the subordinator / complementizer *ki* that and follow the main clause verb. They function as subjects, direct objects, or complements of the main predicate. Finite subject clauses usually occur as subjects of adjectival predicates such as सच *sac* ‘true’, साफ *sa:f/ spašč* ‘clear’, and मुम्किन *mumkin/ sambhav* ‘possible’.

1. यह सच है कि मोहन बीमार है।  
*yeh sac he ki mohan bi:ma:r he.*  
 it true is that Mohan sick is  
 It is true that Mohan is sick.
- 1a. यह साफ / स्पष्ट था कि मोहन बीमार था।  
*yeh sa:f/spašč tha: ki mohan bi:ma:r tha:.*  
 it clear was that Mohan sick was  
 It was clear that Mohan was sick.

##### 4.2.2.1.1. The कि *ki* Complement Clauses

*ki* that complement clauses are usually governed by verbs like जानना *ja:nna:* ‘to know’, पता होना *pata: hona:* ‘to know’, कहना *kahna:* ‘to say’, देखना *dekhna:* ‘to see’, and लगना *lagna:* ‘to appear/seem’. Consider the following examples.

2. मैं जानता था कि बर्फ गिरेगी।  
*mē ja:nta: tha: ki barf giregi:.*  
 I know-ptc was that snow fall-fut  
 I knew that it would snow.
3. मुझे लगा कि वह बीमार है।  
*mujhe laga: ki vah bi:ma:r he.*  
 I-obl felt that he sick is  
 It seemed to me that he was sick.

The verb चाहना *cahna:* ‘to wish, desire’ in the matrix clause selects a conditional verb form in its complement clause.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

4. मैं चाहता हूँ कि वह इम्तिहान दे।  
*mẽ ca:hta: hũ: ki vah imtiha:n de.*  
I desire-ptc am that he exam give  
I wish that he appears in examination.

### 4.2.2.1.2. Direct and Indirect Speech

Direct and indirect speech are not distinguished by the use of any syntactic device, such as a quotative marker or particle. However, both quoted and reported material may be preceded by the complementizer *ki* that which is subordinate to the higher verb of communication in the matrix sentence, such as कह *kah-* ‘say’, पूछ *pu:ch-* ‘ask’, लिख *likh-* ‘write’, सुन *sun-* ‘hear’, सोच *soc-* ‘think’, चाह *ca:h* ‘desire/want’.

5. उसने कहा कि दवा खरीदो।  
*usne kaha: ki dava: xari:do.*  
he-erg said that medicine buy  
He said, buy medicine.
6. ऊषा ने पूछा कि मैं क्यों गाँव जाऊँगा?  
*u:ša: ne pu:cha: ki mẽ kyõ ga:ū: ja:ū:ga:?*  
Usha-erg asked that I why village go-fut  
Usha asked, why should I go to the village?
7. मोहन ने लिखा कि तुम यह किताब पढ़ो।  
*mohan ne likha: ki tum yah kita:b parho.*  
Mohan-erg wrote that you this book read  
Mohan wrote, Read this book.
8. हमने सुना कि वह डॉक्टर है।।  
*hamne suna: ki vah ḍa:kṭar he.*  
we-erg heard that he doctor is  
We heard that he is a doctor.
9. मैंने सोचा कि वह नहीं आएगा।  
*mẽne soca: ki vah nahĩ: a:yega:.*  
I-erg thought that he neg come-fut  
I thought that he would not come.

Verbs like सुन *sun-*, सोच *soc-* are ‘hear/say’ type verbs, and they usually occur as higher verbs in reported speech. In sentences (7-9), the complementizer कि *ki* precedes quoted material and in sentences (10-11), it precedes the reported material. The complementizer is frequently omitted. In Hindi, direct speech is preferred to indirect speech. Sentence (12) may appear ambiguous.

10. राम ने कहा (कि) वह किताब पढ़ेगा।  
*ra:mne kaha: (ki) vah kita:b parhega:*  
 Ram-erg said (that) he bookread-3s-fut  
 (a) Ram(i) said, he(j) will read the book.  
 (b) Ram(i) said that he(i) will read the book.

In (a) Ram and the noun and pronoun are not co-referential, and in (b) they are. In this sentence, the first or direct speech reading is preferred to the second or indirect speech reading. Instead of using indirect speech, it would be more natural to use direct speech in the second meaning as in (11).

11. राम ने कहा (कि) मैं किताब पढ़ूँगा।  
*ra:m ne kaha: (ki) mē kita:b parū:ga:*  
 Ram-erg said (that) I book read-1s-fut  
 Ram said, I'll read a book.

Sometimes direct and indirect speech can be differentiated with the help of number and gender markers. For instance, the gender discrepancy between the matrix verb and the embedded verb may indicate an indirect quotation.

12. राम ने कहा (कि) मैं पत्र लिख रहा हूँ।  
*ra:mne kaha: (ki) mē patr likh raha: hū:*  
 Ram-erg said (that) I letter write-prog am  
 Ram (i) said, I(i)m writing a letter.  
 Ram (i) said that I (j) am writing a letter.
- 12a. राम ने कहा (कि) मैं पत्र लिख रही हूँ।  
*ra:mne kaha: (ki) mē patr likh rahi: hū:*  
 Ram-erg said (that) I letter write-prog.fs am  
 Ram(i) said that I(j) am writing a letter.  
 \*Ram(i) said that I(i) am writing a letter.

## **4. SYNTAX**

---

In (12a) the auxiliary verb of the embedded sentence is feminine, therefore it cannot be co-referential with Ram. Whereas in (12), the verb of the embedded sentence is co-referential with the verb of the matrix sentence. Sentence (12) can be disambiguated by adding a reflexive pronoun स्वयं *svayam/* अपने *apne a:p* ‘self’.

- 12b. राम ने कहा (कि) मैं स्वयं अपने आप पत्र लिख रहा हूँ।  
*ra:m ne kaha: (ki) mē svayam/apne a:p patrlikh raha: hū:.*  
Ram-erg said (that) I self letter write-prog.ms am  
Ram (i) said, Im (i) writing a letter myself.

Similarly, the nominalization of an embedded sentence may also result in a reported speech interpretation.

13. राम ने मेरे/अपने आप पत्र लिखने के बारे में कहा।  
*ra:m ne mere/apne a:p patr likhne ke ba:re mē kaha:.*  
Ram-erg my/he-refl letter write-inf-obl about said  
Ram told about my/his writing the letter.

Thus, there are no quotative markers to distinguish between direct and indirect speech. Direct speech is preferred over indirect speech.

### **4.2.2.1.3. Non-finite Noun Clause**

A non-finite noun clause may consist of an infinitive (or gerundive) verb form. Infinitive gerundive forms can precede or follow the matrix clause and are inflected for case like other types of noun clauses. Non-finite noun clauses change the embedded verb into its infinitival form (stem + ना *na:*) which lacks subject - verb agreement and tense information. The infinitival form is like a derived noun which can take case markers and postpositions. The oblique form of the infinitival ends in -ना -*na:*. When changing finite noun clauses into nonfinite clauses, certain morphological markers like person, number, tense, aspectual suffixes are lost.

| Finite verb   | Infinitival form      |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| पढ़ पर्ह read | पढ़ना पर्हना: to read |

14a. मैं पढ़ूँगा।  
*(mɛ) parhū:ga:.*  
 (I)read-1s-fut  
 I'll read.

14b. हम पढ़ेंगे।  
*(ham) parhēge.*  
 (we) read-1p-fut  
 We'll read.

14c. कभी देखा नहीं है।  
*(ve) parhēge.*  
 (they) read-3p-fut  
 They'll read.

Notice that -ना -na: is added to the verb stem in the formation of the infinitive form.

15. मेरा पढ़ना उसे पसंद नहीं आया।  
*mera: parhna: use pasand nahī: a:ya:.*  
 my read-inf he-dat like neg came  
 He did not like me to read.

16. मुझे पढ़ना पसंद है।  
*mujhe parhna: pasand hɛ.*  
 I-obl read-Inf like is  
 I like to read.

Noun clauses can function as subjects, direct objects, postpositional objects, and adverbials.

Verbs are made non-finite by the processes of infinitivization and participialization. Infinitivization is the result of adding the suffix -ना -na: to the verbal stem. There are three groups of participial constructions: (i) present participle, (ii) past participle, and (iii) agentive participle. The present participle indicates ongoing action or process, the past participle indicates completed action or process, and the agentive participle indicates a habitual or potential action or process.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

17. वह पढ़ा - लिखा लड़का है।  
*vah parha: - likha: larka: he.*  
 he read-past-ms write-past-ms boy is  
 He is a literate boy.
- 17a. वह पढ़ी - लिखी लड़की है।  
*vah parhi: - likhi: larki: thi:.*  
 she read-past-fs write- past-fs girl was  
 She was a literate girl.
- 17b. पढ़ने लियने वाला लड़का समय बर्बाद नहीं करता।  
*parhne likhne va:la: larka: samay barba:d nahī: karta:.*  
 read-inf-obl write-inf-obl gen boy time waste neg do-ptc  
 The boy who studies does not waste time.

Notice that participial forms remain unaltered in the present and past participles. It is the auxiliary which takes person, gender, number, and tense markers. The participial forms agree with the following nouns in number and gender.

| Masculine |       | Feminine |         |
|-----------|-------|----------|---------|
| Sg        | Pl    | Sg       | Pl      |
| का ka:    | के ke | की ki:   | की ki:. |

18. उसका उमा को कल यह कहना अच्छा नहीं था।  
*uska: uma: ko kal yeh kahna: accha: nahī: tha:.*  
 he-gen Uma-dat yesterday this say-inf good neg was  
 His telling this to Uma yesterday was not proper.

The word order of non-finite noun clauses remains unchanged. The focus-related movements to the left of the non-finite verb yield well-formed sentences. Examples of various movements of non-finite noun clauses are given as follows:

### ***Leftward movements of indirect objects***

- 18a. उमा को उसका कल यह कहना अच्छा नहीं था।  
*uma: ko uska: kal yeh kahna: accha: nahī: tha:.*  
 Uma-dat his yesterday this say-inf good neg was  
 His telling this to Uma yesterday was not proper.

***Leftward movement of the time adverb***

18b. कल उसका उमा को यह कहना अच्छा नहीं था।

*kal uska: uma: ko yah kahna: accha: nahī: tha:.*

Notice that no constituent of the non-finite noun clauses can be moved to a position following the non-finite verb कहना *kahna*: ‘to say’ as below.

***Rightward movement of indirect object***

18c. \*उसका कल यह कहना अच्छा नहीं था उमा को।

*uska: kal yah kahna: accha: nahī: tha: uma: ko.*

***Rightward movement of time adverb***

18d. \*उसका उमा को यह कहना अच्छा नहीं था कल।

*uska: uma: ko yah kahna: accha: nahī: tha: kal.*

**4.2.3. Relative Clauses**

There are two types of relative clause constructions: finite and non-finite participial relative clauses. The finite relative clauses maintain full sentence structures with subject verb agreement and are very common. Participial relative clauses exhibit the non-finite form of the verb. The former is more explicit than the latter. The former type is also labeled as the real relative clause.

In the formation of finite relative clauses, the relative marker जो *jo* ‘who’, which is placed in front of the relativized element, the correlative marker वह *vah* ‘that’ is placed at the beginning of the head noun, and the second identical or co-referential noun phrase may be deleted. The forms of relative and correlative markers are given below.

| Relative markers |       |         |         |
|------------------|-------|---------|---------|
| Direct           |       | Oblique |         |
| Sg               | Pl    | Sg      | Pl      |
| जो jo            | जो jo | जिस jis | जिन jin |

## 4. SYNTAX

---

| Correlative markers |       |       |       |
|---------------------|-------|-------|-------|
| वह vah              | वे ve | उस us | उन un |

The relative marker begins with a ज /j/ sound, whereas correlative markers begin with व /v/ and उ /u/ sounds. In the direct case, the noun is not followed by a postposition and when it is, it is in the oblique case. The relative and correlative markers change for the number and case of the noun. The forms are as follows.

| Direct            |       |                      |       |
|-------------------|-------|----------------------|-------|
| Relative Pronouns |       | Correlative Pronouns |       |
| Sg                | Pl    | Sg                   | Pl    |
| जो jo             | जो jo | वह vah               | वे ve |

| Oblique     |                   |           |                 |
|-------------|-------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| जिस jis     | जिन jin           | उस us     | उन un           |
| जिसे jise   | जिन्हें jinhē     | उसे use   | उन्हें unhē     |
| जिसको jisko | जिनको jinko       | उसको usko | उनको unko       |
| जिसमे jisse | जिनमे jinse       | उसमे usse | उनमे unse       |
| जिसने jisne | जिन्होंने jinhōne | उसने usne | उन्होंने unhōne |

In the examples given below, the symbol  $\emptyset$  indicates the presumed site of relativized and head NP prior to deletion.

1. जो लड़का दिल्ली में रहता है वह  $\emptyset$  मेरा भाई है।  
*jo larka: dilli mē rahta: he vah  $\emptyset$  mera: bha:i: he.*  
 rel boy Delhi-loc live-ptc is cor - $\emptyset$  my brother is  
 The boy, who lives in Delhi, is my brother.

Sentence (1) consists of two clauses which share an identical and co-referential noun phrase.

Main clause:

लड़का मेरा भाई है।  
*larka: mera: bha:i: he.*  
 The boy is my brother.

Relative clause:

लड़का दिल्ली में रहता है।  
*larka: dilli: mē rahta: hε.*  
 The boy lives in Delhi.

Here the relative clause takes the relative pronoun जो *jo*, whereas the correlative clause takes the correlative pronoun वह *vah*. When the relative clause precedes the main clause it results in the sentence (1a):

- 1a. [जो लड़का दिल्ली में रहता है] वह लड़का मेरा भाई है।  
*[jo larka: dilli mē rahta: hε] vah larka: mera: bha:i: hε.*

The second occurrence of लड़का *larka:* is deleted to yield sentence (1b). There are two other possibilities for relative clauses: (i) the relative clause may follow the head noun phrase (1b), and (ii) the relative clause may follow the correlative clause (1c).

- 1b. वह लड़का [जो दिल्ली में रहता है] मेरा भाई है।  
*vah larka: [jo dilli: mē rahta: hε] mera: bha:i: hε.*
- 1c. वह लड़का मेरा भाई है [जो दिल्ली में रहता है]।  
*vah larka: mera: bha:i: hε [jo dilli: mē rahta: hε].*

Notice that the participial relative clause is formed by (i) deleting the relativized noun phrase, and (ii) changing the verb into a participial form by adding the suffix -ता *-ta:* for the present participle and -ने वाला *-ne va:la:* for the agentive participle.

#### 4.2.3.1. Restrictive and Non-restrictive Clauses

The restrictive relative clauses allow three possible word orders as given above (1a-1c). The non-restrictive relative clauses are those where some extra but relevant information is provided about the antecedent head noun. They allow only one word order in which the additional information follows the head noun.

2. नेहरू [जो भारत के पहले प्रधानमंत्री थे]  
*nehru: [jo bha:rat ke pradha:n mantri: the]*  
 Nehru who India-gen first prime minister was

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

इल्हावाद में जन्मे।

*ilha:ba:d mē janme.*

Allahabad in born

Nehru, who was the first prime minister of India, was born at Allahabad.

- 2a. \*नेहरू जन्मे इल्हावाद में [जो भारत के पहले प्रधानमंत्री थे]

*\*nehru: janme ilha:ba:d mē [jo bha:rat ke pahle pradha:n mantri: the].*

- 2b. \*[जो भारत के पहले प्रधानमंत्री थे] वे नेहरू इल्हावाद में जन्मे।

*\*[jo bha:rat ke pahle pradha:n mantri: the] ve nehru: ilha:ba:d mē janme.*

There are no word order differences between a restrictive and a non-restrictive participial relative clause.

3. [Ø दिल्ली में रहने वाला लड़का] मेरा भाई है।

*[Ø dilli: mē rahne va:la: larka:] mera: bha:i: hε.*

Delhi in live-inf-obl gen boy my brother is

The boy who lives in Delhi is my brother.

4. इल्हावाद में जन्म लेने वाले नेहरू भारत के पहले प्रधानमंत्री थे।

*ilha:ba:d mē janm lene va:le nehru: bha:rat ke pahle pradha:n mantri: the.*

Born at Allahabad, Nehru was the first prime minister of India.

The relative clause may precede or follow the head noun. The non-restrictive relative clause always follows the head noun. In general, the participial relative clauses precede the head noun.

The form of the relativized element in the relative clause corresponding to the head noun (i.e., the relativized element) is usually preserved in full when the relative clause precedes the main clause. Alternately, it is deleted. It is pronominalized when the head is a pronoun.

5. वह [जो मेहनत करता है ] उन्नति करता है।

*vah [jo mehnat karta: hε] unnati: karta: hε.*

He who hard work do-pr is progress do-pr is

He who works hard progresses.

#### 4. SYNTAX

---

Here the second occurrence of the identical noun phrase is nominalized. The antecedent noun phrase may undergo deletion too, as in sentence (6).

6. [जो दिल्ली में रहता है] वह लड़का मेरा भाई है।  
[jo dilli: mē rahta: hε] vah larka: mera: bha:i: hε.  
Who Delhi in stay is he boy my brother is  
The boy who lives in Delhi is my brother.

The original position of the relativized element usually remains unchanged. In case the relative constituent is placed in the beginning of the clause, the effect is that of contrastive focus.

7. मैंने वह लेख पढ़ा [जो सरिता ने लिखा है।]  
mēne vah lekh parha: [jo sarita: ne likha: hε].  
I-erg that essay read which Sarita-erg write is  
I read the essay which was written by Salim.

The place of the relativized direct object is usually in the preverbal position. The placement of the relativized object NP to the relative clause initial position indicates focus on the relativized NP. The relativized adverbials and indirect objects can undergo similar movement.

- 7a. [मैंने वह लेख पढ़ा] जो सरिता ने लिखा है।  
[mēne vah lekh parha:] jo sarita: ne likha: hε.  
I-erg that essay read which Salim-erg wrote is  
I read the essay which Sarita wrote.

If the relative clause occurs to the left of the main clause, the relativized element can be placed in the sentence initial position.

- 7b. [जो लेख सरिता ने लिखा है] मैंने पढ़ा वह।  
[jo lekh sarita: ne likha: hε] mēne parha: vah.  
which essay sarita-erg wrote I read that  
I read the essay which was written by Sarita.

In the third order, the relative clause follows immediately after the head NP.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

- 7c. मैंने पढ़ा वह लेख जो सरिता ने लिखा है।  
*m̥ne parha: vah lekh jo sarita: ne likha: hε.*  
I read that write which Sarita-erg wrote is  
I read the essay written by Sarita.

In a headless relative clause, the relative clause cannot be placed immediately after the head NP.

8. [राज ने जो सुना] मैंने सुना नहीं।  
*[ra:j ne jo suna:] m̥ne suna: nah̥i:.*  
Raj-erg rel heard I-erg hear not  
I didnt hear what Raj heard.

However, it is possible to place the relative clause to the right of the main clause.

- 8a. मैंने सुना नहीं [जो राज ने सुना।]  
*m̥ne suna: nah̥i: [jo ra:j ne suna:].*  
I didnt hear what Raj heard.

All the constituents of a main clause except the verb can be relativized in a finite relative clause.

### ***Relativization of subject***

9. वह आदमी [जो Ø आया:]  
*vah a:dmi: [jo ø a:ya:]*  
cor person rel came  
the person who came

### ***Relativization of direct object***

10. वह आदमी [जिसे Ø मैं यहां लाया:]  
*vah a:dmi: [jise ø m̥e yahā: la:ya:]*  
cor person rel I here brought  
the person whom I brought here

### ***Relativization of indirect object***

11. वह आदमी [जिसे Ø मैंने किताब दी]  
*vah a:dmi: [jise ø m̥ne kita:b di:]*  
cor person rel I-erg watch gave  
the person who I gave the book

***Relativization of adjunct (object of associative postposition)***

12. वह आदमी [जिसके Ø साथ मैं दिल्ली गया]  
*vah a:dmi: [jiske ø sa:th mē dilli: gaya:]*  
 cor person rel with I Delhi went  
 the person with whom I went to Delhi

***Relativization of adjunct (object of a locative postposition)***

13. वह दफ्तर [जिसमें Ø मैं काम करता हूँ]  
*vah daftar [jis ø mē mē ka:m karta: hū:]*  
 cor office rel in I work do-ptc am  
 the office in which I work

***Relativization of possessor noun***

14. वह आदमी [जिसका Ø यह मकान है]  
*vah a:dmi: [jiska: ø yeh maka:n he]*  
 cor person rel-poss this house is  
 the man whose house this is

***Relativization of object of comparison***

15. वह मकान [जिससे Ø यह मकान बड़ा है]  
*vah maka:n [jisso ø yeh maka:n bara: he]*  
 cor house rel than this house big is  
 the house which is smaller than this house

***Relativization of a subordinate subject***

16. वह लड़का [जो Ø उमा ने कहा हाकी खेलता है] गया।  
*vah larka: [jo ø uma: ne kaha: ha:ki: khelta: he] gaya:*  
 rel boy cor Uma-erg said play-ptc hockey is went  
 The boy that Uma said plays hockey has gone.

***Relativization of a subordinate direct object***

17. वह टोपी [जो Ø [राजा ने कहा [उमा ने बुनी है]]]  
*vah topi: [jo ø [ra:ja: ne kaha: [uma: ne buni: he]]]*  
 rel cap that Raja-erg said Uma-erg has knitted  
 मेरे पास है।  
*mere pass he.*  
 me-poss is  
 The cap that Raja said Uma knitted is with me.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

### ***Relativization of subordinate indirect object***

18. वह लड़का [ जिसे Ø [मोहन ने कहा कि राजा ने किताब दी]] आया ।  
*vah larka:[jis ø[mohan ne kaha: ki ra:ja: ne kita:b di:]a:ya:.*  
rel boy cor Mohan-erg said that Raja-erg book gave  
The boy that Mohan said Raja gave a book to came.

### ***Relativization of object of a postpositional adverbial phrase***

19. वह कालेज [ जिस Ø में [अजीत ने कहा [कि उमा  
*vah ka:lej [jis ø mē [aji:t ne kaha: [ki uma:*  
rel college cor in Ajit-erg said that  
काम कर रही है]]] छोटा है।  
*ka:m kar rahi: hε]]] choṭa: hε.*  
Uma work do-ing is small is  
The college that Ajit said Uma works at is small.

### ***Relativization of object of comparison in subordinate clause***

20. वह मकान [ जिस Ø से [अजीत ने कहा [कि मेरा मकान  
*vah maka:n [jis ø se [aji:t ne kaha: [ki mera: maka:n*  
rel house cor than Ajit-erg said that  
बड़ा है]]] दूर नहीं है।  
*bara: hε]]] du:r nahī: hε.*  
my office is big is far not is  
The house that Ajit said that my house is bigger than it is not  
far way.

#### **4.2.3.2. Non-finite Relative Clauses**

Participial/non-finite relative clauses allow the subject and the direct object constituent to undergo the process of relativization. However, the indirect object etc. cannot undergo relativization.

### ***Relativization of subject***

21. [ Ø बढ़ता (हुआ) ] बच्चा:  
*[ø barhta: (hua:)] bacca:*  
grow-pst-ms (part.) child  
the growing child

22. [  $\emptyset$  पढ़ने लिखने वाला ] लड़का  
*[ø parhne likhne va:la:] larka:*  
 read-inf-obl write-inf-obl gen boy  
 the boy who is studying (Lit. the studying boy)

***Relativization of direct object***

23. [उसकी खरीदी हुई ] किताब  
*[uski: xari:di: hui:] kita:b*  
 his buy-pst-fs book  
 the book bought by him

***Indirect object***

24. \*[  $\emptyset$  किताब दी हुई ] लड़की  
*\*[ø kita:b di: hui:] lar̥ki:*  
 the girl to whom the book is given

Any constituent of a subordinate relative clause, except the verbs, can be relativized.

**4.2.3.3. Finite Relative Clauses**

In finite relative clause modifiers, the possessor elements of the noun phrase can be subjected to further relativization. Also any constituent of a relative clause can be subjected to further relativization.

***Relativization of possessor***

25. वह डाक्टर [जिसका मोहन दवाई खाता है] अच्छा नहीं है।  
*vah da:kta[r [jiska: mohan dava:i: kha:ta: he] accha: nahī: he.*  
 rel doctor cor-poss Mohan medicine eating is good neg is  
 The doctor whose (prescribed) medicine Mohan is taking is not good.

***Relativization of modifier***

26. यह दूध उतना गर्म नहीं है जितना (गर्म) मैं चाहता था।  
*yeh du:dh utna: garm nahī: he jitna: (garm) mē ca:hta: tha:.*  
 this milk rel hot neg is cor hot I wanted  
 This milk is not as hot as I wanted.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

### *Relativization of a constituent of a relative clause*

27. वह मेज़ [ जो Ø [मुझे पता था [कि आपने खरीदा]]  
*vah mez [jo ø [mujhe pata: tha: [ki a:pne xari:da:]]*  
that table cor I know was that you-erg bought  
उतना बड़ा नहीं है जितना मेरा है।  
*utna: bara: nahī: he jitna: mera: hε.*  
rel big neg is cor mine is  
The table that I know you bought is not as big as mine.

The participialization, however, does not allow relativization of any constituent of a relative clause.

The noun phrases in postpositional phrases can be relativized by the finite relativization strategy. The constituents within coordinate noun phrases can be relativized.

28. वह लड़का [ जो Ø मेरे भाई का दोस्त है] चालाक है।  
*vah larka: [jo ø mere bha:i: ka: dost hε] ca:la:k hε.*  
cor boy rel my brother of friend is clever is  
The boy who is a friend of my brother is clever.

Elements within coordinate verb phrases and coordinate sentences can also be relativized. In (29) an element of the first conjunct of a coordinate verb phrase is conjoined.

29. वह लेख [ जो Ø मैंने पढ़ा और पत्र लिखा] अच्छा है।  
*vah lekh [jo ø ēne parha: or patr likha:] accha: hε.*  
cor article rel I-erg read and letter wrote good is  
The article which I read and wrote a letter about is good.

This sentence can be interpreted as the joining of two actions in which the first stimulates the second one. The two actions, thus joined, are not independent of each other. In (30) an element of the second conjunct of a coordinate verb phrase is relativized.

30. मैंने लेख पढ़ा और जो पत्र लिखा वह अच्छा है।  
*mēne lekh parha: or jo patr likha: vah accha: hε.*  
I-erg article read and cor letter wrote rel good is  
I read an article and the wrote a good letter about it.

This sentence can be interpreted as the joining of two actions in which the meaning after doing one thing the second one is done is implied. Therefore it appears like a participial construction. The preferred version will be (30a).

- 30a. लेख पढ़कर जो पत्र मैंने लिखा वह अच्छा है।  
*lekh parhkar jo patr mēne likha: vah accha: he.*  
 article read-cp cor letter I-erg wrote rel good is  
 After reading the article, I wrote a good letter about it.

The relativization of the first or second conjunct elements of a coordinate sentence result in ill-formed sentences.

31. \*वह लेख [ जो मैंने पढ़ा और मोहन ने पत्र लिखा] अच्छा है।  
*\*vah lekh jo mēne parha: or mohan ne patr likha: accha: he.*  
 \*The essay which I read and Mohan wrote a letter is good.
- 31a. \*मैंने लेख पढ़ा और मोहन ने जो पत्र लिखा वह अच्छा है।  
*\*mēne lekh parha: or mohan ne jo patr likha: vah accha: he.*  
 \*I read the essay and the letter which Mohan wrote is good.

The order of pre-sentential and post-sentential positions of relative with reference to a correlative clause, also yield well-formed sentences.

32. [ जो Ø मैंने पढ़ा और पत्र लिखा] वह लेख अच्छा है।  
*[jo ø mēne parha: or patr likha:] vah lekh accha: he.*  
 which I-erg read and letter wrote rel essay good is  
 The essay which I read, and wrote a letter about is good.
- 32a. वह लेख अच्छा है [जो Ø मैंने पढ़ा और पत्र लिखा।]  
*vah lekh accha: he [jo ø mēne parha: or patr likha: ].*  
 he write good is which I read and letter write  
 That essay is good which I read and wrote a letter about.

Notice that a conjunct intervening between a relative and a correlative clause is less preferred. Therefore, sentence (32a) more preferred than (32). The relativized element can be moved within the constituents and sometimes to the initial position for the consideration of focus.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

Mostly the relative clauses favor the finite relativization strategy. The participialization strategy, which is non-finite in nature, is subject to various syntactic and semantic constraints as pointed out above.

### 4.2.4. Adverbial Clauses

Adverbial clauses are marked by (a) the finite form of the verb, or (b) the non-finite form of the verb. Finite adverbial clauses can be placed in pre-sentential as well as post-sentential position. The unmarked order of a nonfinite adverbial clause is at the pre-verbal or post-verbal position. There are time, manner, purpose, cause, condition, concession, and degree adverbial clauses.

#### 4.2.4.1. Adverbial Clauses of Time

There are three kinds of the adverbial clauses: (a) finite clauses with relative clauses like time markers such as यदि *yedi* ‘if’, (b) participial (non-finite) adverbial constructions, and (c) the infinitival constructions.

##### (a) Finite clauses with relative clause time markers

Some of the adverbial markers in this category are जब *jab* ‘when’, जब से *jab se* ‘since’, and ज्योही *jyōhi*: ‘as soon as’.

1. जब वह आएगा मैं भी आऊँगा।  
*jab vah a:yega: mē bhi: a:ū:ga:.*  
when he come-fut I too come-fut  
When he comes, I'll come too.
2. जब मैं जाता हूँ (तब) वह भी जाता है।  
*jab mē ja:ta: hū: (tab) vah bhi: ja:ta: hε.*  
when I go-ptc am (then) he too go-ptc is  
When I go, (then) he goes too.
3. जबसे वह यहां आया (तबसे) हम साथ साथ काम करते हैं।  
*jabse vah yahā: a:ya: (tabse) ham sa:th-sa:th ka:m karte hε.*  
cor-from he came here rel-from we together work do-ptc are  
Weve worked together since he came here.

In sentences (2) and (3), time adverbial clauses are introduced by the markers जब *jab* and जब से *jab se* respectively. Like relative clauses, they distinguish themselves from question words which begin with क *k*. The time clause contains a finite verb with tense aspect information. The time marker जब *jab* denotes a sequence of events (2) and simultaneous events (3) respectively. It is important to note that the relative clause time markers जब *jab* or जब से *jab se* do not undergo deletion as do the correlative markers तब *tab* and तब से *tab se*.

#### (b) Participial (non-finite) constructions

Four participial constructions, present participle, past participle, absolute and the as soon as participle, also act as time adverbials. The present and past participles agree in gender and number with the subject of the main clause, whereas the last two do not undergo any agreement changes.

4. मोहन दौड़ता आया ।  
*mohan dɔṛta: a:ya:.*  
 Mohan run-ptc came  
 Mohan came running.
5. अफसर ने कुर्सी पर बैठकर पूछा  
*afsar ne kursi: par bæθkar pu:cha:.*  
 officer chair on sit-cp asked  
 the officer asked, sitting on the chair
6. घर पहुँचकर उसने टेलीफोन किया ।  
*ghar pahūčkar usne teliphon kiya:.*  
 home reach-pp she-erg telephone did  
 She telephoned after reaching home.
7. आते ही उसने यह सवाल पूछा ।  
*a:te hi: usne yah sava:l pu:cha:.*  
 come-emp he-erg this question asked  
 As soon as he came, he asked this question.

A present participle expresses an ongoing action or process. It takes the progressive aspect in the subordinate clause.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

- 8a. मोहन उस समय आया जिस समय वह दौड़ रहा था ।  
*mohan us samay a:ya: jis samay vah dɔṛ̥ raha: tha:..*  
Mohan at that time came when he run-prog was  
Mohan came at the time when he was running.

The participle forms can be reduplicated as in (8b).

- 8b. मोहन दौड़ता - दौड़ता आया ।  
*mohan dɔṛ̥ta: - dɔṛ̥ta: a:ya:..*  
Mohan run-ptc run-ptc came  
Mohan came running.

### (c) Infinitival construction

A verbal noun followed by पहले *pahle* ‘before’, बाद में *ba:d mē* ‘after’, or पर *par* ‘on’ results in a time adverbial.

9. उसके आने से पहले कोई नहीं आएगा ।  
*uske a:ne se pahle koi: nahī̥: a:yega:..*  
he-gen-obl come-inf-obl before none neg come-fut  
No one will come before he comes.
10. उसके जाने के बाद मैं जाऊँगा ।  
*uske ja:ne ke ba:d mē ja:ū:ga:..*  
he-gen-obl go-inf-obl after I go-fut  
I'll go after his departure.
11. उसके आने पर सारे खुश हुए ।  
*uske a:ne par sa:re khuš hue.*  
he-gen-obl come-inf-obl on all happy became  
All were happy on his coming.

#### 4.2.4.2. Manner Clauses

Manner clauses also employ relative-like and participial constructions. They are not expressed by infinitival or gerundive constructions. The relative clause-like manner markers जैसे वैसे *jese - vese* ‘as/which way’ indicates the manner reading.

12. जैसे मैं कहूँगा वैसे ही करो।  
*jese mē kahū:ga: vese hi: karo.*  
 as-rel I tell-you the same way-cor emp do  
 Do as I tell you.

The word order of the relative manner clause and correlative manner clause can be altered.

- 12a. वैसे करो जैसे मैं कहूँगा।  
*vese karo jese mē kahū:ga:*

The following participial constructions express manner rather than time.

13. वह रोते - रोते आया।  
*vah rote - rote a:ya:.*  
 he weep-ptc weep-ptc came  
 He came (while) crying.
14. वह फर्श पर बैठकर रोया।  
*vah faraś par bēṭhkar roya:.*  
 he floor on sit-cp wept  
 He cried sitting on the floor.
15. वह शरात के साथ बोला।  
*vah śara:rat ke sa:th bola:.*  
 he anger-gen with said  
 He said with anger.

The negativized participial form is formed by adding -ए बिना -e bina:.

16. वह हँसे बिना बोला।  
*vah hāse bina: bola:.*  
 he laugh-obl without said  
 He said without laughing.

Infinitival constructions also express manner.

17. उसका नाचना मुझे पसंद है।  
*uska: na:cna: mujhe pasand hε.*  
 (s)he-gen dance-inf me-dat like is  
 I like his/her manner of dancing.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

- 17a. उसके नाचने का तरीका मुझे पसंद है।  
*uske na:cne ka: tari:ka: mujhe pasand he.*  
(s)he-gen-obl dance-inf-gen manner I-dat like is  
I like his/her manner of dancing.

### 4.2.4.3. Purpose Clauses

Purpose clauses are formed in two ways: (a) infinitival form followed by ए *e* or the oblique form plus the postposition के लिए *ke liye* ‘for’, and (b) the क्योंकि *kyōki* ‘because/ as’ clause modifying इस लिए *is liye* ‘therefore’.

18. वह नाटक देखने गया।  
*vah na:tak dekhne gaya:..*  
he play see-inf-obl for  
He went to see a play.
- 18a. वह नाटक देखने के लिए गया।  
*vah na:tak dekhne ke liye gaya:..*  
he play see-inf-obl for went  
He went to see a play.

Notice that in (18) the oblique case marker *e* is added to the infinitive form of the verb, which expresses the meaning for. In (18a), the oblique case marker -ए -*e* is added before the postposition के लिए *ke liye* ‘for’. In the above construction, there is an option between the two alternatives. If the verb is not a motion verb the oblique form and postposition must be used.

19. मैंने उसे किताब पढ़ने के लिए कहा।  
*mēne use kita:b parhne ke liye kaha:..*  
I-erg he-dat book read-inf-obl for said  
I told him to read the book.
- 19a. \*मैंने उसे किताब पढ़ने कहा।  
*\*mēne use kita:b parhne kaha:..*

The co-referential phrases *kyōki* because and *is liye* ‘therefore’ can also be used.

20. क्योंकि आज गर्मी थी इसलिए मैं बाजार नहीं गया।  
*kyōki a:j garmi: thi: isliye mē ba:za:r nahī: gaya:.*  
 because today hot was therefore I market neg went  
 Because it was hot, I didnt go to market.

The elements of co-referential phrases क्योंकि *kyōki* and इसलिए *is liye* can be deleted. The word order undergoes a change as in (20a) and (20b) below.

- 20a. आज गर्मी थी इसलिए मैं बाजार नहीं गया।  
*a:j garmi: thi: isliye mē ba:za:r nahī: gaya:.*  
 Today hot was therefore ए नहीं I market neg go-past  
 It was hot, therefore, I couldnt go to market.
- 20b. क्योंकि आज गर्मी थी मैं बाजार नहीं गया।  
*kyōki a:j garmi: thi: mē ba:za:r nahī: gaya:.*  
 because today hot was I market neg go-past  
 Because it was hot, I didnt go to market.

#### 4.2.4.4. Cause Clauses

Cause is expressed by using these constructions: (a) finite clauses marked by क्योंकि *kyōki* ‘because’, (b) participles, and (c) infinitival plus से *se* from.

##### (a) Finite clauses

21. वह पढ़ नहीं सकता क्योंकि वह अनपढ़ है।  
*vah parh nahī: sakta: kyōki vah anparh he.*  
 he read not able because he illiterate is  
 He cannot read because he is illiterate.
- 21a. क्योंकि वह अनपढ़ है वह पढ़ नहीं सकता।  
*kyōki vah anparh he, vah parh nahī: sakta:.*  
 Because he is illiterate, he cannot read.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

### (b) Participles

22. चलते चलते वह थका और बैठ गया।  
*calte calte vah thaka: or bēth gaya:.*  
walk-ptc he tired and sat aux  
Because of walking (constantly), he was tired and sat down.

23. मैं प्रतीक्षा करते करते थक गया।  
*mē̄ prati:kṣa: karte karte thak gaya:.*  
I wait do-ptc tired aux  
I got tired of waiting.

The cause is expressed in (22) and (23) by reduplicated present and past participles respectively. Cause can be expressed by other participles, too.

24. अधिक शराब पीकर वह बीमार हुआ।  
*adhik śara:b pī:kar vah bi:ma:r hua:.*  
more liquor drink-cp he sick was  
Because he drank a lot (of liquor), he was sick.
25. दवाई खाते ही वह ठीक हुआ।  
*dava:i: kha:te hi: vah thi:kh hua:.*  
medicine eat-ptc emp he alright became  
Immediately upon taking the medicine, he recovered (from illness).

### (c) Infinitive plus *se* with

26. बच्चे के आने से सभी खुश हुए।  
*bacce ke a:ne se sabhi: khuš hue.*  
child-obl-gen come-inf-obl with all happy were  
Because of the arrival of the child, all were happy.

#### 4.2.4.5. Condition Clauses

Condition clauses are marked by the conjunction *agar/yadi* ‘if’.

27. अगर/यदि वह बाज़ार जाएगा फिर मैं नहीं जाऊँगा।  
*agar/yadi vah ba:za:r ja:yega:, phir mē̄ nahī̄: ja:ū:ga:.*  
if he market go-fut-ms then I neg go-fut.1s  
If he goes to market, (then) I won’t go.

28. अगर/यदि वारिश होगी फिर अच्छी फसल होगी ।  
*agar/yadi ba:riš hogi:, phir acchi: fasal hogi:.*  
 if rain fall-fut then good crop be-fut  
 If it rains, then the crops will be good.

The sequence of if - then clause can be reversed.

- 27a. फिर मैं बाजार नहीं जाऊँगा अगर वह जाएगा ।  
*phir mē ba:za:r nahī: ja:ū:ga: agar vah ja:yega:.*  
 again I market neg go-fut if he go-fut  
 I will not go to the market if he goes.
- 28a. फिर अच्छी फसल होगी अगर वारिश होगी ।  
*phir acchi: fasal hogi: agar ba:riš hogi:.*  
 again good harvest will if rain comes  
 The crop will be good if it rains.

It is to be noted that the condition marker अगर *agar* is not deleted, whereas its co-referential marker फिर *phir* can be deleted. The conjunction marker वर्ना *varna*: ‘otherwise’ also is used in condition clauses.

29. कल जल्दी आ जाना वर्ना मैं अकेले जाऊँगा ।  
*kal jaldi: a: ja:na: varna: mē akele: ja:ū:ga:.*  
 tomorrow soon come otherwise I alone-obl go-fut  
 Come early tomorrow, otherwise I will go alone.

The same tense reference is marked in both constituents conjoined by the markers अगर *agar* and वर्ना *varna*:

#### 4.2.4.6. Concession Clauses

A concession clause is marked by subordinate conjunction markers such as यथ्यपि *yadhypi*/ हालांकि *ha:lā:ki*/ चाहे *ca:he* ‘although’, अगर - फिर भी *agar - phir bhi*: ‘even if’, and क्यों नहीं *kyō nahī:* ‘why not’.

30. यथ्यपि/ हालांकि वह बहुत अमीर है फिर भी वह कंजूस है ।  
*yadhypi/ha:lā:ki vah bahut ami:r he phir bhi: vah kanju:s he.*  
 although he very rich is still he miser is  
 Although he is very rich, he is a miser.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

31. चाहे आप उसको पीटोगे भी वह यह काम नहीं करेगा ।  
*ca:he a:p usko pi:toge bhi:, vah yah ka:m nahī:karega:.*  
even if you he-dat beat-fut too he this work not do-fut  
Even if you beat him/her up, he/she won't do this work.
- 31a. चाहे आप उसको पीटोगे भी वह फिर भी यह काम नहीं करेगा ।  
*ca:he a:p usko pi:toge bhi:, vah phir bhi:yah ka:m nahī:karega:.*  
even if you he-dat beat-fut too even then this work  
not do-fut  
Even if you'll beat him/her up, even then he/she won't do this work.
32. वह क्यों न काफी अनुरोध करे फिर भी मैं उसके साथ  
*vah kyō na ka:phi: anurodh kare phir bhi: mē uske sa:th dilli: nahī: ja:ū:ga:.*  
he why do much insist do even then I he-gen with  
दिल्ली नहीं जाऊँगा ।  
Delhi not go-fut  
Even if he insists, I'll not go to Delhi with him.

### 4.2.4.7. Result Clauses

In result clauses, the main clause contains a cause marked by an oblique infinitive followed by the postposition के कारण *ke ka:raṇ* / की वजह *ki: vajah* ‘because of the reason’. This expresses the result of a sentence. In a sentence sequence, the cause is usually given in the first sentence, followed by another sentence giving the result of it. The second sentence usually contains the phrase इस लिए *is liye* ‘therefore’.

33. बारिश होने के कारण / की वजह से मैं बाज़ार न जा सका ।  
*ba:riš hone ke ka:raṇ/ki: vajah mē ba:za:r na ja: saka:.*  
rain fall-inf-obl reason I market neg go able  
I could not go to market because of the rain.
34. कल अच्छा मौसम था इसलिए मैं घूमने गया ।  
*kal accha: mosam tha: isliye mē ghu:mne gaya:.*  
yesterday good weather was therefore I walk-inf-obl went-1s  
The weather was good yesterday, therefore, I went for a walk.

### 4.3. Sentence Construction

Here we will discuss the different types of sentence constructions: copular, verbal, negation, interrogatives, imperatives, anaphora, reflexives, reciprocals, equatives, comparison, superlatives, and coordination.

#### 4.3.1. Copular Sentences

The verb होना *hona*: ‘to be’ is employed in copular sentences. The copula may take a predicate noun, predicate adjective, participle, or a predicate adverb as a complement.

##### *Predicate noun*

1. वह वकील है।  
*vah vaki:l hε.*  
he lawyer is  
He is a lawyer.

##### *Predicate adjective*

2. सुषमा लंबी है।  
*sušma: lambi: hε.*  
Sushma tall is  
Sushma is tall.

##### *Predicate adverbial (participle)*

3. मोहन खड़ा है।  
*mohan khṛā: hε.*  
Mohan stand is  
Mohan is standing.

##### *Predicate adverbial*

4. उसकी आवाज़ मीठी है।  
*uski: a:va:z mi:thi: hε.*  
his/her voice sweet is  
His/her voice is sweet.

The unmarked order of constituents in the examples given above is subject - complement - copula.

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

There are two types of predicate adjectival copular sentences: (a) those which change for gender and number of the nouns they modify and (b) those which do not. The adjective लंबा *lamba*: ‘tall’ falls into the first category, and the adjective सफेद *safed* ‘white’ falls into the second.

5. यह लंबा लड़का है।  
*yah lamba: larka: he.*  
this tall boy is  
This is a tall boy.
- 5a. ये लंबे लड़के हैं।  
*ye lambe larke h̄e.*  
these tall boys are  
These are tall boys.
- 5b. यह लंबी लड़की है।  
*yeh lambi: larki: he.*  
this tall girl is  
This is a tall girl.
- 5c. ये लंबी लड़कियाँ हैं।  
*ye lambi: larkiyā: h̄e.*  
these tall girls are  
These are tall girls.
6. यह सफेद फूल है।  
*yeh safed phu:l he.*  
this white flower is  
This is a white flower.
- 6a. ये सफेद फूल हैं।  
*ye safed phu:l h̄e.*  
these white flowers are  
These are white flowers.
- 6b. यह सफेद कमीज़ है।  
*yeh safed kami:z he.*  
this white shirt is  
This is a white shirt.

- 6c. ये सफेद कमीज़ हैं।  
*ye safed kami:zē hē.*  
 these white shirts are  
 These are white shirts.

The copular verb must be retained in both affirmative (positive) as well as negative sentences. In the case of co-ordinate structures, it is optionally deleted.

7. मोहन डॉक्टर है।  
*mohan da:kṭar hē.*  
 Mohan doctor is  
 Mohan is a doctor.
8. सोहन वकील नहीं है।  
*sohan vaki:l nahī: hē.*  
 Sohan lawyer not is  
 Sohan is not a lawyer.
9. मोहन और अजीत डॉक्टर हैं।  
*mohan aur aji:t da:kṭar hē.*  
 Mohan and Ajit doctors are  
 Mohan and Ajit are doctors.
- 9a. मोहन डॉक्टर है और अजीत भी।  
*mohan da:kṭar hē or aji:t bhi:.*  
 Mohan doctor is and Ajit too  
 Mohan is a doctor and so is Ajit.
- 9b. न मोहन वकील है और न अजीत।  
*na mohan vaki:l hē or na aji:t.*  
 neg Mohan lawyer is and neg Ajit  
 Neither Mohan nor Ajit is a lawyer.

The copular verb is used for definition, identity, existence, and role functions. It is also used as a second member (explicator) in the compound verb sequences.

10. आजकल सूर्य जल्दी चढ़ता है।  
*a:jkal su:rya jaldi: căr̥ta: hē.*  
 nowadays sun quick rise-ptc is  
 The sun rises early these days.

#### 4. SYNTAX

---

11. दिन प्रति दिन हालात सुधर रहे हैं।  
*din prati din ha:la:t sudhar rahe h̄e.*  
day after day situation improve-prog are  
The situation is improving day by day.
12. आजकल जल्दी अंधेरा होता है।  
*a:jkal jaldi: andhera: hota: h̄e.*  
nowadays early dark be-ptc is  
It becomes dark early (in the evening) these days.
13. ईश्वर है।  
*i:śvar h̄e.*  
God is
14. भगवान् अपना अपना है।  
*bha:gya apna: apna: h̄e.*  
luck self self is  
One is born with his/her own luck.
15. सत्य छिपता नहीं।  
*satya chipta: nahī:.*  
truth hidden neg  
The truth (eventually) comes out. Or  
The truth cannot be hidden.
16. समय बलवान् है।  
*samay balva:n h̄e.*  
time strong is  
Time is strong.

The copular verb always takes a complement. In sentence (13) the complement does not appear at the surface and is understood as विद्यमान *vidhyma:n/ मौजूद* *mɔju:d* ‘exists/omnipresent’ and/or हर स्थान *har stha:n/ कण कण में* *kan̄ kan̄ mē* ‘everywhere’.

- 16a. ईश्वर विद्यमान/मौजूद /हर स्थान पर/ कण कण में है।  
*i:śvar vidhyma:n/mauju:d /har stha:n par/kan̄ kan̄ mē h̄e.*  
God present/every where particles in is  
God exists. Or God is present everywhere.

In Hindi the copula verb होना *hona*: ‘to be’ is used as a non-stative verb and is translated as to become/happen/take/occur. This meaning is expressed by using the verb होना *hona*: or हो जाना *ho ja:na*: ‘to become’.

17. देर हुई /हो गई।  
*der hui:/ho gai:*  
 late be-pst-fs/be aux-fs  
 It became late.
18. बातचीत हुई।  
*ba:tci:t hui:*  
 conversation be-pst-fs  
 The conversation took place.
19. काम हुआ।  
*ka:m hua:*  
 work be-pst-ms  
 The work was done.

#### 4.3.2. Verbal Sentences

Verbal phrases can be grouped into three categories based on the classification of their verbs as simple, conjunct, or compound. The first category has only one verbal root as in (1).

1. मैंने किताब पढ़ी।  
*mẽne kita:b parhi:*  
 I-erg book read  
 I read a book.

The second category is formed by combining a noun/adjective plus the verb करना *karna*: ‘to do’, or होना *hona*: ‘to be’. (i.e. काम करना *ka:m karna*: ‘to work’, मेहनत करना *mehnat karna*: ‘to work hard’, साफ होना *sa:ph hona*: ‘to be clear’ ताकत होना *ta:kat hona*: ‘to be strong/healthy’.)

2. मुझे काम करना है।  
*mujhe ka:m karna: he*  
 I-dat work do-inf be  
 I have to work.

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

3. यह मामला साफ़ है।  
*yeh ma:mla: sa:f hε.*  
this matter clear is  
This matter is clear. or It is clear.
4. उसने मेहनत की।  
*usne mehnat ki:.*  
he-erg hard work did  
He worked hard.
5. उसमें ताकत है।  
*usmē ta:kat hε.*  
he-obl-loc strength be  
(S)he is strong/healthy. or (S)he has strength.  
The third category employs a sequence of verbs like पढ़ लेना *parh lena:* ‘to read’, and लिख देना *likh dena:* ‘to write’.
6. उसने अखबार पढ़ लिया।  
*usne axba:r parh liya:.*  
he-erg newspaper read took-explicator-ms  
He read the newspaper.
7. मैंने चिट्ठी लिख दी।  
*mēne ciṭṭhi: likh di:.*  
I-erg letter write gave-explicator-fs  
I wrote the letter.
- The subject of a transitive verb in the past tense is in the oblique case, followed by the case sign or the postposition ने *ne*.
8. लड़के ने लेख लिया।  
*larke ne lekh likha:.*  
boy-erg essay-ms wrote-ms  
The boy wrote an essay.
9. लड़की ने पत्र लिया।  
*larki: ne patr likha:.*  
girl-erg letter-ms wrote-ms  
The girl wrote a letter.

10. लड़कों/लड़कियों ने अखबार पढ़ा।  
*larkð/larkiyð ne axba:r parha:.*  
 boys-/girls-erg newspaper read  
 The boys/girls read the newspaper.
11. मैंने/हमने फ़िल्म देखी।  
*mẽne/hamne film dekhi:.*  
 I-erg/we-erg film-fs saw-fs  
 I/we saw a film.
12. तूने/तुमने/आपने किताब पढ़ी।  
*tu:ne/tumne/a:pne kita:b parhi:.*  
 you-erg book-fs read-fs  
 You read a book.
13. तुमने/आपने कुर्सी देखी।  
*tumne/a:pne kursi: dekhi:.*  
 you-erg chair saw-fs  
 You saw a chair.

The plural forms of personal pronouns are used as honorific singular/plural subjects as well.

Psychological predicates such as गुस्सा आना *gussa: a:na:* ‘to be angry or irritated’, and लगना *lagna:* ‘seem’ always take a dative subject using a dative case marker and the postposition को *ko*.

14. लड़के को गुस्सा आया।  
*larke ko gussa: a:ya:.*  
 boy-obl to anger came  
 The boy was angry.
15. उसे चोट लगी।  
*use cot lagi:.*  
 he-dat injury struck  
 He got injured.

#### 4.3.2.1. Direct Object

Verbs are conventionally divided into intransitive and transitive on the basis of whether they take a noun phrase as an object. Transitive

## 4. SYNTAX

---

verbs take noun phrases as their object and intransitive verbs do not. In certain cases, the objects are understood and they do not appear at the surface level. For example, see the use of the transitive verbs कहना *kahna*: ‘to say’ and पूछना *pu:chna*: ‘to ask’ in sentences (16) and (17) below.

16. मैंने कही।

*mẽne kahi:*

I-erg said-fs

I said (it) to him/her.

17. उसने पूछा।

*usne pu:cha:*

he-erg asked-fs

He asked (it to) him/her.

In (16), the verb कहना *kahna*: is inflected for an implied generic feminine object. Similarly, in (17), the verb पूछना *pu:chna*: is inflected for an implied generic masculine object. These sentences can be completed as follows.

16a. मैंने उससे अपनी बात कही।

*mẽne usse apni: ba:t kahi:*

I-erg him/her selfs matter-fs told-fs

I told him/her my story.

17a. उसने हालचाल पूछा।

*usne ha:lca:l pu:cha:*

he/she-erg welfare-ms asked-ms

He/she asked (him/her) welfare.

### 4.3.2.2. Indirect Object

Whenever direct and indirect objects occur in a sentence, the indirect object receives the dative case markings. The order of the direct and indirect object in a sentence mainly depends on the emphasis given to these constituents in a given sentence. When animate indirect objects precede direct objects, they get extra emphasis. Notice the following examples of sentences using indirect objects in the dative case.

18. मैंने अजीत को किताब दी।  
*m̥ne aji:t ko kita:b di:.*  
 I-erg Ajit-dat book-fs gave-fs  
 I gave Ajit a book.
- 18a. मैंने किताब अजीत को दी।  
*m̥ne kita:b aji:t ko di:.*
19. अजीत ने अपनी पत्नी के लिए शाल ख़रीदा।  
*aji:t ne apni: patni: ke liye ša:l xari:da:.*  
 Ajit-erg selfs wife for shawl bought  
 Ajit bought his wife a shawl.
- 19a. अजीत ने शाल अपनी पत्नी के लिए ख़रीदा।  
*aji:t ne ša:l apni: patni: ke liye xari:da:.*  
 Ajit-erg shawl selfs wife for bought  
 Ajit bought a shawl for his wife.
20. उमा ने मुझे खाना खिलाया।  
*uma: ne mujhe kha:na: khila:ya:.*  
 Uma-erg I-obl food feed-fs  
 Uma offered the food to me.
- 20a. मुझे उमा ने खाना खिलाया।  
*mujhe uma ne kha:na: khila:ya:.*  
 I-obl Uma-erg food feed-fs  
 Uma offered the food to me.

In (18), (19) and (20) the indirect objects receive more emphasis than in (18a), (19a) and (20a).

#### 4.3.2.3. Other Types of Verb Argument

Other types of verb arguments appear in the form of various postpositional phrases. They include locatives, instruments, benefactives, and comitatives.

There are no restrictions regarding the number of arguments (subject, direct/indirect object, and optional arguments) put together in a sentence. There are, of course, certain semantic restrictions, including the selection of their cases (nominative, dative, and ergative subjects), imposed by the choice of verbs and tense.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

In Hindi, the verb occurs in the final position. The unmarked word order is subject, indirect object, direct object, adverbial (time, locative), and verb. The direct object may occur before the indirect object depending on the emphasis given to it. Consider sentences (21)- (21c) below.

21. मोहन ने पीटर को अजीत के लिए कल घर पर किताब दी।  
*mohan ne pi:tar ko aji:t ke liye kal ghar par kita:b di:.*  
Mohan-erg Peter to Ajit for yesterday home at book gave  
Mohan gave Peter a book for Ajit yesterday at home.
- 21a. मोहन ने अजीत के लिए पीटर को कल घर पर किताब दी।  
*mohan ne aji:t ke liye pi:tar ko kal ghar par kita:b di:.*
- 21b. मोहन ने पीटर को अजीत के लिए घर पर कल किताब दी।  
*mohan ne pi:tar ko aji:t ke liye ghar par kal kita:b di:.*
- 21c. मोहन ने कल पीटर को अजीत के लिए घर पर किताब दी।  
*mohan ne kal pi:tar ko aji:t ke liye ghar par kita:b di:.*

In sentence (21), the direct object gets more emphasis than the indirect object. The order of emphasis is reversed in sentence (21a). Similarly, the adverbial phrase can also precede the direct or indirect object for emphasis.

### 4.3.3. Negation

#### 4.3.3.1. Sentential Negation

Sentential negation is expressed by the negative particles नहीं *nahī:* not, मत *mat* don't, and न *na* no. The negative particle नहीं *nahī:* is added before the main verb, which may or may not be followed by an auxiliary verb.

1. वह आजकल दफ्तर नहीं जाता है।  
*vah a:jkal daftar nahī: ja:ta: he.*  
he nowadays office neg go-ptc is  
He doesn't go to the office nowadays.

2. मैंने यह किताब नहीं पढ़ी (हे)।  
*m̥ne yeh kita:b nahī: parhi: (he).*  
 I-erg this book neg read (have)  
 I have not read this book.

The particle मत *mat* ‘don’t’ is used with imperative constructions. It is added in the preverbal position.

3. अखबार मत पढ़ो।  
*axba:r mat parho.*  
 newspaper neg read  
 Don’t read the newspaper.
4. आज घर मत जाइए।  
*a:j ghar mat ja:iye.*  
 today home neg go-pl  
 Please don’t go home today.

The negative particle मत *mat* can be replaced by न *na* ‘no’, but it is not used frequently.

- 3a. अखबार न पढ़ो।  
*axba:r na parho.*  
 Don’t read the newspaper.
- 4a. आज घर न जाइए।  
*a:j ghar na ja:iye.*  
 Please don’t go home today.

#### 4.3.3.2. Constituent Negation

A number of devices are employed to mark constituent negation. The main constituents are the stress and the use of a negative particle after the negated constituent. Sometimes stress is used to negate the constituent.

5. उसे कल पत्नी से लड़ा नहीं चाहिए था।  
*use kal patni: se larna: nahī: ca:hiye tha:.*  
 he-dat yesterday wife with quarrel neg should was  
 He should not have quarreled with his wife yesterday.

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

6. उसे हर रोज़ शराब नहीं पीनी चाहिए।  
*use har roz šara:b nahī: pi:ni: ca:hiye.*  
he every day liquor neg drink should  
He should not drink (liquor) daily.

In sentences (5) and (6), the negated constituents are stressed by stressing the adverbs.

The negative marker follows the negated constituent.

7. वह घर नहीं गया वह अस्पताल गया।  
*vah ghar nahī: gaya:, vah aspata:l gaya:.*  
he home neg went he hospital went  
He did not go home; he went to the hospital.
- 7a. वह घर नहीं गया अस्पताल गया।  
*vah ghar nahī: gaya:, aspata:l gaya:.*

The negative constituent is also expressed by the use of the negative markers सिवा *siva:* except and बिना *bina:* without added after the main verbs as given below.

8. वह खाना खाए बिना कालेज गया।  
*vah kha:na: kha:ye bina: ka:lej gaya:.*  
he food eat without college went  
He went to college without eating.
9. उमा के सिवा सारे समय पर आए।  
*uma: ke siva: sa:re samay par a:ye.*  
Uma gen without all time on came  
All came on time except Uma.

In sentences (7) and (8), the negative markers cannot be replaced by नहीं *nahī:.*

The indefinite markers कोई *koi:* ‘someone’ and कुछ *kuch* ‘something’ and the question words कहीं भी *kahī: bhi:* ‘anywhere’ and कभी भी *kabhi: bhi:* ‘ever’ are also used with negative constituents.

10. कोई लड़का स्कूल नहीं गया ।  
*koi: lar̥ka: sku:l nahī: gaya:.*  
 someone student school neg went  
 No child went to school.
11. इतने पैसे से कुछ नहीं होगा ।  
*itne pese se kuch nahī: hogā:.*  
 this-obl money with something neg be-fut  
 This money is not sufficient.
12. उसने कल से कोई काम नहीं किया ।  
*usne kal se koi: ka:m nahī: kiya:.*  
 he-erg yesterday from any work neg did  
 He has done no work since yesterday.
13. अमित कहीं नहीं गया ।  
*amit kahī: nahī: gaya:.*  
 Amit anywhere neg went  
 Amit went nowhere.
14. यह काम कभी भी व्यर्थ नहीं होगा ।  
*yeh ka:m kabhi: bhi: vyarth nahī: hogā:.*  
 this work ever waste neg be-fut  
 This work will never go waste.

Participles are also used along with negated constituents.

15. अमित दौड़ते - दौड़ते नहीं आया ।  
*amit dṛ̥te - dṛ̥te nahī: a:ya:.*  
 Amit run-ptc neg came  
 Amit did not come running.

The negative prefixes *be-* and *an-*, borrowed from Persian (morphological negation) negate the constituent to which they are prefixed.

16. वह बेरहम है ।  
*vah beraham hε.*  
 he without-mercy is  
 He is merciless.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

17. वह बेदिल काम करता है।  
*vah bedil ka:m karta: hε.*  
he without-heart work do-ptc is  
He works uninterestingly.

### 4.3.3.3. Double/Multiple Negation

Hindi allows only one negative particle per clause. Double or multiple negation markers are not used.

18. मैं हैदराबाद नहीं गया हूँ।  
*mẽ hedara:ba:d nah̥i: gaya: hū:.*  
I Hyderabad neg went be  
I have not gone to Hyderabad.

It is, however, possible to use double negation markers for emphasis.

19. मैं मास्को नहीं न गया हूँ।  
*mẽ ma:sko nah̥i: na gaya: hū:.*  
I Moscow neg neg went be  
Have I ever gone to Moscow? Or  
I have never gone to Moscow.

### 4.3.3.4. Negation and Coordination

Negation occurs in coordinate structures as it does in simple sentences. The negative element is not moved to the co-ordinate position unless the identical element is deleted from the second negative conjunct. It is only in the न *na* ... न *na* ‘neither ... nor’ situation that negative elements are used sentence initially.

20. न अमित नौकरी करता है और न कारोबार।  
*na amit nokri: karta: hε or na karoba:r.*  
neg Amit service do-prt is and neg business  
Amit has neither a job nor a business.

- 20a. अमित नौकरी नहीं करता है।  
*amit nokri: nah̥i: karta: hε.*  
Amit job neg do-pr is  
Amit is not doing a job.

- 20b. अमित कारोबार नहीं करता है।  
*amit ka:roba:r nahī̄: karta: hε.*  
 Amit business neg do-ptc is  
 Amit is not doing a business.

#### 4.3.3.5. Negation and Subordination

With predicates expressing opinion (पता होना *pata: hona:* ‘to know’, expectation/ intention (चाहना *ca:hna:* ‘to want’), or perception (लगना *lagna:* ‘to seem’ and विचार होना *vica:r hona:* ‘to have an opinion/to think’), the matrix verb can be negated to express subordinate negation.

21. मुझे पता है कि वह नहीं आएगा।  
*mujhe pata: hε ki vah nahī̄: a:yega:.*  
 I-obl know is that he neg come-fut  
 I know that he will not come.
22. मुझे लगता है कि आज बारिश नहीं होगी।  
*mujhe lagta: hε ki a:j ba:riš nahī̄: hogi:.*  
 I-dat seem-ptc is that today rain neg be-fut  
 It seems to me that it won’t rain today.
23. मैं चाहता हूँ कि वह कारोबार नहीं करे।  
*mē ca:hta: hū̄: ki vah karoba:r nahī̄: kare.*  
 I want-ptc am that he business neg do-subjunctive  
 I don’t want him to do business.
24. मेरा विचार है कि उसे वह नौकरी नहीं करनी चाहिए।  
*mera: vica:r hε ki use vah nɔkri: nahī̄: karni: ca:hiye.*  
 my opinion is that he-obl this job neg do-inf should  
 In my opinion, he should not take this job.

The negative particle नहीं *nahī̄:* can occur before the modal verbs पता होना *pata: hona:*, लगना *lagna:* and चाहना *ca:hna:* but not before विचार होना *vica:r hona:.* Thus, sentences (21-23) can be rephrased as (21a-23a) but not as (24a).

- 21a. मुझे नहीं पता कि वह आएगा (कि नहीं)।  
*mujhe nahī̄: pata: ki vah a:yega: (ki nahī̄:).*

## 4. SYNTAX

---

22a. मुझे नहीं लगता है कि आज वारिश होगी।  
*mujhe nahīः lagtaः he ki a:j ba:riš hogiः.*

23a. मैं नहीं चाहता कि वह कारोबार करे।  
*mē nahīः cahtaः ki vah ka:roba:r kare.*

24a. \*मुझे नहीं विचार है कि  
*\*mujhe nahīः vica:r he ki.*

### 4.3.4. Interrogative

There are two types of interrogative sentences: yes-no questions and information questions using question-words. These questions are marked by certain intonation characteristics.

#### 4.3.4.1. Yes-No Questions

On the basis of the expected answer, yes-no questions can be put into two categories: (a) neutral yes-no questions (where a definite answer is not expected) and (b) leading yes-no questions (where either an affirmative or a negative answer is expected).

##### 4.3.4.1.1. Neutral Yes-No Questions

Neutral yes-no questions are formed by the optional placement of the question word क्या *kya*: what in the sentence initial position of a declarative sentence. Note that the use of the question marker क्या *kya*: in neutral questions is different from its use in the question-word questions. In question-word questions, क्या *kya*: usually occurs in the second position, and in yes-no questions it occurs only in the initial position.

1. तुम कल दिल्ली जाओगे।  
*tum kal dilliः ja:oge.*  
you tomorrow Delhi go-fut tomorrow  
You will go to Delhi tomorrow.

1a. (क्या) तुम कल दिल्ली जाओगे?  
*(kya:) tum kal dilliः ja:oge?*  
(Q-word) you tomorrow Delhi go  
Will you go to Delhi tomorrow?

- 1b. तुम क्या कल दिल्ली जाओगे?  
*tum kya: kal dilli: ja:oge?*

A declarative sentence can be converted to a neutral yes-no question without adding any question marker by raising the intonation at the end of the verb.

A negative declarative sentence is changed to a yes-no question by adding the negative morpheme before the verb.

2. तुम कल दिल्ली जाओगे।  
*tum kal dilli: nahī: ja:oge.*  
 you tomorrow Delhi neg go-fut  
 You won't go to Delhi tomorrow.

- 2a. (क्या) तुम कल दिल्ली नहीं जाओगे?  
*(kya:) tum kal dilli: nahī: ja:oge?*  
 (Q) you tomorrow Delhi neg go-fut  
 Won't you go to Delhi tomorrow?

- 2b. तुम क्या कल दिल्ली नहीं जाओगे?  
*tum kya: kal dilli nahī: ja:oge?*  
 Aren't you going to Delhi tomorrow?

A negativized yes-no question invokes multiple answers. Consider the answers to questions (3) and (4):

3. तुम यह फ़िल्म नहीं देखोगे?  
*tum yah film nahī: dekhoge?*  
 you this picture neg watch-fut  
 Won't you watch this film?

- 3a. हाँ, मैं देखूँगा (यह फ़िल्म).  
*hā:, mē dekhū:ga: (yeh film).*  
 yes I watch-1s-fut (this film).  
 Yes, I'll see (this film).

- 3b. नहीं, मैं देखूँगा नहीं (यह फ़िल्म).  
*nahī:; mē dekhū:ga: nahī: (yeh film).*  
 neg I see-fut neg (this film)  
 No, I won't watch (this film).

## 4. SYNTAX

---

- 3c. हाँ, मैं देखूँगा नहीं।  
*hā:, mē dekhū:ga: nahī:.*  
yes, I watch-1s-fut neg  
Yes, I won't watch.

- 3d. नहीं, मैं देखूँगा।  
*nahī:; mē dekhū:ga:.*  
neg I watch-fut  
No, I'll watch.

4. आज सर्दी है ना?  
*a:j sardi: hε na:?*  
today cold is neg-Q  
Isn't it cold today?

- 4a. हाँ, आज सर्दी है।  
*hā:, a:j sardi: hε.*  
yes today cold is  
Yes, it is cold today.

- 4b. नहीं, आज सर्दी नहीं है।  
*nahī:; a:j sardi: nahī: hε.*  
Neg today cold neg is  
No, it isn't cold today.

- 4c. हाँ, आज सर्दी नहीं है।  
*hā:, a:j sardi: nahī: hε.*  
yes today cold neg is  
Yes, it isn't cold today.

- 4d. नहीं, आज सर्दी नहीं है।  
*nahī:; a:j sardi: nahī: hε.*  
neg today cold neg is  
No, it isn't cold today.

In these examples, the (a-b) answers indicate positive-negative and the (c-d) indicate agreement-disagreement answering systems. The agreement-disagreement answering systems are less frequently used than the positive-negative ones.

#### 4.3.4.1.2. Leading Questions

Leading questions are formed by adding the repetitive form of the verb negative or positive question markers नहीं *nahī:* and हाँ *hā:* respectively at the end of a declarative sentence to serve as tag questions. The tag question comprising of the verb + ना *na:* is preceded by a positive proposition and the tag question of the verb + हाँ *hā:* is preceded by the negative proposition.

The expectation of a positive answer is expressed by an affirmative proposition preceding the verb + ना *na:* as a tag question.

5. आज गर्मी है, है ना?  
*a:j garmi: hε, hε na:?*  
 today hot is is neg-q  
 It is hot today, isn't it?
6. वह किताब पढ़ेगा, पढ़ेगा ना?  
*vah kita:b parhega:, parhega: na:?*  
 he book read-3s-fut read-3s-fut neg-q  
 He will read a letter, won't he?

The expectation of a negative answer is expressed by a negative proposition preceding the verb + ना *na:* or the repetition of the verb form as a tag question.

7. आज गर्मी नहीं है, ना?  
*a:j garmi: nahī: hε, na:?*  
 today hot neg is neg-q  
 It isn't hot today, is it?
8. वह पत्र नहीं पढ़ेगा, पढ़ेगा?  
*vah patr nahī: parhega:, parhega:?*  
 he letter neg read-3s-fut read-3s-fut-q  
 He won't read a letter, will he?

Note that the occurrence of certain negative polarity markers such as पहले *pahle*, ओंडे *thore* ‘ever’ in the interrogative sentence also invoke a negative answer.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

9. वह पहले/थोड़े काम करता है?  
*vah pahle/thore ka:m karta: he?*  
he ever work do-ptc.ms is  
Does he ever work?

Alternative questions are formed by adding the expression कि नहीं *ki nahī:* ‘or not’ at the end of an interrogative yes-no question.

10. तुम पत्र लिखोगे कि नहीं?  
*tum patr likhoge ki nahī:?*  
you letter write-3s or not  
Will you write a letter or not?

An alternative form of this question will be:

- 10a. तुम पत्र लिखोगे कि नहीं लिखोगे?  
*tum patr likhoge ki nahī: likhoge?*  
you letter write-fut or neg write-fut  
Will you write the letter or not?

### 4.3.4.2. Question-Word Questions

Interrogative sentences with *wh*- question words are referred to as क-questions in Hindi because question words begin with the क- *k*-sound. Question words always occur in the second position of interrogative sentences. The main question words are क्या *kya:* what, कौन *kon* ‘who’, कहाँ *kahā:* ‘where’, कैसा *kesa:* how, क्यों *kyō:* ‘why’, कितना *kitna:* ‘how much’, कब *kab* ‘when’ and किधर *kidhar* ‘in what direction’. The question word is always stressed.

11. यह क्या है?  
*yeh kya: he?*  
this what is  
What is this?
12. मोहन कहाँ है?  
*mohan kahā: he?*  
Mohan where is  
Where is Mohan?

13. तुम क्यों आए?  
*tum kyō̥ a:ye?*  
 you why come-2pl  
 Why did you come?
14. तुम कब आओगे?  
*tum kab a:oge?*  
 you when come-2s-fut  
 When will you come?
15. वह किधर जाएगा?  
*vah kidhar ja:yega:?*  
 he where go-3s-fut  
 Where will he go?

The question words कैसा *kaisa:* and कितना *kitna:* agree with the following or preceding noun in number and gender. They have the following three forms.

| Masculine           |                    | Feminine            |          |
|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|----------|
| Sg                  | Pl                 | Sg / Pl             |          |
| कैसा <i>kesa:</i>   | कैसे <i>kese</i>   | कैसी <i>kesi:</i>   | how      |
| कितना <i>kitna:</i> | कितने <i>kitne</i> | कितनी <i>kitni:</i> | how much |

16. यह लड़का कैसा है?  
*yeh larka: kesa: hε?*  
 this boy how is  
 How is this boy?
17. ये लड़के कैसे हैं?  
*ye larke kese hε?*  
 these boys how are  
 How are these boys?
18. यह घड़ी कैसी है?  
*yeh ghari: kesi: hε?*  
 this watch-f how is  
 How is this watch?

#### 4. SYNTAX

---

19. ये घड़ियाँ कैसी हैं?

*ye ghariyā: kesi: hē?*

these watches how are

How are these watches?

20. यह पुल कितना लंबा है?

*yeh pul kitna: lamba: hē?*

this bridge how much long is

How long is this bridge?

21. ये कितने बच्चे हैं?

*ye kitne bacce hē?*

these how many children are

How many children are there?

22. वह कितनी बड़ी किताब है?

*vah kitni: bari: kita:b hē?*

that how big-fs book-f is

How big is that book?

23. वे कुर्सियाँ कितनी छोटी हैं?

*ve kursiyā: kitni: chotī: hē?*

those chairs how small are

How small are those chairs?

The question words क्या *kya*: what and कौन *kon* who have the oblique forms किस *kis* (Sg) and किन *kin* (Pl) which are followed by case suffixes and postpositions. The oblique forms of postpositions are inflected for number as follows.

| Masculine/Feminine      |                         |              |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|--------------|
| Sg                      | Pl                      |              |
| किसे kise               | किहें kinhe             | to what/whom |
| किस को kis ko           | किन को kin ko           | to whom      |
| किस से kis se           | किन से kin se           | by what/whom |
| किस ने kis ne           | किनहोने kinhone         | who          |
| किस के साथ kis ke sa:th | किन के साथ kin ke sa:th | with whom    |
| किस पर kis par          | किन पर kin par          | on           |
| किस का kis ka:          | किन का kin ka:          | whose        |

24. यह किताब किसे/किस को देनी है?  
*yeh kita:b kise/kis ko deni: hε?*  
 this book who give-inf-f aux  
 To whom is this book to be given? Or  
 Who is this book to be given to?
25. किस लड़के/लड़की को जाना है?  
*kis larke/larki: ko jana: hε?*  
 who-obl boy-dat/girl-dat go-Inf aux  
 Which boy/girl has to go?
26. किन लड़कों/लड़कियों को आना है?  
*kin larko:larkiyo ko a:na: hε?*  
 who.pl-dat boys-dat/girls-dat come-inf is  
 Which boys/girls have to come?
27. वह किस शहर/किन शहरों से आएगा?  
*vah kis šahar/kin šahrō se a:yega:?*  
 he which-abl city-abl/cities-abl from come-3s-fut  
 Which city/cities will he come from?
28. यह किसने /किन्होंने सेव खाया?  
*yeh kisne/kinhōne seb kha:ya:?*  
 this who-erg-ms/-fs/-p apple ate-ms  
 Who ate this apple?
29. यह किसका बना है?  
*yeh kiska: bana: hε?*  
 this what-of made is  
 What is it made of?
30. ये किसके बने हैं?  
*ye kiske bane hε?*  
 these which-gen-ms made-mp are  
 What are these made of?
31. यह किसकी बनी हैं?  
*ye kiski: bani: hε?*  
 these which-gen-fp are  
 Which are these made of?

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

32. यह किसका/किनका मकान है?  
*yeh kiska:/kinka: maka:n hε?*  
this who-s-gen-ms/-p-gen-ms house is  
Whose house is this?

33. यह किस की/किन की किताब है?  
*yeh kiski:/kinki: kita:b hε?*  
this who-s-gen-fs/-p-gen-fs book is  
Whose book is this?

34. ये किसके/किनके पर्दे हैं?  
*ye kiske/kinke parde hε?*  
these who-s-gen-mp/-p-gen-mp curtains are  
Whose curtains are these?

35. ये किसकी/किनकी कमीज़ें हैं?  
*ye kiski:/kinki: kami:zē hε?*  
these who-gen-fp shirts are  
Whose shirts are these?

When question words are combined with postpositions they create adverbials like कहाँ से *kahā: se* ‘in which direction’, कैसे *kese/* किस तरह *kis tarah* ‘in what manner’, and कहाँ *kahā:/* कहाँ पर *kahā: par* ‘wherein’.

36. वह कहाँ जाएगा?  
*vah kahā: ja:yega::*  
vah where go-fut  
Where will he go?

37. वह किस तरह आएगा?  
*vah kis tarah a:yega::*  
he what manner come-fut  
How will he come?

38. आप कहाँ से जाएँगे?  
*a:p kahā: se ja:ēge?*  
you-p which direction go-2p-fut  
Where will you go from? Or  
In which direction will you go?

39. आप कैसे आँँगे?  
*a:p kese a:ēge?*  
 you how (manner) come-2p-fut  
 How will you come?

40. वह कहाँ (पर) बैठा होगा?  
*vah kahā: (par) bētha: hogā:?*  
 He where (at) sit-PP be-fut  
 Where will he be sitting?

The question words are reduplicated when the expected answer provide a list (of more than one thing, person, event, etc.). Reduplication is obligatory with plural nouns.

41. आपने क्या क्या देखा?  
*a:pne kya: kya: dekha:?*  
 you-p-erg what what saw-2p-Pa  
 What items did you see?

42. वह कहाँ कहाँ गया?  
*vah kahā: kahā: gayā:?*  
 he where where went  
 Which places did he visit?

The masculine plural forms of pronouns are used for honorific singular subjects as well.

Different constituents of the main clause can be questioned as may be seen in sentence (43) below.

43. अमर ने कल शीला को अपने घर एक कमीज़ दिखाई।  
*amar ne kal ši:la: ko apne ghar ek kami:z dikha:i:.*  
 Amar-erg yesterday Shiela to selfs house a shirt showed-fs  
 Amar showed a shirt to Shiela at his home yesterday.

### ***Subject***

- 43a. किसने कल शीला को अपने घर एक कमीज़ दिखाई?  
*kisne kal ši:la: ko apne ghar ek kami:z dikha:i:?*  
 Who showed a shirt to Shiela at his home yesterday?

## 4. SYNTAX

---

### **Direct object**

- 43b. अमर ने कल शीला को अपने घर क्या दिखाया?  
*amar ne kal ši:la: ko apne ghar kya: dikha:ya:?*  
What did Amar show Shiela at his home yesterday?

### **Indirect object**

- 43c. अमर ने किसको कल अपने घर एक कमीज़ दिखाई?  
*amar ne kisko kal apne ghar ek kami:z dikha:i?*  
To whom did Amar show a shirt at his home yesterday?

### **Time adverbial**

- 43d. अमर ने कब शीला को अपने घर एक कमीज़ दिखाई?  
*amar ne kab ši:la: ko apne ghar ek kami:z dikha:i:?*  
When did Amar show Shiela a shirt at his home?

### **Location adverbial**

- 43e. अमर ने कहाँ कल शीला को एक कमीज़ दिखाई?  
*amar ne kahā: kal ši:la: ko ek kami:z dikha:i:?*  
Where did Amar show a new shirt to Shiela?

It is not possible to use simple questions word for questioning a constituent of a verb. Usually the verb phrase क्या किया *kya: kiya:* ‘do what’ is used for transitive verbs and क्या हुआ *kya: hua:* ‘what happened’ is used for intransitive verbs.

- 43f. अमर ने कल अपने घर क्या किया?  
*amar ne kal apne ghar kya: kiya:?*  
Amar-erg yesterday self-obl-home what did  
What did Amar do at his home yesterday?

- 43g. अमर के घर कल क्या हुआ?  
*amar ke ghar kal kya: hua:?*  
Amar-gen home yesterday what happened  
What happened at Amars house yesterday?

In non-equational copular interrogative sentences, all the elements except the verb may be questioned. In examples (44-47) the subject, the accompanier, locative, and time adverbial have been questioned. The copular verb cannot be deleted as shown in in (44a-47a).

44. कौन है?  
*kɔn hɛ?*  
 who is-3s  
 Who is (there)?
- 44a. \*कौन?  
 \**kɔn?*
45. तुम किसके साथ हो?  
*tum kiske sa:th ho?*  
 you who-gen with are-2s  
 Who are you with?
- 45a. तुम किसके साथ?  
 \**tum kiske sa:th?*
46. किताब कहाँ है?  
*kita:b kahā: hɛ?*  
 book-fs where-abl is  
 Where is the book?
- 46a. \*किताब कहाँ?  
 \**kita:b kahā:?*
47. छुट्टी कब है?  
*chuṭṭi: kab hɛ?*  
 holiday when is  
 When is the holiday?
- 47a. \*छुट्टी कब?  
 \**chuṭṭi: kab?*

In equational copular interrogative sentences, either the subject noun phrase or the predicate nominal can be questioned. The demonstrative pronoun used as a subject cannot be questioned. Consider the following examples.

48. यह पर्दा है।  
*yeh pardā: hɛ.*  
 it curtain is  
 It is a curtain.

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

- 48a. यह क्या है?  
*yeh kya: hε?*  
it what is-3s  
What is it?

- 48b. \*क्या पर्दा है?  
*\*kya: parda: hε?*

49. यह किताब है।  
*yeh kita:b hε.*  
this book is  
This is a book.

- 49a. यह क्या है?  
*yeh kya: hε?*  
this what is-f  
What is this?

- 49b. \*क्या किताब है?  
*\*kya: kita:b hε?*

Different constituents of subordinate clauses can be questioned. There are two types of subordinate clauses: finite and non-finite. As is the case with matrix sentences, all elements of these clauses can be questioned. Constituents, which undergo deletion in the process of non-finitization, however, cannot be questioned. This supports the argument that the question formation rule applies after the rules for non-finitization of the subordinate clauses take place.

50. (क्या) आपको पता है मोहन ने अमर को कल<sup>1</sup>  
*kya: a:pko pata: hε mohan ne amar ko kal*  
Q you-dat knowledge is Mohan-erg Amar-dat yesterday  
किताब दी?  
*kita:b di:?*  
book gave-f  
Do you know that Mohan gave a book to Amar yesterday?

***Subject***

- 50a. (क्या) आपको पता है अमर को किसने कल किताब दी?  
*(kya:) a:pko pata: he amar ko kisne kal kita:b di:?*  
 You know who gave a book to Amar yesterday?

***Direct object***

- 50b. (क्या) आपको पता है कि मोहन ने कल अमर को क्या दिया?  
*(kya:) a:pko pata: he ki mohan ne kal amar ko kya: diya:?*  
 Do you know what Mohan gave to Amar yesterday?

***Indirect object***

- 50c. (क्या) आपको पता है कि मोहन ने किसको कल किताब दी?  
*(kya:)a:pko pata: he mohan ne kisko kal kita:b di:?*  
 You know to whom Mohan gave a book yesterday?

***Time adverbial***

- 50d. (क्या) आपको पता है कि मोहन ने कब अमर को किताब दी?  
*(kya:) a:pko pata: he ki mohan ne kab amar ko kita:b di?*  
 You know when Mohan gave the book to Amar?

The questioning of the constituent clauses may also involve questioning of the matrix clause.

Note that no constituent of a finite relative clause can be questioned.

51. रमेश से जो दोस्त आज मिला वह चालाक है।  
*rameś se jo dost a:j mila: vah ca:la:k hε.*  
 Ramesh-abl rel friend today met he clever is  
 The friend who met Ramesh is clever.
- 51a. \*रमेश से कौन दोस्त आज मिला चालाक है?  
*\*rameś ka: kən dost a:j mila: ca:la:k hε?*

Constituents of non-finite subordinate clauses which comprise infinitival and participial phrases can be questioned.

52. वह खाना खाते हुए अखबार पढ़ रहा था।  
*vah kha:na: kha:te hue akhba:r par̥h raha: tha:.*  
 he food eating-part newspaper read-prog was  
 He was reading a newspaper while eating his meal.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

### ***Direct object***

- 52a. वह क्या खाते हुए अखबार पढ़ रहा था?  
*vah kya: kha:te hue akhba:r parh raha: tha:?*  
What was he eating while reading a newspaper?
53. वह चाय पीते हुए बच्चे को पढ़ा रहा था।  
*vah ca:y pi:te hue bacce ko parha: raha: tha:.*  
he tea drinking-part child-dat teach-prog was  
He was teaching the child while drinking his tea?

### ***Indirect object***

- 53a. वह किस को चाय पीते हुए पढ़ा रहा था?  
*vah kis ko ca:y pi:te hue parha: raha: tha:?*  
Who was he teaching while drinking his tea?
54. वह राज के साथ बातें करते हुए जा रहा था।  
*vah ra:j ke sa:th ba:tē karte hue ja: raha: tha:.*  
he Raj with talk do-ptc go-prog was  
He was talking to Raj while going.

### ***Object of a postposition***

- 54a. वह किसके साथ बातें करते हुए जा रहा था?  
*vah kiske sa:th ba:tē karte hue ja: raha: tha:?*  
Who was he talking to while going?

The subject of the subordinate clauses undergoes deletion in sentences (52a-54a) because it is co-referential to the subject of the matrix sentence. All the constituents of gerundive and infinitival clause can be questioned.

55. वह क्या करने दिल्ली गया?  
*vah kya: karne dilli: gaya:?*  
he what do-inf-obl Delhi went  
Why did he go to Delhi?
56. मास्टर ने लड़के को पत्र लिखने के लिए कहा।  
*ma:star ne larke ko patr likhne ke liye kaha:.*  
teacher-erg student-dat letter write-inf-obl for told  
The teacher asked the student to write a letter?

- 56a. मास्टर ने लड़के को क्या करने के लिए कहा?  
*ma:star ne larke ko kya: karne ke liye kaha:?*  
 What did the teacher ask his student to do?
- 56b. मास्टर ने लड़के को क्या लिखने के लिए कहा?  
*ma:star ne larke ko kya: likhne ke liye kaha:?*  
 What did the father ask his son to write?

Different constituents of a noun phrase can be questioned. A noun phrase may be made up of any of the following: (a) demonstrative pronoun, (b) quantifier, (c) intensifier, (d) descriptive adjective, (e) classifier/specifier, (f) possessive adjective, (g) possessor, (h) particle and a noun. Nouns may also modify relative clauses and objects of comparison.

#### ***Demonstrative pronoun***

- 57a. यह छोटी लड़की घर जाएगी।  
*yeh choṭi: larki: ghar ja:yegi:.*  
 this little girl home go-3s-fut  
 This little girl will go home.
- 57b. कौन सी छोटी लड़की घर जाएगी?  
*kon si: choṭi: larki: ghar ja:yegi:?*  
 Which little girl will go home?

#### ***Quantifier (cardinal number)***

- 58a. मोहन के तीन दोस्त कल आएंगे।  
*mohan ke ti:n dost kal a:yēge.*  
 Mohan-gen three friends tomorrow come-3p-fut  
 Mohans three friends will come tomorrow.
- 58b. मोहन के तीन दोस्त कल आएंगे?  
*mohan ke kitne dost kal a:yēge?*  
 How many friends of Mohan will come tomorrow?

#### ***Quantifier (ordinal number)***

- 59a. उसका तीसरा बेटा दिल्ली में है।  
*uska: ti:sra: beta: dilli: mē hε.*  
 he-gen third son Delhi in is  
 His third son is in Delhi.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

- 59b. उसका कौन सा बेटा दिल्ली में है?  
*uska: kən sa: beta: dilli: mə̤ hə?*  
Which son of his is in Delhi?

### ***Quantifier (proportional number)***

- 60a. वह हमेशा चौगुना खर्च करता है।  
*vah hameša: cəguna: kharc karta: hə.*  
he always four times expenditure do-pr is  
He always incurs four times the expenses of everyone else.

- 60b. वह कितने गुना खर्च करता है?  
*vah kitne guna: kharc karta: hə?*  
How many times the expenditure of everyone else does he incur?

### ***Descriptive adjective***

- 61a. पतला लड़का घोड़े पर नहीं चढ़ सकता।  
*patla: larka: ghore par nahī: carh sakta:.*  
slim boy horse on neg ride can-ptc  
The slim boy cannot ride the horse.
- 61b. कौन सी लड़की कार नहीं चला सकती?  
*kən si: larki: ka:r nahī: cala: sakti:?*  
Which girl cannot drive the car?

### ***Intensifier***

- 62a. रमा बहुत ही लंबी लड़की है।  
*rama: bahut hi: lambi: larki: hə.*  
Rama very (intensifier) tall-fs girl is  
Rama is a very tall girl.
- 62b. रमा कितनी लंबी लड़की है?  
*rama: kitni: lambi: larki: hə?*  
How tall a girl is Rama?

### ***Possessive adjective***

- 63a. मोहन का कालेज दिल्ली में है।  
*mohan ka: ka:lej dilli: mə̤ hə.*  
Mohan-gen college is Delhi-loc is in  
Mohan's college is in Delhi.

- 63b. किसका कालेज दिल्ली में है?  
*kiska: ka:lej dilli: mē hε?*  
 Whose college is in Delhi?

**Specifier/classifier**

- 64a. मोहन का बड़ा बाला बेटा बीमार है।  
*mohan ka: bara: va:la: beṭa: bi:ma:r hε.*  
 Mohan-gen elder (specifier) son sick is  
 Mohan's elder son is sick.
- 64b. मोहन का कौन सा बेटा बीमार है?  
*mohan ka: kōn sa: beṭa: bi:ma:r hε?*  
 Which of Mohans sons is sick?

Particles ही *hi:* and भी *bhi:* cannot be questioned.

- 65a. तुम ही जाओ।  
*tum hi: ja:o.*  
 you-par go-3s-fut  
 Only you go.
- 65b. \*कौन ही जाओ।  
*\*kōn hi: ja:o.*
66. वह भी आपके साथ आएगा।  
*vah bhi: a:pke sa:th a:ega:.*  
 he-part you-gen with come-3s-fut  
 Hell also come with you.
- 66a. \*कौन भी आपके साथ आएगा।  
*\*kōn bhi: a:pke sa:th a:ega:.*

A comparative phrase can also modify a noun phrase.

**Object of comparison**

- 67a. मैंने रजनी से लंबी लड़की देखी।  
*mēne rajini se lambi: lar̥ki: dekhi:.*  
 I-erg Rajni-abl than tall-fs girl saw-fs  
 I saw a girl taller than Rajni.

## **4. SYNTAX**

---

- 67b. मैंने किससे लंबी लड़की देखी।  
*m̥ne kis-se lambi: larki: dekhi:?*  
I-erg who-abl tall girl saw-fut  
I saw a girl taller than whom?

There are two types of relative clauses: non-finite and finite. No constituent of a finite relative clause can be questioned. Any element of a non-finite relative clause, except the subject, can be questioned.

68. यह बच्चों को पैसे देने वाला है।  
*yeh baccō ko pese dene va:la: hε.*  
he children-dat money give-inf aux  
He is going to give money to the children.

### ***Direct object of a non-finite relative clause***

- 68a. यह बच्चों को क्या देने वाला है?  
*yeh baccō ko kya: dene va:la: hε?*  
What is he going to give to the children?

### ***Indirect object of a non-finite relative clause***

- 68b. यह किनको पैसे देने वाला है?  
*yeh kinko pese dene va:la: hε?*  
Who he is going to give money to?

Elements of a postpositional phrase can also be questioned. A postpositional phrase consists of a head noun followed by a postposition. The postposition assigns the case to the head noun. The noun phrase elements of a postpositional phrase can be questioned. The noun phrase, which is followed by a postposition, is in the oblique case.

69. इस मेज़ पर काकड़ है।  
*is mez par ka:kaz hε.*  
this-obl table on paper is  
There is paper on this table.

- 69a. किस मेज़ पर काकड़ है?  
*kis mez par ka:kaz hε?*  
Which table is the paper on?

- 69b. काकज़ किस पर है?  
*ka:kaz kis par he?*  
 What is the paper (placed) on?
70. मोहन के घर के पास दुकान है।  
*mohan ke ghar ke pa:s duka:n he.*  
 Mohan-poss house near shop is  
 There is a shop near Mohans house.
- 70a. किसके घर के पास दुकान है?  
*kiske ghar ke pa:s duka:n he?*  
 Near whose house is there a shop?
- 70b. किसके पास दुकान है?  
*kiske pa:s duka:n he?*  
 Near which place is a shop?

It is only the noun phrase elements of a postpositional phrase which can be questioned, not the postpositions.

Elements of a coordinate structure can be questioned. The coordinate structures are formed either by juxtaposition or by the use of a conjunction.

#### ***Juxtaposition***

71. शीला चिट्ठी लिखने के लिए काकज़ कलम लाई।  
*ši:la: ciṭṭhi: likhne ke liye ka:kaz kalam la:i:.*  
 Shiela letter write-inf for paper pen brought  
 Shiela brought paper and pen for writing a letter.
- 71a. शीला काकज़ कलम क्या लिखने के लिए लाई?  
*ši:la: ka:kaz kalam kya: likhne ke liye la:i:?*
- 71b. शीला चिट्ठी लिखने के लिए क्या लाई?  
*ši:la: ciṭṭhi: likhne ke liye kya: la:i:?*

#### ***Conjunction***

72. मोहन और अजीत दिल्ली गए।  
*mohan or aji:t dilli: gae.*  
 Mohan and Ajit Delhi went  
 Mohan and Ajit went to Delhi.

#### 4. SYNTAX

---

- 72a. मोहन और कौन गए?  
*mohan or kōn gae?*  
Mohan and who went? (Mohan went with whom?)
- 72b. \*कौन और अजीत दिल्ली गए?  
*\*kōn or aji:t dilli: gae?*  
Who and Ajit went to Delhi?
- 72c. कौन कौन दिल्ली गए?  
*kōn kōn dilli: gae?*  
Who (are the ones who) went to Delhi?
73. शीला और मोहन ने अपना काम समाप्त किया।  
*ši:la: or mohan ne apna: ka:m sama:pt kiya:.*  
Shiela and Mohan-erg self's work finish did  
Shiela and Mohan finished their work.
- 73a. शीला और किसने अपना काम समाप्त किया?  
*ši:la: or kisne apna: apna: ka:m sama:pt kiya:?*  
Shiela and who finished their work?
- 73b. \*किसने और शीला ने अपना काम समाप्त किया?  
*\*kisne or ši:la: ne apna: ka:m sama:pt kiya:?*  
Who and Shiela finished their work?
- 73c. किस किस ने काम समाप्त किया?  
*kis kis ne ka:m sama:pt kiya:?*  
Who (are the ones who) finished their work?
74. उसने चिट्ठी लिखी और किताब पढ़ी।  
*usne ciṭṭhi: likhi: or kita:b parhi:.*  
he-erg letter wrote-fs and book read-fs  
He wrote a letter and read a book.
- 74a. \*उसने चिट्ठी लिखी और क्या पढ़ी?  
*\*usne ciṭṭhi: likhi: or kya: parhi:?*
- 74b. \*उसने क्या लिखी और किताब पढ़ी?  
*\*usne kya: likhi: or kita:b parhi:?*

- 74c. उसने चिट्ठी लिखी और क्या किया?  
*usne cit̪hi: likhi: or kya: kiya:?*  
 He wrote a letter and what else did he do?

- 74d. उसने क्या क्या किया?  
*usne kya: kya: kiya:?*  
 What are the things he did?

75. उसने रोटी खाई और दूध पिया।  
*usne roṭi: kha:i: or du:dh piya:.*  
 He-erg bread ate-fs and milk drank-ms  
 He ate bread and drank milk.

- 75a. उसने रोटी खाई और क्या पिया?  
*usne roṭi: kha:i: or kya: piya:?*  
 He ate bread and what did he drink?

- 75b. \*उसने क्या खाया और दूध पिया?  
*usne kya: kha:ya: or du:dh piya:?*

No part of the juxtaposition phrase can be questioned. The questioning of the first element of a coordinate noun phrase results in the formation of ill-formed sentences as in (73b) and (75b). Similarly, in the coordinate verb phrases, the object of the first verb phrase cannot be questioned.

There is no constraint on the number of constituents of a sentence that can be questioned at one time. The multiple question-word questions are normally used at the end of the narration of a story, especially a folk tale, for checking the comprehension of the listeners.

76. मोहन कल अमर के साथ बाग देखने गया।  
*mohan kal amar ke sa:th ba:g dekhne gaya:.*  
 Mohan yesterday Amar with garden see-inf-obl went  
 Mohan went to see the garden with Amar yesterday.

- 76a. मोहन कल क्या देखने गया अमर के साथ?  
*mohan kal kya: dekhne gaya: amar ke sa:th?*  
 What did Mohan go to see with Amar yesterday?

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

- 76b. मोहन कब क्या देखने गया अमर के साथ?  
*mohan kab kya: dekhne gaya: amar ke sa:th?*  
What did Mohan go to see with Amar and when?
- 76c. मोहन किसके साथ क्या देखने कल गया?  
*mohan kiske sa:th kya: dekhne kal gaya:?*  
Who did Mohan go with to see what yesterday?
- 76d. मोहन कब किसके साथ क्या देखने गया?  
*mohan kab kiske sa:th kya: dekhne gaya:?*  
When did Mohan go with whom (and) for seeing what?

Question-words are reduplicated when the expected answer is a listing of persons, items, or events. Multi-question-word questions are used when information about different things is wanted all at the same time in one answer.

77. कौन कौन कब कब किन के पास जाता है?  
*kɔ:n kɔ:n kab kab kin kin ke pa:s ja:ta: hε?*  
who when whom near go-ptc is  
Who (which individual) goes with whom (which individual)  
where/what places (and) when?

This sentence can be used by an employer seeking information regarding his/her employees. Question-words which are not used in plural cannot be reduplicated. For example, the question word *kyō* why cannot be used in its reduplicated form.

78. \*कौन कौन कब कब क्यों क्यों जाता है?  
*\*kɔ:n kɔ:n kab kab kyō kyō ja:ta: hε?*

The constituents of both the main and subordinate clauses can be questioned at the same time and the question words can be reduplicated.

79. किसकी राय में कौन कौन कहाँ कहाँ किस के पास जाता है?  
*kiski: ra:y mē kɔ:n kɔ:n kahā: kahā: kis kis ke pa:s ja:ta: hε.*  
who-obl opinion in who where who-obl near go-ptc is  
Who thinks that who (which individual) goes (near) to whom  
(which individual) and where (what place)?

There is a flexibility as far as the placement of the questioned constituent is concerned. The movement of the questioned elements is related to their focus. Consider the following examples:

80. रमेश कब आएगा?  
*rameś kab a:yega:?*  
 Ramesh when come-3s-fut  
 When will Ramesh come?
- 80a. कब आएगा रमेश?  
*kab a:yega: rameś?*
- 80b. रमेश आएगा कब?  
*rameś a:yega: kab?*
- 80c. आएगा कब रमेश?  
*a:yega: kab rameś?*
81. सरला कहाँ जाएगी?  
*sarla: kahā: ja:yegi?*  
 Sarla where go-fs  
 Where will Sarla go?
- 81a. सरला जाएगी कहाँ?  
*sarla: ja:yegi: kahā:?*
- 81b. कहाँ जाएगी सरला?  
*kahā: ja:yegi: sarla:?*
- 81c. जाएगी कहाँ सरला?  
*ja:yegi: kahā: sarla:?*

The question-word in the sentence initial position carries a stronger focus than when it is in the second position. In other words, it is marked by more stress in the sentence initial position than in other positions. Interrogative sentences (80) and (81) are in natural word order. In (80a) and (81a), the subject is stressed, in (80b) and (81b) the question words are stressed, and in (80c) and (81c) the verb is stressed. The interrogative sentences (80c) and (81c) do not necessarily invoke an answer.

## **4. SYNTAX**

---

Usually the question-word क्यों *kyō* why occurs in the pre-verbal position. It follows the verb within the sentence. The movement of this question-word influences the meaning of the sentence. The placement of this question word in the post-verbal position is possible, but it does not necessarily invoke an answer.

82. आपने उसे किताब क्यों दी?  
*a:pne use kita:b kyō di:?*  
you-erg book he-dat why gave?  
Why did you give him a book?
- 82a. किताब क्यों दी?  
*kita:b kyō di:?*
- 82b. क्यों किताब दी?  
*kyō di: kita:b?*
- 82c. दी किताब क्यों?  
*di: kyō kita:b?*

In (82a) there is stress on the direct object; in (82b) the stress is on the question-word; and in (82c) the stress is on the verb and the indirect object.

### **4.3.4.3. Echo-Questions**

There are two types of echo-questions: (a) yes-no echo-questions, and (b) question-word echo-questions.

#### **4.3.4.3.1. Yes-No Echo-Questions**

A yes-no echo-question usually repeats one or more elements of the statement uttered by the previous speaker. The element/elements chosen for clarification is/are retained with a rising intonation and other elements are deleted. For example, the response to a statement made in (83) can be in different forms (83a-83e) in yes-no echo-questions.

83. मोहन कल बाजार जाएगा।  
*mohan kal ba:za:r ja:yega:*  
 Mohan tomorrow market go-3s-fut  
 Mohan will go to market tomorrow.
- 83a. मोहन कल बाजार जाएगा?  
*mohan kal ba:za:r ja:yega:?*  
 Will Mohan go to market tomorrow?
- 83b. बाजार जाएगा?  
*ba:za:r ja:yega:?*  
 Will (Mohan) go to market?
- 83c. मोहन कल जाएगा?  
*mohan kal ja:yega:?*  
 Will Mohan go tomorrow?
- 83d. मोहन जाएगा?  
*mohan ja:yega:?*  
 Will Mohan go (to the market tomorrow)?
- 83e. मोहन?  
*mohan?*  
 (Will) Mohan (go to market tomorrow)?

The yes-no echo-questions may be preceded by the term *accha*: ‘it is so’.

84. वह कल दिल्ली से आएगा?  
*vah kal dilli: se a:yega:*  
 he tomorrow Delhi-abl from come-fut  
 He will come from Delhi tomorrow.
- 84a. अच्छा, वह कल दिल्ली से आएगा?  
*accha; vah kal dilli: se a:yega:?*  
 Is it so that he'll come from Delhi tomorrow?

Using the same intonational patterns as in yes-no questions echoing a statement, yes-no question echo-questions are formed either by asking the previous speaker whether he/she asked the question or by replacing the constituent under focus. Yes-no questions are prompted by the previous speakers question and they do not merely

## 4. SYNTAX

---

seek clarification of the previous speakers statement.

85. आपने किताब पढ़ी?
- a:pne kita:b parhi:?*  
you-erg book read-fs-pst book  
Did you read the book?

- 85a. मैंने किताब पढ़ी?
- m̐ne kita:b parhi:?*  
Did I read the book?

- 85b. आप पूछ रहे हैं कि मैंने किताब पढ़ी?
- a:p pu:ch rahe h̐ (ki) m̐ne kita:b parhi:?*  
You are asking if I read the book?

The focused constituent receives stress if the speaker chooses to retain unfocused elements.

### 4.3.4.3.2. Question-Word Echo-Questions

A question-word may also be used in echo questions and elements of the statement may be repeated depending on the clarification sought.

86. वह पत्र लिख रहा है।
- vah patr likh raha: h̐.*  
he letter write-pr is  
He is writing a letter.

- 86a. क्या लिख रहा है?
- kya: likh raha: h̐?*  
What is he writing?

- 86b. क्या?
- kya:?*  
What (is he writing)?

- 86c. पत्र।
- patr*  
(He is writing a) letter.

Question-word echo-questions are uttered with a slightly rising intonation at the end of the phrase or sentence in yes-no questions. It is not so in question-word questions. The questioner may also use the expected answer in his/her question with a rising intonation.

- 86d. क्या लिख रहा है, पत्र?  
*kya: likh raha: hε, patr?*  
 What is he writing, a letter?

- 86e. हाँ हाँ, पत्र।  
*hā: hā:, patr.*  
 Yes, a letter.

In (86d), a pause (indicated by a comma) separates the two rising intonation patterns. A statement containing more than one constituent permits the use of more than one echo-question.

87. हाँ, उसने कल किताब पढ़ी।  
*hā:, usne kal kita:b parhi:.*  
 yes he-erg yesterday book read-fs  
 Yes, he read a book yesterday.

- 87a. किसने (कल) किताब पढ़ी।  
*kisne (kal kita:b) parhi:?*  
 Who read (a book yesterday)?

- 87b. किसने क्या पढ़ी?  
*kisne kya: parhi:?*  
 Who read what?

- 87c. किसने क्या किया?  
*kisne kya: kiya:?*  
 Who did what?

Question-word echo-questions follow the same pattern.

88. आप क्या कर रहे हैं?  
*a:p kya: kar rahe hε?*  
 you what are-2s doing  
 What are you doing?

## 4. SYNTAX

---

- 88a. मैं क्या कर रहा हूँ?  
*mẽ kya: kar raha: hũ:?*  
I what am-ms doing  
What am I doing?

All elements in a sentence, including the verb and any possible combination thereof, can be questioned.

89. मैं पूछ रहा हूँ किसने किसे और कब कमीज़ दी?  
*mẽ pu:ch raha: hũ: kisne kisko ɔr kab kami:z di:?*  
I ask-pr am who-erg who-dat and when shirt gave  
Im asking you who gave a shirt to whom and when?

- 89a. किसने किसे और कब कमीज़ दी?  
*kisne kise kab kami:z di:?*  
Who gave a shirt to whom and when?

- 89b. किसने किसे कब क्या दिया?  
*kisne kise kab kya: diya:?*  
Who gave what to whom and when?

In (89b), the verb is echo-questioned.

### 4.3.4.4. Answers

Not all types of answers can be formally distinguished from other declarative statements. Answers to yes-no questions require the use of the agreement and disagreement markers हाँ *hã* ‘yes’ and नहीं *nahĩ:* ‘no’ respectively in the sentence initial position, which may be followed with certain honorific markers. Answers to question-word questions involve the stating of the constituent required by the question. The rest of the elements of the sentence are usually deleted.

90. वह कब आगरा जाएगा?  
*vah kab a:gra: ja:yega:?*  
When will he go to Agra?
- 90a. परसों जाएगा।  
*parsõ ja:yega:.*  
(He) will go day after tomorrow.

90b. परसों।

*parsō.*

Day after tomorrow.

The minimum answers to a yes-no question include हाँ *hā:* ‘yes’, नहीं *nahī:* ‘no’ शायद *śa:yad* ‘perhaps’, मालूम *ma:lu:m* पता नहीं *pata: nahī:* ‘it is not known’. The short answers may optionally be followed by polite or honorific particles or terms. The polite particle जी *ji:* can be added to both positive and negative short answers. It usually precedes the answers. In speech under the influence of Punjabi, it follows the affirmative or negative short answers. It is added to indicate politeness for any questioner older or younger than the respondent. Other formal honorific markers used are जिनाब *jina:b* or साहब *sa:hab* ‘sir/madam’ for addressing people of all communities. The English honorific terms, sir and madam are also frequently used by the educated community.

91. वह आज आएगा आगरा से?

*vah a:j a:yega a:gra: se?*

he come-fut today Agra-abl from

Will he come from Agra today?

91a. हाँ /जी हाँ /हाँ जिनाब/ हाँ साहब/ हाँ सर/ हाँ मैडम

*hā:/ji: hā:/hā: jina:b/hā: sa:hab/hā: sar/ hā: medam*

Yes/ yes sir/madam.

91b. नहीं / जी नहीं /नहीं जिनाब/ नहीं साहब/ नहीं सर/ नहीं मैडम

*nahī:/ji: nahī:/nahī: jina:b/nahī: sa:hab/nahī: sar/*

*nahī: medam*

No/no sir/madam.

91c. शायद।

*śa:yad.*

Perhaps.

91d. क्या मालूम /क्या पता/ जी क्या पता?

*kya: ma:lu:m/kya: pata:/ji: kya: pata:?*

Who knows?

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

- 91e. पता नहीं /मालूम नहीं / जी मालूम नहीं ।  
*pata: nahī: /ma:lu:m nahī:/ ji: ma:lu:m nahī:.*  
It is not known.

- 91f. पता नहीं /मालूम नहीं ।  
*pata:/ma:lu:m nahī:.*  
I don't know.

The honorific terms जिनाव *jina:b* and साहव *sa:hab* can also be added in the sentence initial position.

- 91dd. जिनाव / साहव क्या पता?  
*jina:b/sa:hab kya: pata:?*  
Sir, who knows?

- 91ee. जिनाव / साहव क्या पता?  
*jina:b/sa:hab kya: pata:?*  
Sir, it is not known.

- 91ff. जिनाव / साहव पता/मालूम नहीं ।  
*jina:b/sa:hab pata:/ma:lu:m nahī:.*  
Sir, I don't know.

The agreement or affirmative response is sometimes indicated merely by using the honorific terms जिनाव *jina:b* and साहव *sa:hab* as in the following examples:

92. वह चालाक नहीं है?  
*vah ca:la:k nahī: he?*  
he clever neg-Q is  
Isn't he clever?

- 92a. जी /जी है/ हाँ, वह चालाक नहीं है?  
*ji:/ji: he/ hā:, jina:b/hā: sa:hab he.*  
Yes, he is.

As shown above, answers to yes-no questions may be yes, or no, or other response terms or expressions. The positive and negative response particles हाँ *hā:* yes and नहीं *nahī:* no can be reduplicated for

emphasis. They may be followed by certain expressions for greater emphasis.

93. आप मेरा यह काम करेंगे?

*a:p mera: yeh ka:m karēge?*  
you my this work-ms do fut-q  
Will you do this work for me?

- 93a. हाँ हाँ, ज़रूर/ अवश्य।

*hā: hā:, zaru:r/avaśya.*  
yes yes definitely.  
Yes, I'll do it, definitely.

- 93b. हाँ हाँ, क्यों नहीं?

*hā: hā:, kyō nahī:?*  
yes yes why not  
Yes, why not?

94. आप आगरा नहीं आएँगे?

*a:p a:gra: nahī: a:yēge?*  
you Agra neg come-2p-fut  
Won't you come to Agra?

- 94a. नहीं नहीं, बिल्कुल नहीं।

*nahī: nahī:, bilkul nahī:.*  
no no absolutely not  
No, not at all.

The expression बिल्कुल *bilkul* is followed by the negative marker. It is to be noted that affirmative and negative particles only are reduplicated, not other response terms and expressions.

- 94b. \*नहीं (नहीं), शायद शायद नहीं।

*\*nahī: (nahī:) śa:yad śa:yad nahī:.*

- 94c. \*नहीं (नहीं), क्या पता क्या पता।

*\*nahī: (nahī:) kya: pata:, kya: pata:*

Answers to positive and negative leading questions are determined by the proposition underlying the question and not by the tag question.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

95. आप यह काम करेंगे, करेंगे ना?

*a:p yah ka:m karēgē, karēge na:?*  
you this work do-fut, do-fut neg-q  
You will do this work, won't you?

95a. हाँ, करूँगा।

*hā:, karū:ga:.*  
yes do-1s-fut  
Yes, I'll do it.

96. आप यह काम नहीं करेंगे, करेंगे?

*a:p yah ka:m nahī: karēge, karēge?*  
You won't do this work, will you?

96a. नहीं (मैं नहीं करूँगा)।

*nahī: (mē nahī: karū:ga).*  
No (I will not do it).

### 4.3.5. Imperatives

Imperative sentences are marked for number, gender, person, and degree of politeness. There are three types of imperative constructions: (a) unmarked or true imperatives, (b) prohibitive imperatives and (c) obligative imperatives.

#### 4.3.5.1. Unmarked or True Imperatives

The unmarked imperative takes the second person subjects तू *tu:* ‘you’ (non honorific intimate singular), तुम *tum* ‘you’ (non-honorific/plural), and आप *a:p* ‘you’ (honorific plural/singular). Notice that the honorific plural and the honorific singular forms are the same. The singular imperative consists of the verbal stem. Whereas the singular non-honorific form remains unchanged, the suffix -ओ -*o* is added to derive the plural non-honorific forms and the suffix -इए -*iye* is added to derive the singular/plural honorific forms. If the verb stems end in the vowels इ /i:/ or ए /e/, the suffix -ई -*ii* जिए -*i:jiye* is added to the honorific singular and plural forms. The stem final vowels इ /i:/ and ए /e/ are dropped before the imperative suffixes or the plural non-honorific -ओ -*o* and singular/plural honorific suffix -ईजिए -*i:jiye* are added.

1.

| Sg non hon |       | Pl non-hon | Pl/hon   |               |
|------------|-------|------------|----------|---------------|
| (तू tu:)   |       | (तुम tum)  | (आप a:p) |               |
| पढ़        |       | पढ़ो       | पढ़िए    |               |
| parh       | read  | parho      | parhiye  | Please read.  |
| लिख        |       | लिखो       | likhiye  |               |
| likh       | write | likho      | likhiye  | Please write. |
| ला         |       | लाओ        | लाइए     |               |
| la:        | bring | la:o       | la:iye   | Please bring. |
| खा         |       | खाओ        | खाइए     |               |
| kha:       | eat   | kha:o      | kha:iye  | Please eat.   |
| पी         |       | पिओ        | पिजिए    |               |
| pi:        | drink | piyo       | pi:jiye  | Please drink. |
| ले         |       | लो         | लीजिए    |               |
| le         | take  | lo         | li:jiye  | Please take.  |

The polite markers जी *ji:*, साहब *sa:hab*, and जिनाब *jina:b* can be added to the honorific imperative forms.

1a. Polite pl./hon. sg.

पढ़िए जी parhiye ji:/ साहब sa:hab/ जिनाब jina:b Please read.

लिखिए जी likhiye ji:/ साहब sa:hab/ जिनाब jina:b Please write.

लाइए जी la:iye ji:/ साहब sa:hab/ जिनाब jina:b Please bring.

खाइए जी kha:iye ji:/ साहब sa:hab/ जिनाब jina:b Please eat.

पिजिए जी pi:jiye ji:/ साहब sa:hab/ जिनाब jina:b Please drink.

लीजिए जी li:jiye ji:/ साहब sa:hab/ जिनाब jina:b Please take.

With an object, the order will be as follows:

1b. आप किताब पढ़िए।

*a:p kita:b parhiye.*

you book read-pl

Please read the book.

#### 4.3.5.2. Prohibitive Imperatives

Prohibitive imperatives are formed by adding the negative particle *mat* don't in the pre verbal position.

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

2. किताब पढ़/पढ़ो/ पढ़िए।  
*kita:b parh / parho / parhiye.*  
Read a book.
- 2a. किताब मत पढ़/पढ़ो/ पढ़िए।  
*kita:b mat parh / parho/parhiye.*  
Don't read a book.
3. पत्र लिख/लिखो/ लिखिए।  
*patr likh/likho/likhiye.*  
Write a letter.
- 3a. पत्र मत लिख/लिखो/ लिखिए।  
*patr mat likh/likho/likhiye.*  
Don't write a letter.

Prohibitive imperatives can also be formed by using the verb form मना *mana:/* वर्जित होना *varjit hona:* to be prohibitive as in (4-4a).

4. शराब पीना मना /वर्जित है।  
*śara:b pi:na: mana:/varjit hε.*  
liquor drink-Inf prohibited is  
Drinking (of liquor) is prohibited.
- 4a. सिगरेट पीना मना है।  
*sigret pi:na: mana: hε.*  
cigarette smoke-inf prohibited is  
Smoking is prohibited.

Prohibitive imperatives are also constructed from expressions like य़वरदार *xabarda:r/* सावधान *sa:vadha:n* ‘beware’.

5. य़वरदार / सावधान देर से न आना।  
*xabarda:r/sa:vadha:n der se na a:na:.*  
beware late-abl neg come-inf  
Beware, don't come late.  
(You better not come late.)

The expressions य़वरदार *xabarda:r/* सावधान *sa:vadha:n* are followed by conditional clauses.

### 4.3.5.3. Degrees of Imperatives

The unmarked ordinary imperative is stronger than the polite imperative. The obligatives of compulsion are stronger than the obligatives of prescription and the polite imperatives. Certain devices are used to strengthen or weaken the force of the imperative. Intonation and tone play an important role in the degree of the imperative. A soft tone of persuasion weakens and a hard authoritative tone strengthens the degree of the imperative.

Certain lexical items or phrases, such as कृपया *krapaya*: kindly कृपा *kripa*: / मेहरबानी करके *meharba:ni: karke* ‘after being kind’, and भगवान् सावधान खुदा के लिए *bhagva:n/xuda: ke liye* ‘for God’s sake’ are added to imperative sentences to add politeness. They weaken the imperative.

6. कृपया घर जाइए।  
*krapaya: ghar ja:yiye.*  
 kindly home go-pol-fut  
 Kindly go home.
7. कृपा / मेहरबानी करके पैसे दीजिए।  
*krapa:/meharba:ni: karke pese di:jiye.*  
 kindness do-cp money give-pol-fut  
 Kindly give money.
8. भगवान् के लिए समय बर्बाद मत कीजिए।  
*bhagva:n ke liye samay barba:d mat ki:jiye.*  
 God-abl sake/for time waste neg do-pol-fut  
 For Gods sake, don’t waste time.

The vocative forms may also be used in the sentence initial position to strengthen and weaken the degree of imperative. The vocative forms are as follows.

| Masculine |     |     |     | Feminine |      |     |     |
|-----------|-----|-----|-----|----------|------|-----|-----|
| Sg        |     | Pl  |     | Sg       |      | Pl  |     |
| आँ        | o   | आँ  | o   | आँ       | o    | आँ  | o   |
| अरे       | are | अरे | are | अरी      | ari: | अरे | are |

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

9. अरे, दरवाज़ा बंद करो।  
*are darva:za: band karo.*  
hey door do-2s-fut close-2s-imp  
Hey, close the door.

- 9a. अरे, मेरी बात तो सुनिए।  
*are, meri: ba:t to suniye.*  
O, my talk emp listen-2p-imp  
Hey, listen to me.

The vocative address forms may be followed by kinship terms like भाई*bha:i:* ‘brother’, यार *ya:r/दोस्त dost/मित्र mitr* ‘friend’, प्यारे *pya:re* ‘dear one’ बीहिन *bahin* ‘sister’, and माई *ma:i:* ‘mother’.

10. अरे भाई/यार/दोस्त/मित्र/प्यारे दूध लाओ।  
*are bha:i:/ya:r/dost/mitr/pya:re du:dh la:o.*  
hey brother/friend/dear one milk bring-2s-imp  
Hey brother/friend/dear one, bring the milk.

- 10a. अरी बहिन, अपना काम कर।  
*ari: bahan, apna: ka:m kar.*  
hey-f sister selfs work do-2s-imp  
Hey sister, do your work.

- 10b. हे भाई साहब यह अखबार पढ़िए।  
*he bha:i: sa:hab yah akhba:r parhiye.*  
oh-hon brother hon this newspaper read-pol  
Oh brother, please read this newspaper.

The vocatives may also be followed by derogative terms like पगल *pa:gal* ‘mad’, abusive terms like साले *sa:le* ‘brother-in-law’, and सुसरे *susre* ‘father-in-law’ or other derogative expressions of address. The use of such derogative terms and abusive kinship terms strengthen the imperative.

11. अरे साले, क्या बोलता है?  
*are sa:le, kya: bolta: he?*  
hey-mas brother-in-law what say-ptc be  
Hey (my) brother-in-law, what are you saying?

- 11a. ओ पागल, यहाँ आओ।  
      o pa:gal, yahāः a:o  
      hey mad person here come-2s-imp  
      O mad one, come here.

The use of reduplicated forms of imperatives reinforces the impolite force.

12. जा जा, सुन लिया।  
      ja: ja:, sun liya:  
      go go listened  
      Go, I have listened.

Yes-no positive and negative questions in the future tense may also convey the force of imperative form.

13. (आप)तस्वीर देंगे?  
      (a:p) tasvi:r dēge?  
      you picture give-fut-q  
      Would you give the picture?

- 13a. आप देंगे क्या तस्वीर?  
      a:p dēge kya: tasvi:r?  
      you give-fut-q picture

- 13b. तस्वीर देंगे क्या?  
      tasvi:r dēge kya:?  
      Would you give (me) the picture?

Performative verbs such as निवेदन करना *nivedan karna*: ‘to make a request’, and (हाथ जोड़कर *ha:th jor kar*) प्रार्थना करना *pra:rthana: karna*: ‘to make a request (with folded hands)’ also render imperative force in their complement clause.

14. मैं हाथ जोड़कर प्रार्थना करता हूँ मुझपर कृपा करो।  
      mɛ̄/ha:th jor kar pra:rthana: karta: hū: mujhpar kripa: karo.  
      I hands fold-cp request do-ptc am me-dat on kindness do  
      I humbly request you to be kind to me.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

### 4.3.6. Anaphora

Here we will discuss (i) the means of expressing anaphora and (ii) the domains of anaphora. Anaphora in Hindi may be personal pronouns, reflexives, zero pronouns (i.e., null elements PRO or pro) or quasi-pronouns.

In a narrative text or natural discourse, deletion is a prominent device in expressing the anaphora, e.g.,

1. एक दिन मैंने एक बच्चे को रास्ते पर रोते देखा,  
*ek din mēne ek bacce ko ra:ste par rote hue dekha:*,  
one day I-erg one child-dat road-obl on weep-ptc saw  
पूछा तुम कौन हो?  
*pu:cha: tum kōn ho?*  
asked you who are  
One day I saw a child crying on the road; I asked (him),  
Who are you?

In the above example, the anaphoric subject and object (the child) become accessible by means of deletion or zero anaphora in the second sentence. They are recoverable from the first sentence.

Since the verb agrees with the subject and/or object in gender, number, and person, depending on various kinds of constructions, the subject and object can be deleted.

2. मोहन छे बजे घर पहुँचा, कपड़े बदले और आया।  
*Mohan che baje ghar pahūca:, kapre badle or a:ya:.*  
Mohan reached home six-abl hour clothes changed and came  
Mohan reached home at six oclock; (he) changed his clothes  
and he came here.

Anaphoric elements are frequently in the third person, and they are often expressed by personal pronouns.

3. मोहन और उसकी पत्नी सैर करने गए, उसको ठोकर लगी  
*mohan or uski: patni: ser karne gaye, usko thokar lagi:*  
Mohan and his wife walk do-inf-obl went he-dat stumbled  
और गिर गया।  
*or gir gaya:*

and fell

Mohan and his wife went for a walk. He stumbled and fell down.

Anaphora is expressed by possessive and reflexive pronouns as given in (4) and (5).

4. उसने अपने मित्र से पैसे उधार लिए।  
*usne apne mitr se pese udha:r liye.*  
 he-erg refl friend-from money credit took  
 He took money from his friend on loan.
5. अमित घर आया और स्वयं पत्नी को दवाई दी।  
*amit ghar a:ya: or svayam patni: ko dava:i: di:*  
 Amit home came and self wife-dat medicine gave  
 Amit came home and gave medicine to his wife himself.

Certain other devices like the use of सारा *sa:ra:* all, and the use of ordinals like पहला *pahla:* ‘first’ and दूसरा *du:sra:* ‘second’, are also employed to denote anaphora.

6. मेहन बाजार से सेब लाया। सारे सड़े हुए थे।  
*mohan ba:za:r se seb la:ya:. sa:re sare hue the.*  
 Mohan market from apples brought all rotten-ptc were  
 Mohan brought apples from the market. All were rotten.
7. उमा और शोभा बहनें हैं। पहली चालाक है,  
*uma: or šobha: bahnē hε̃ pahli: ca:la:kh hε,*  
 Uma and Shobha: sisters are first clever is  
 और दूसरी सीधी सादी।  
*or du:sri: si:dhi: sadī:.*  
 and second simple  
 Uma and Shobha are sisters. The former is clever and the latter is simple.

The anaphora occurs within the clause with reflexive pronouns. Personal pronouns are not employed for this purpose.

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

8. वकील को अपने पर पूरा भरोसा है।  
*vaki:l ko apne par pu:ra: bharosa: he.*  
advocate-dat refl-obl on full confidence is  
The advocate has full confidence in himself.

9. वह अपनी पत्नी के साथ दिल्ली गया।  
*vah apni: patni: ke sa:th dilli: gaya:.*  
he refl-dat wife with Delhi went  
He went to Delhi with his wife.

Anaphora between coordinate structures is usually forward. It is marked by deletion or pronominalization.

10. मोहन समय पर पहुँचा और Ø अपना काम किया।  
*mohan samay par pahūca: or ø apna: ka:m kiya:*  
Mohan time on reached and Ø refl work did  
Mohan reached in time and did his work.
- 10a. मोहन (i) समय पर पहुँचा और Ø उसने (i) अपना काम किया।  
*mohan (i) samay par pahūca: or ø usne (i) apna: ka:m kiya:*  
Mohan time on reached and Ø he-erg self work did  
Mohan reached (office) in time and did his work.

It is possible to have an anaphora between superordinate and subordinate clauses. Usually, subordinate clauses (except for subject complementation, relative clauses and if ... then clauses) follow superordinate clauses. Deletion indicates anaphora between a superordinate and a following subordinate clause.

11. माँ ने बेटे (i) को Ø (i) पत्र लिखने के लिए कहा।  
*mā: ne bete (i) ko ø (i) patr likhne ke liye kaha:*  
mother-erg son-dat Ø letter write-inf-abl for said  
The mother asked her son to write a letter.
- 11a. माँ ने बेटे (i) को कहा वह (i) पत्र लिखे।  
*mā: ne bete(i) ko kaha: vah (i) patr likhe.*  
mother-erg son-dat said he letter write-subj  
The mother asked her son to write a letter.

Backward deletion is not possible.

- 11b. \*माँ ने कहा कि Ø/वह (i) बेटा (i) पत्र लिये।  
       \*mā: ne kaha: ki Ø /vah (i) beṭa:(i) patr likhe.

Backward as well as forward deletion and pronominalization are used to express anaphora.

12. [जो Ø किताब पढ़ रही है] वह लड़की मेरी बहिन है।  
       [jo Ø kita:b parh rahi: hε] vah larki: meri: bahan hε.  
       rel Ø book read-prog is cor girl my sister is  
       The girl who is reading a book is my sister.
- 12a. [जो लड़की किताब पढ़ रही है] वह Ø मेरी बहिन है।  
       [jo larki: kita:b parh rahi: hε] vah Ø meri: bahan hε.  
       rel girl book read-prog is cor Ø my sister is  
       The girl who is reading a book is my sister.

Anaphora between different sentences also uses the strategy of deletion and pronominalization. No other strategy is employed.

#### 4.3.7. Reflexives

A reflexive pronoun occupies the same position within a clause as any other type of a pronoun. The only restriction is that the antecedent of a reflexive pronoun must be the subject of its clause. There is no other change except the selection of a dative case marker or a postposition in its use as an indirect object. Emphatic possessive pronouns do not require a co-referential antecedent.

1. वह लड़की उसकी अपनी बेटी है।  
       vah larki: uski: apni: beṭi: hε.  
       that girl his emp/\*refl  
       That girl is his/her own.

Emphatic pronouns are sometimes completely homophonous with possessive pronouns as in (2).

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

2. दुल्हन अपने दूल्हे को पसंद हैं।  
*dulhan apne du:lhe ko pasand hε.*  
bride refl-obl bridegroom-dat like is  
The bride is liked by her bridegroom.

Sentence (2) is not passive. The conjunct verb पसंद होना *pasand hona*: to like takes a dative subject. Sentence (2), using the emphatic pronoun, can be interpreted as follows:

- 2a. दुल्हन उसके अपने दूल्हे को पसंद हैं।  
*dulhan uske apne du:lhe ko pasand hε.*  
bride her refl-obl bridegroom-dat like is  
The bride is liked by her own bridegroom.

Reflexivity is expressed by the use of agentive reflexive pronouns. This term is used to distinguish between the possessive reflexive अपना *apna*: and non-possessive reflexive अपने आप *apne a:p* ‘self’. The reflexive अपने आप *apne a:p* represents the main reflexive pronoun, which when followed by a postposition, has the oblique form अपने *apne*. It also functions as an emphatic pronoun as in (1). The emphatic form is also derived by adding the emphatic suffix -ही -hi: to it. The result is आप ही *a:p hi:*. The reduplicated form अपने आप *apne a:p* also occurs as a reflexive.

3. अमित आप/ अपने आप/ आप ही यहाँ आया।  
*amit a:p/apne a:p/a:p hi: yahā: a:ya:.*  
Amit self -emp here came  
Amit came here by himself.
4. मैं अपने आप खाना बनाता हूँ।  
*mē apne a:p kha:na: bana:ta: hū:.*  
I am refl food cook-pr am  
I cook my meals myself.
5. हम अपने आप कपड़े धोते हैं।  
*ham apne a:p kapre dhote hε.*  
we refl clothes wash-ptc are  
We wash our clothes ourselves.
6. सुमन अपने आप कपड़े इस्त्री करती है।  
*suman apne a:p kapre istri: karti: hε.*

Suman refl clothes iron do-ptc is  
Suman irons the clothes herself.

There are no separate pronominal reflexive pronouns for each pronoun. The person information is obtained from the antecedent subject.

7. अमित ने अपने लिए / भाई के लिए जूते खरीदे।  
*amit ne apne liye/bha:i: ke liye ju:te: khari:de:*  
 Amit-erg refl-obl for/brother for shoes bought  
 Amit bought a pair of shoes for himself/his brother.

Sentence (7) shows that a non co-referential object does not take a reflexive form, but selects a non-reflexive form. The reflexivization is also controlled by dative and ergative subjects.

8. उमा को अपने आप काम करना पसंद है।  
*uma: ko apne a:p ka:m karna: pasand he.*  
 Uma-dat refl work do-inf like is  
 Uma likes to do (her) work herself.
9. अमित ने अपने आप दिन भर आराम किया।  
*amit ne apne a:p din bhar a:ra:m kiya:.*  
 Amit-erg refl day-whole rest did  
 Amit rested the whole day.

Examples (8-9) can be interpreted as emphatic reflexives as well. Reflexivization can allow backward movement as well.

10. अपने आप अमित ने आराम किया।  
*apne a:p amit ne a:ra:m kiya:.*  
 refl Amit-erg rest did  
 Amit rested himself.

In possessive structures, the possible reflexive form अपना *apna*: ‘self’ is used in place of possessive pronouns such as the English my and your. When the possessive reflexive is used, the possessor is the same as the agent of the action or the subject. अपना *apna*: agrees with the following head NP in number and gender. Following are its forms:

#### 4. SYNTAX

---

| Masculine    |             | Feminine     |              |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| Sg           | Pl          | Sg           | Pl           |
| अपना   apna: | अपने   apne | अपनी   apni: | अपनी   apni: |

11. मैं अपना /\*मेरा कमरा साफ कर रहा हूँ।  
*m̥ ē apna:/ \*mera: kamra: sa:f kar raha: hū:.*  
 I-m sefl/\*my room clean do-prog am  
 I am cleaning my room.
12. मैं अपने /\*मेरे पैसे गिन रहा हूँ।  
*m̥ ē apne/\*mere pese gin raha: hū:.*  
 I refl /\*my money count-prog am  
 I am counting my money.
13. आप अपनी /\*आपकी किताब पढ़ रहे हैं।  
*a:p apni:/ \*a:p ki: kita:b parh rahe h̥e.*  
 you refl/\*yours book read-prog are  
 You are reading your book.
14. वे अपनी /\*उनकी कमीजें धो रहे हैं।  
*ve apni:/ \*unki: kami:zē dho rahe h̥e.*  
 he refl/\*his shirts wash-prog are  
 He is washing his shirts.
15. वह अपना /\*उसका लाभ जानता है।  
*vah apna:/ \*uska: la:bh ja:nta: h̥e.*  
 he refl/\*his profit know-ptc is  
 He is aware of his benefit.
16. वे अपनी /\* उनकी किस्मत पर रो रहे हैं।  
*ve apni:/ \*unki: kismat par ro raha: h̥e.*  
 they refl/\*selfs luck on cry-prog are  
 They repent on their own work.

The use of non-reflexive pronouns yield well-formed sentences provided the subject and possessive pronoun are not co-referential.

17. वह (i) उसकी (j) कमीज़ सी रहा है।  
*vah (i) uski: (j) kami:z si: raha: h̥e.*

he his shirt stitch-prog is  
He (i) is stitching his (j) shirt.

18. वह (i) उनके (j) बच्चे पढ़ा रहा है।  
*vah (i) unke (j) bacce parha: raha: he.*  
he their children teach-prog is  
He(i) is teaching their (j) children.

Similar to nominative and ergative subjects, the dative subject also controls the possessive reflexive अपना *apna*:. The possessive structure also permits reduplicated reflexives.

19. वे अपना अपना काम कर रहे हैं।  
*ve apna: apna: ka:m kar rahe h̄e.*  
they refl work do-prog are  
They are doing their respective jobs.

The scope of reflexivity is usually restricted to the clause in which it is used.

20. मोहन ने कहा कि वह /\*अपने आप समय पर आएगा।  
*mohan ne kaha: ki vah/\*apne a:p samay par a:yega:.*  
Mohan-erg said that he/\*refl time at come-fut  
Mohan (i) said that he (i) would come on time.

21. मोहन ने पूछा कि उसकी/\*अपनी पत्नी कब आएगी।  
*mohan ne pu:cha: ki uski:/\*apni: patni: kab a:yegi:.*  
Mohan-erg asked that his/\*refl wife when come-fut  
Mohan (i) asked when his (i) wife would come.

Sentences (20) and (21) show that reflexivization does not go down into subordinate clauses. Notice that reflexivization does not always meet clausemate constraint, as shown in (22).

22. अमित मोहन को अपना शत्रु मानता है।  
*amit mohan ko apna: šatru: ma:nta: he.*  
Amit Mohan-dat refl enemy consider-ptc is  
Amit (i) considers Mohan (j) his (i,j) enemy.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

Sentence (22) is ambiguous because the reflexive pronoun is co-referential with the subject of the subordinate as well as with the subject of the subordinate clause. It has two readings.

- 22a. अमित (i) मानता है [कि मोहन अमित (j) का शत्रु है] |  
*amit (i) ma:n̥ta: he [ki mohan amit (i) ka: śatru: hε].*  
Amit consider-ptc is that Mohan Amit of enemy is  
Amit considers Mohan Amits enemy.
- 22b. अमित मानता है [कि मोहन (i) मोहन (j) का शत्रु है] |  
*amit ma:n̥ta: he [ki mohan (i) mohan (i) ka: śatru: hε].*  
Amit consier-prog that Mohan Mohans enemy is  
Amit considers Mohan Mohans enemy.

Here, the reflexive pronoun cannot occur in (22a), but it can occur in sentence (22b) due to its clause boundaries. It shows that the finite subordinate clause becomes finite and is raised to the object position of the matrix sentence.

Reflexive relations occur within nominalized clauses.

23. उसका स्वयं को मारना ठीक नहीं था।  
*uska: svayam ko ma:rna: thi:kh nahī: tha:.*  
his self kill-inf proper neg was  
His killing himself was not proper.

Reflexive relations cannot exist within an ordinary noun phrase. It is possible to have reflexive antecedents under two conditions: (i) when the logical antecedent is deleted at the surface level and (ii) when the antecedent is either generic or contextually implied.

(i) Deletion of an underlying antecedent

24. तुम अपना कमरा साफ़ करो।  
*tum apna: kamra: sa:f karo.*  
you refl room clean do  
Clean your room.

- 24a. अपना कमरा साफ़ करो।  
*apna: kamra: sa:f karo.*  
refl room clean do  
Clean your room.

(ii) Generic/implied antecedent

25. अपना समय नष्ट करना ठीक नहीं है।  
*apna: samay naṣṭ karna: thi:k nahi: hε.*  
refl time waste do-inf good neg is  
It is not proper (for someone) to waste ones time.

Notice that in (25) the generic antecedent someone is implied.

#### 4.3.8. Reciprocals

The primary way of expressing a reciprocal relationship is the expression एक दूसरे को *ek du:sre ko* ‘to one another’. It is the combination of the cardinal एक ‘one’ and the oblique case form of the ordinal दूसरा *du:sra:* followed by को *ko*. Reciprocals can also be formed with आपस में *a:pas mē* ‘mutual’. The scope of reciprocity is restricted to the clause.

1. हमने एक दूसरे के साथ बात की।  
*hamne ek du:sre ke sa:th ba:t ki:.*  
we-erg one another-obl with talk did  
We talked to each other.
2. उन्होंने एक दूसरे की बहुत सहायता की।  
*unhōne ek du:sre ki: bahut saha:yta: ki:.*  
they-erg one another-obl very help did  
They helped each other very much.

In these sentences, the scope of the reciprocal expression does not extend to the matrix subject.

Reciprocals usually require an antecedent subject. They may be used as a direct object, an indirect object, an adverb, or a possessive adjective in different types of constructions.

##### *Direct object*

3. वे एक दूसरे से कई बार मिले।  
*ve ek du:sre se kai: ba:r mile.*  
they one another-obl many times lot-abl met  
They met each other many times.

## **4. SYNTAX**

---

### ***Indirect object***

4. उन्होंने एक दूसरे को उपहार दिए।  
*unhōne ek du:sre ko upha:r diye.*  
they-erg one another-obl presents gave  
They gave presents to each other.

### ***Adverb***

5. वे एक दूसरे पर ज़ोर से चिल्ला रहे हैं।  
*ve ek du:sre par zor se cilla: rahe h̄e.*  
they one another-obl with shout-prog are  
They are shouting at each other.

### ***Possessive adjective***

6. हम एक दूसरे के घर नहीं जाते।  
*ham ek du:sre ke ghar nahī: ja:te.*  
we one another-poss home neg go-ptc  
We don't visit each others houses.
7. वे आपस में बात नहीं करते (हैं)।  
*ve a:pas mē ba:t nahī: karte (h̄e).*  
they among themselves talk neg do-pre (are)  
They do not talk to each other.

The same range of reciprocals occur in nominalized clauses.

8. उनका एक दूसरे के घर न जाना ठीक नहीं है।  
*unka: ek du:sre ke ghar na ja:na: thi:k nahī: he.*  
their one another-gen house not go-inf good neg is  
Their not visiting each others homes is not right.
9. उनकी एक दूसरे की टोपियाँ बराबर नहीं हैं।  
*unki: ek du:sre ki: topiyā: bara:bar nahī: h̄e.*  
their one another-poss caps equal/fit neg are  
Each others caps do not fit them.

It is possible to have reciprocal structures without antecedent, if the antecedent is understood either syntactically, as in the case of imperative constructions, or contextually.

10. एक दूसरे के साथ बातें मत करो।  
*ek du:sre ke sa:th ba:tē mat karo.*  
 one another-obl with talk don't do  
 Don't talk to each other.
11. अमित के दो बेटे हैं। वे एक दूसरे के साथ हमेशा लड़ते हैं।  
*amit ke do bētē h̄e. ve ek du:sre ke sa:th hameša: larte h̄e.*  
 Amit-gen two sons are they one-another-gen with always  
 fight-pr  
 Amit has two sons. (They) always quarrel with each other.

#### 4.3.9. Equatives

Like comparatives, there are two types of equatives: (i) syntactic and (ii) phrasal. The former type is composed of two clauses called as इतना *itna*: ‘this much’ and उतना *utna*: ‘that much’ clauses. The main difference between these clauses and the comparative clause is that in equative clauses, an equative adjective or adverb is used with the subject and the standard of comparison. A comparative sentence can be transformed into an equative sentence by the deletion of the negative particle.

1. अजय उतना चालाक है जितना उसका भाई (है)।  
*ajay utna: ca:la:k h̄e jitna: uska: bha:i: (h̄e).*  
 Ajay that much-cor clever as much-rel his brother  
 Ajay is as clever as his brother.

Equative structures can also be formed by using the clause जैसा *jesa*: as/which way and वैसा *vesa*: like/that way.

2. जैसा अजय चालाक है, उतना उसका भाई (भी) है।  
*jesa: ajay ca:la:k h̄e, utna: uska: bha:i: (bhi:) h̄e.*  
 as-rel Ajay clever is that much his brother (also) is  
 Ajay is as clever as his brother.

Phrasal type equatives are formed using adjectives such as बराबर *bara:bar*/समान *sama:n* ‘equal’, and जैसा *jesa*: ‘like’. The forms agree with the standard of comparison in number and gender.

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

3. विजय अपने पिताजी के बराबर/ समान लंबा है।  
*vijay apne pita:ji: ke bara:bar/sama:n lamba: hε.*  
Vijay selfs father-gen like tall is  
Vijay is as tall as his father.
4. ये दो भाई अपनी माँ जैसे सीधे हैं।  
*ye do bha:i: apni: mā: jese si:dhe h̄ε.*  
these two brothers selfs mother like simple are  
These two brothers are as simple as their mother.
5. यह लड़की अपनी बहिन जैसी सुंदर है।  
*yeh larki: apni: bahan jesi: sundar hε.*  
this girl selfs sister like beautiful is  
This girl is as beautiful as her sister.
6. ये दो बहिनें अपनी माँ की तरह सुंदर हैं।  
*ye do bahn̄e apni: mā: ki: tarah sundar h̄ε.*  
these two sisters selfs mother like beautiful is  
These two sisters are as beautiful as their mother.
7. विजय बच्चे के समान है।  
*vijay bacce ke sama:n hε.*  
Vijay child-gen equal is  
Vijay is like a child.
8. उमा अनु के बराबर लंबी है।  
*uma: anu ke bara:bar lambi: hε.*  
Uma Anu-gen equal tall is  
Uma is as tall as Anu.
- Notice that a copular/equational sentence employs only the plural adjectival forms of एक जैसे *ek jese*/एक जैसी *ek jaisi*: that agree with the number and gender of the subject of comparison.
9. अजय और विजय एक जैसे ही हैं।  
*ajay or vijay ek jese hi: h̄ε.*  
Ajay and Vijay alike emp are  
Ajay and Vijay are alike.

10. उमा और अनु एक जैसी हैं।  
*uma: or anu ek jesī: h̄e.*  
 Uma and Anu alike are  
 Uma and Anu are alike.

Equative adjectives may be modified by adding the particle –ही -*hi:* to these forms: जैसे ही *jesē hi:*; जैसी ही *jesī hi:* ‘alike’. The particle –ही -*hi:* is also added to singular forms for emphasis as well.

11. विजय अजय जैसा ही है।  
*vijay ajay jesā: hi: h̄e.*  
 Vijay Ajay like emp is  
 Vijay is like Ajay.
12. उमा अनु जैसी ही है।  
*uma: anu jesī: hi: h̄e.*  
 Uma Anu alike emp is  
 Uma is like Anu.

A number of fixed adjectival phrases are used in Hindi.

13. फूल सा/ जैसा कोमल  
*phu:l sa:/jesā: komal*  
 flower like delicate  
 as delicate as a flower
14. पथर सा दिल  
*patthar sa: dil*  
 stone like heart  
 a stone-hearted (person)

It is possible to delete the identical elements in equative structures. Deletion is always forward and not backward.

15. उमा उतनी लंबी है जितनी (लंबी) अनु (है)।  
*uma: utni: lambi: h̄e jitni: (lambi:) anu (h̄e).*  
 Uma cor tall is rel (tall) Uma (is)  
 Uma is as tall as Anu.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

The bracketed elements can be deleted to yield (15a).

- 15a. उमा उतनी लंबी है जितनी अनु।  
*uma utni: lambi: hε jitni: anu.*  
Uma is as tall as Anu.

The backward deletion generates ungrammatical sentences, as (15b).

- 15b. \*उमा उतनी Ø Ø जितनी लंबी है।  
\**uma: utni: Ø Ø jitni: lambi: anu hε.*

Correlative equatives are formed by syntactic strategy only. They are formed by using the correlative marker उतना *utna*:

### 4.3.10. Comparison

Comparison is usually expressed by sentential, phrasal, and morphological strategies. Two types of comparative structures are very common, phrasal comparative structures and non-phrasal ones. Both use postpositions followed by the standards of comparison. Sentential comparison is carried out by the use of two finite clauses introduced by the relative marker उतना *utna*: ‘as much as’ and the correlative marker जितना *jitna*: ‘that much’.

1. वह उतना सीधा नहीं है [जितना सीधा उसका भाई है]।  
*vah utna: si:dha: nahī: hε[jitna: si:dha: uska: bha:i: hε]*  
he is not that-cor simple as much as-rel simple his brother is  
He is not as simple as his brother.

The relative clause can be placed at the sentence initial position as well.

- 1a. [जितना सीधा उसका भाई है] वह उतना सीधा नहीं है।  
[*jitna: si:dha: uska: bha:i: hε*] *vah utna: si:dha: nahī: hε*
2. वह जितना परिश्रम करता है उतना पैसा नहीं कमाता।  
*vah jitna: pariśram karta: hε utna: pesa: nahī: kama:ta:*  
he as much hard work do-ptc is that much money earn-ptc neg  
is  
He doesn't earn as much as he works.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

The relative clause can follow the correlative clause.

- 2a. वह उतना पैसा नहीं कमाता, जितना परिश्रम करता है।  
*vah utna: pesa: nahī: kama:ta:, jitna: pariśram karta: hε*

Most of the morphological markers of comparison are borrowed from Perso-Arabic sources. They are not very productive in Hindi.

3. उसका वहाँ जाना बेहतर रहेगा।  
*uska: vahā: ja:na: behtar rahega:*  
his there go-inf better remain-fut  
It is better for him to go there.
4. यह उसके लिए बदतरीन बात है।  
*yah uske liye badtari:n ba:t hε.*  
this is he-for worst matter is  
This is the worst thing for him.

Phrasal comparison is expressed by a postposition associated with the standard of comparison. The postposition से *se* is added to the standard of comparison.

5. अमित अनु से लंबा है।  
*amit anu: se lamba: hε.*  
Amit Anu than tall is  
Amit is taller than Anu.
6. अनु उमा से गोरी है।  
*anu uma: se gori: hε.*  
Anu Uma than fair-complexioned is  
Anu is more fair-complexioned than Anu.

The phrasal comparison is also expressed by the use of the phrase के मुकाबले में *ke muka:ble mē* ‘in comparison with’ following the standard of comparison.

7. विजय के मुकाबले में राज पढ़ने में कमज़ोर है।  
*vijay ke muka:ble mē ra:j par:hne mē kamzor hε.*  
Vijay-gen comarison in Raj studies-obl in weak is  
Raj is weak in his studies in comparison to Vijay.

#### 4. SYNTAX

---

8. वह पेड़ इस पेड़ के मुकाबले में लंबा नहीं है।  
*vah per is per ke muka:ble mē lamba: nahī: hε.*  
that tree this tree-gen comparison in tall neg is  
That tree is not taller than this tree.
9. उस लड़की के मुकाबले में यह लड़की बुद्धिमान है।  
*us larki: ke muka:ble mē yah larki: buddhima:n hε.*  
that girl-gen comparison-obl in this girl wise is  
This girl is wiser than that girl.

Adjectives used in a comparison can be modified by the adverb of degree अधिक *adhik* more.

10. यह घर उस घर से अधिक बड़ा है।  
*yeh ghar us ghar se adhik bara: hε.*  
this house that-obl house comparison more big is  
This house is bigger than that one.
11. वह पुस्तक इस पुस्तक से अधिक अच्छी है।  
*vah pustak is pustak se adhik acchi: hε.*  
that book this book comparison more good is  
That book is better than this one.

When two sentences are joined, the identical elements in the second conjunct are usually deleted. Whereas forward deletion is possible, backward deletion is not.

12. अमित उतना चालाक नहीं है जितना (चालाक) उसका भाई है।  
*amit utna: ca:la:k nahī: hε jitna: (ca:la:k) uska: bha:i: hε.*  
Amit that much clever neg is as much (clever) his brother is  
Amit is not as clever as his brother.
- 12a. \*अमित उतना नहीं है जितना उसका भाई चालाक है।  
*\*amit utna: nahī: hε jitna: uska: bha:i: ca:la:k hε*

The deletion of the first occurrence of चालाक *ca:la:k* in sentence (12a) results in the sentence being grammatically incorrect. The relative correlative markers जितना *jitna:* उतना *utna:* cannot be deleted under any circumstance.

### 4.3.11. Superlatives

Superlatives are usually expressed by substituting सब से अधिक *sab se adhik* ‘most’, सर्वोत्तम *sarvotam* ‘best’, or हर एक में से *har ek mē se* ‘out of all’ for the standard of comparison. Superlative constructions are also formed by the use of कोई दूसरा *koi: du:sra:* ‘anyone else’ plus the negative particle.

1. अमित कक्षा में सब से अधिक बुद्धिमान है।  
*amit kakṣa: mē sab se adhik buddhima:n hε.*  
 Amit class in out of all more wise is  
 Amit is wisest of all in his class.
2. उमा सब से अधिक तेज़ दैड़ती है।  
*uma: sab se adhik tez dṛ̥ti: hε.*  
 Uma out of all more fast run-pr is  
 Uma runs faster than everyone else.
3. विजय से चतुर और कोई दूसरा नहीं है।  
*vijay se catur or koi: du:sra: nahī: hε.*  
 Vijay than clever anyone else neg is  
 No one else is more clever than Vijay.

Superlative constructions are also formed by substituting an adjective of comparison for सब से अधिक *sab se adhik*. It also serves as the standard of comparison.

4. वह बड़ी से बड़ी समस्या आसनी से हल करता है।  
*vah bari: se bari: samasya: a:sa:ni: se hal karta: hε.*  
 he big-f more big-f problem easy with solve do-ptc is  
 He solves the biggest problems easily.
5. हमारे पास अच्छे से अच्छा कपड़ा यही है।  
*hama:re pa:s acche se accha: kapra: yahi: hε.*  
 we-obl with good-obl than good cloth this is  
 This is the best cloth we have.

Notice that in these constructions, the first part of the phrase is put in the oblique case as it is followed by से *se*.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

### 4.3.12. Coordination

Sentence coordination is marked mainly by the use of the conjunction morphemes और *or* ‘and’ या *ya:* ‘or’, and मगर *magar/par* पर/किंतु *kintu* ‘but’.

1. मैं दिल्ली गया और मेरा भाई आगरा (गया)।  
*mē dilli: gaya: aur mera: bha:i: agra: (gaya:).*  
I Delhi went and my brother Agra went  
I went to Delhi and my brother went to Agra.
2. सोहन मोहन के घर गया मगर/ पर/ किंतु मोहन  
*sohan mohan ke ghar gaya: magar/par/kintu mohan*  
Sohan Mohan gen home went but Mohan  
घर पर नहीं था।  
*ghar par nahī: tha:.*  
home at neg was  
Sohan went to Mohans home, but Mohan was not there.

The conjunction morpheme और *or* ‘and’ can be followed by another particle, भी *bhi:* ‘also’.

3. मोहन कल बनारस जाएगा और सोहन भी (जाएगा)।  
*mohan kal bana:ras ja:yega: or sohan bhi: (ja:yega:).*  
Mohan tomorrow Banaras go-fut and Sohan also go-fut  
Mohan will go to Banaras tomorrow and Mohan will also go.

The conjunction compound morphemes या *ya:* -या *-ya:* ‘either – or’ are also used in sentence conjunctions.

4. या आज वर्षा होगी या हिमपात होगा।  
*ya: a:j varṣa: hogi: ya: himpa:t hoga:.*  
either today rain fall-fut or snowfall be-fut  
Either it rains today or it will snow.

Notice that the word order of the constituent sentences undergo a change when conjoined by the use of the conjunction morphemes या *ya:* -या *-ya:.* Sentence (4) is obtained by conjoining (4a) and (4b).

- 4a. आज वर्षा होगी ।  
*a:j varṣa: hogi:.*  
 It will rain today.

- 4b. आज हिमपात होगा ।  
*a:j himpa:t hoga:.*  
 It will snow today.

And coordination is commonly expressed by the conjunction marker और *or*. It can join two or more sentences or phrases. This conjunction morpheme occurs before the last conjunct.

5. शीला किताब पढ़ रही है और उमा चिट्ठी लिख रही है ।  
*ši:la: kita:b parh rahi: hε or uma: ciṭṭhi: likh rahi: hε.*  
 Shiela book read-prog is and Uma letter write write-prog is  
 Shiela is reading a book and Uma is writing a letter.
6. अमर खेल रहा है, मोहन गाने सुन रहा है और  
*amar khel raha: hε, mohan ga:ne sun raha: hε, or*  
 Amar play-prog is Mohan songs listen-prog is and  
 शाम टी वी देख रहा है ।  
*ša:m ṭi:vi: dekh raha: hε.*  
 Sham TV see-prog is  
 Amar is playing, Mohan is listening to songs, and Sham is  
 watching television.
- 5a. \*और शीला किताब पढ़ रही है उमा पत्र लिख रही है ।  
*\*or ši:la: kita:b parh rahi: hε, uma: patr likh rahi: hε.*
- 6a. \*अमर खेल रहा है और मोहन गाने सुन रहा है, शाम टी वी देख रहा है ।  
*\*amar khel raha: hε or mohan ga:ne sun raha: hε, ša:m ṭi:vi: dekh raha: hε.*

The misplacement of the coordination conjunction morpheme और *or* renders the sentences (5a) and (6a) ungrammatical.

Coordination does not merely involve juxtaposition of two or more independent sentences. There are various syntactic and semantic constraints on the construction of coordinate structures. In general, coordinate sentences express contrast, cumulative effect, cause and effect, sequential action, and contingency. Again, the order of the

## **4. SYNTAX**

---

conjuncts is interchangeable if a coordinate sentence expresses contrast or cumulative effect. Consider the following examples of various types of coordinate structures as listed above.

### ***Contrast***

7. यह लड़का मोटा है और वह लड़का दुवला ।  
*yeh larka: moṭa: hε or vah larka: dubla:*  
this boy fat is and that boy slim  
This boy is fat and that boy is slim.
- 7a. वह लड़का दुवला है और याह लड़का मोटा ।  
*vah larka: dubla: hε or yah larka: moṭa:*  
That boy is slim and this boy is fat.

### ***Cumulative effect***

8. वह रोज़ व्यायाम करता है और सैर करता है ।  
*vah roz vya:ya:m karta: hε aur ser karta: hε.*  
he daily exercise do-ptc is and walk do-ptc is  
He exercises daily and goes for a walk (daily).
- 8a. वह रोज़ व्यायाम करता है और सैर भी ।  
*vah roz vya:ya:m karta: hε or ser bhi:*  
he daily exercise do-ptc is and walk also  
He exercises daily and goes for a walk, too.
9. वह दवाई खाता है और आराम करता है ।  
*vah dava:i: kha:ta: hε or a:ra:m karta: hε.*  
he medicine eat-ptc is and rest do-ptc is  
He is taking medicine and relaxing.
- 9a. वह आराम करता है और दवाई खाता है ।  
*vah a:ra:m karta: hε or dava:i: kha:ta: hε.*  
He is relaxing and taking medicine.

### ***Cause and effect***

10. उसने दवाई खाई और वह स्वस्थ हुआ ।  
*usne dava:i: kha:i: or vah svasth hua:*  
he-erg medicine ate and he healthy became  
He took medicine and recovered from the illness.

- 10a. \*वह स्वस्थ हुआ और उसने दवाई खाई।  
*\*vah svasth hua: or usne dava:i: kha:i:.*
11. चोर को गोली लगी और वह आहत हुआ।  
*cor ko goli: lagi: or vah a:hat hua:.*  
 thief-dat bullet struck and he injured was  
 The thief was hit by a bullet and he was injured.
- 11a. \*चोर आहत हुआ और उसको गोली लगी।  
*\*cor a:hat hua: aur usko goli: lagi:.*

**Sequential action**

12. वह आया और हमें घर आने के लिए न्योता दिया।  
*vah a:ya: or hamē ghar a:ne ke liye nyota: diya:.*  
 he came and we-obl home come-inf-obl invitation gave  
 He came and invited us to visit his home.
- 12a. \*उसने हमें घर आने के लिए न्योता दिया और आया।  
*\*usne hamē ghar a:ne ke liye nyota: diya: or a:ya:.*
13. मोहन घर आया और उसने दरवाजे का ताला खोला।  
*mohan ghar a:ya: or usne darva:ze ka: tala: khola:.*  
 Mohan home came and he-erg door-gen lock opened  
 Mohan came home and unlocked the door.
- 13a. \*मोहन ने दरवाजे का ताला खोला और घर आया।  
*\*mohan ne darva:ze ka: ta:la: khola: or ghar a:ya:.*
14. तुम एक अच्छी लड़की ढूँढ़ो और विवाह करो।  
*tum ek acchi: larki: dhū:dho or viva:h karo.*  
 you-fem one good girl search and marriage perform  
 You find a good girl and get married.
- 14a. तुम विवाह करो और एक अच्छी लड़की ढूँढ़ो।  
*\*tum viva:h karo or ek acchi: larki: dhū:dho.*

Notice that sentences (7), (8), and (9) permit the reverse order of (7a), (8a), and (9a) respectively. In sentences (10), (11), (12), (13) and (14), the reverse order of the conjuncts results in ungrammatical sentences as shown above because of the constraints on cause and

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

effect, sequential action, and contingency the conjoined structures are marked for. The coordinate sentences (10-14) can be paraphrased to indicate that they are related with the subordination process as well. Consider the following sentences.

- 10b. वह दवा खाकर स्वस्थ हुआ।  
*vah dava: kha:kar swasth hua:.*  
he medicine take-cp healthy became  
He recovered (from illness) after taking the medicine.
- 11b. चोर गोली लगने से आहत हुआ।  
*cor goli: lagn se a:hat hua:.*  
thief bullet hit-inf-obl with injured became  
The thief was injured by a bullet.
- 12b. उसने आकर हमें घर आने का न्योता दिया।  
*usne a:kar hamē ghar a:ne ka: nyota: diya:.*  
he-erg come-cp us-dat home go-inf-gen invitation gave  
On arrival, he invited us to his home.
- 13b. मोहन ने घर आकर दरवाजे का ताला खोला।  
*mohan ne a:kar darva:ze ka: ta:la: khola:.*  
Mohan-erg came-cp door-gen lock opened  
On arrival, Mohan unlocked the door.
- 14b. एक अच्छी लड़की ढूँढ़कर तुम विवाह करो।  
*ek acchi: larki: dhū:dhkar tum viva:h karo.*  
a good girl find-cp you marriage do-imp  
Find a good girl and get married.

In the above sentences, cause and effect, sequential action, and contingency are expressed without using conjunction morphemes. The paraphrases indicate that the first conjuncts of the sentences represent the adverbial complements of the second conjuncts.

Besides conjoining sentences, the coordinating conjunction marker *or* can be used to coordinate nouns (subjects, direct and indirect objects), verbs, adjectives, and adverbs.

***Coordinate nominal subjects***

15. लड़का और लड़की खेल रहे हैं।  
*larka: or larki: khel rahe h̄e.*  
 boy and girl play-prog are  
 A boy and a girl are playing.

***Coordinate verbs***

16. शीला ने कपड़े धोए और खाना पकाया।  
*ši:la: ne kapre dhoye or kha:na: paka:ya:.*  
 Shiela-erg clothes washed and food cooked  
 Shiela washed clothes and cooked meals.

***Coordinate adjectives***

17. शीला लंबी और गोरी है।  
*ši:la: lambi: aur gori: h̄e.*  
 Shiela tall and fair complexioned is  
 Shiela is tall and fair-complexioned.

***Coordinate adverbials***

18. मैं कल और परसों घर नहीं जाऊँगा।  
*m̄e kal or parsō ghar nahī: ja:ū:ga:.*  
 I tomorrow and day after tomorrow home neg go-fut  
 I will not go home tomorrow nor the day after tomorrow.

The coordination of two noun phrases yields a plural noun phrase and therefore, verb agreement is affected. In the case of coordinate subjects, the verb takes a masculine plural concord, whereas, in the case of coordinate objects, the verb agrees with the nearest object.

19. मोहन और शीला बाज़ार गए।  
*mohan or ši:la: ba:za:r gaye.*  
 Mohan and Shiela market went-mp  
 Mohan and Shiela went to the market.
20. मैंने सेब और ख़ोबानियाँ ख़रीदीं।  
*m̄ne seb or xoba:niyā: xari:di:*  
 I-erg apples-mp and apricots-fp bought-fs  
 I bought apples and apricots.

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

But coordination is expressed by the conjunction marker पर *par*/मगर *magar*/किंतु *kintu* ‘but’. This marker is placed in the beginning of the second conjunct.

21. मोहन अध्यापक है, मगर वह पढ़ाता नहीं।  
*mohan adhya:pak hε, magar vah parha:ta: nahī:*.  
Mohan is a teacher, but he teaches neg  
Mohan is a teacher, but he does not teach.
22. उमा अनपढ है, पर वह बड़ी बुद्धिमान है।  
*uma: anparh hε, par vah bari: budhima:n hε.*  
Uma is illiterate, but she very wise is  
Uma is illiterate, but she is very wise.

In sentence coordination, as mentioned earlier, the conjunct marker और *or* occurs before the second or the last conjunct. The conjunct marker पर *par* precedes the second or subsequent coordinated sentences. Among the disjunctive markers, या *ya*: can precede the first as well as subsequent disjuncts.

23. या वह दिल्ली जाएगा, या आगरा।  
*ya: vah dilli: ja:yega:, ya: a:gra:.*  
either he Delhi go-fut or Agra  
Either he will go to Delhi or Agra.

But coordination is usually used with adjectives and adverbials.

24. मीरा बुद्धिमान है पर सुस्त है।  
*mi:ra: budhima:n hε par sust hε.*  
Mira is intelligent but lazy is  
Mira is intelligent but lazy.
25. वह सैर करता है पर केवल शाम को।  
*vah ser karta: hε par keval ša:m ko.*  
she walk do-ptc is but only evening-loc at  
He goes for a walk, but only in the evenings.

But coordination of nouns and verbs may involve a negative particle preceding or following the adversative conjuncts.

26. अमर चालाक लड़का है पर सोहन नहीं है।  
*amar ca:la:k larka: he par sohan nahī: he.*  
 Amar clever boy is but Sohan neg is  
 Amar is a clever boy but Sohan is not.
27. हमने उसकी सुंदरता के बारे में सुना है पर  
*hamne uski: sundarta: ke ba:re mē suna: he par*  
 we-erg his beauty about heard but  
 कभी देखा नहीं है।  
*kabhi: dekha: nahī: he.*  
 but never use him saw neg is  
 We have heard about her beauty, but have never seen her.

28. वह पत्र नहीं लिखेगा पर टेलीफोन ज़रूर करेगा।  
*vah patr nahī: likhega: par t̪eliphon zaru:r karega:.*  
 He letter neg write-fut but telephone certainly do-fut  
 He will not write a letter but hell certainly call.

Or coordination uses the disjunctive markers *ya:* or and वरना *varna:/* अपि तु *apitu* ‘or’ to conjoin nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and verbs.

29. मोहन या सोहन कपड़े सिएगा।  
*mohan ya: sohan kapṛe siyega:.*  
 Mohan or Sohan clothes stitch-fut  
 Mohan or Sohan will stitch the clothes.
30. उमा आज बाज़ार जाएगी या कल।  
*uma: a:j ba:za:r ja:yegi: ya: kal.*  
 Uma today market go-fut or tomorrow  
 Uma will go to the market today or tomorrow.
31. कमीज़ के लिए नीला या लाल कपड़ा खरीदिए।  
*kami:z ke liye ni:la: ya: la:l kapṛa: xari:diye.*  
 shirt for blue or red cloth buy  
 Buy blue or red cloth for the shirt.
32. (आप) सेब खाएंगे या केला?  
*(a:p) seb kha:yēge ya: kela:?*  
 (you-p) apple eat-fut or banana  
 Would you like to take an apple or a banana?

## 4. SYNTAX

---

### 4.3.12.1. Coordination and Accompaniment

Accompaniment is expressed by the postposition साथ *sa:th* with or in the company of. It can also be expressed by the conjunction morpheme और *or* and.

33. सोहन और मोहन आए।  
*sohan or mohan a:ye.*  
Sohan and Mohan came  
Sohan and Mohan came.

- 33a. सोहन मोहन के साथ आया।  
*sohan mohan ke sa:th a:ya:*  
Sohan Mohan with came  
Sohan came with Mohan.

Sentence (33) is an example of coordination, whereas sentence (33a) denotes accompaniment. Notice that the accompaniment uses a singular verb as in (33a). A single unit cannot be formed using accompaniment, but can be formed by using coordination. The term दोनों *donō* ‘both’ can, therefore, be used with coordination, but not with accompaniment.

- 33b. सोहन और मोहन दोनों आए।  
*sohan or mohan donō a:ye.*  
Sohan and Mohan both came  
Sohan and Mohan both came.

- 33c. \*सोहन मोहन के साथ आया दोनों।  
\**sohan mohan ke sa:th a:ya: donō.*

The unity of the conjoined phrase cannot be distorted, and this unity is expressed only by coordination and not by accompaniment.

- 33d. बेटा पिता के साथ आया।  
*bēta: pita: ke sa:th a:ya:.*  
son father-obl with came  
The son came with the father.

- 33e. बेटा और पिता घर आए।  
*beṭa: or pita: ghar a:ye.*  
 The son and father came home.
- 33f. \*बेटा घर और पिता आए।  
*\*beṭa: ghar or pita: a:ye.*
- 33g. \*बेटा और घर पिता आए।  
*\*beṭa: or ghar pita: a:ye.*

This explains the ungrammaticalness of sentences (33f) and (33g). The commutative postposition के साथ *ke sa:th* follows the noun of accompaniment. It is possible to form coordinate sentences using the co-ordinate conjunction और *or* the comitative postposition साथ *sa:th* in one of the conjuncts.

34. अजीत और मोहन अमर के साथ जाएँगे।  
*aji:t or mohan amar ke sa:th ja:yēge.*  
 Ajit and Mohan Amar-obl with go-fut  
 Ajit and Mohan will accompany Amar.
- 34a. अमर के साथ अजीत और मोहन जाएँगे।  
*amar ke sa:th aji:t or mohan ja:yēge.*  
 Ajit and Mohan will accompany Amar.

#### 4.3.12.2. Structural Constraints

There are various structural constraints in coordination. In general, members in the same class can be conjoined but not those that belong to different classes.

##### *Adjective and noun*

35. \*वह सुंदर और लड़की है।  
*\*vah sundar or larķi: hε.*  
 she is beautiful and girl.
- 35a. वह सुंदर और बुद्धिमान लड़की है।  
*vah sundar or budhima:n larķi: hε.*  
 she beautiful and intelligent girl is  
 She is a beautiful and an intelligent girl.

## 4. SYNTAX

---

### Adjective and adverb

36. \*यह कपड़ा अच्छा और कल है।  
\*yeh kapra: accha: or kal he.  
this cloth good and yesterday is
- 36a. यह कपड़ा अच्छा और सस्ता है।  
yeh kapra: accha: or sasta: he.  
this cloth good and inexpensive is  
This cloth is good and inexpensive.

As exemplified above in sentences (35) and (36), it is not possible to conjoin adjectives and nouns, nor adjectives and adverbs. Other types of constraints are indicated below.

Present and past participles and adjectives can be conjoined using coordinate conjunction morphemes.

37. अमित पढ़ा-लिखा और शरीफ लड़का है।  
Amit parha: - likha: or šari:ph larka: he.  
Amit educated and gentle boy is  
Amit is an educated and a gentle boy.

Similarly, it is possible to conjoin the conjuncts with adverbial construction and an adjective phrase.

38. मेरा मित्र शहर में रहता है और बहुत चालाक है।  
mera: mitr šahar mē rahta: he or bahut ca:la:k he.  
my friend city in live-ptc is and very clever is  
My friend lives in the city and is clever.

A relative clause and an adjective phrase cannot be conjoined.

- 38a. \*जो शहर में रहता है और बहुत चालाक मित्र है।  
\*jo šahar mē rahta: he aur bahut ca:la:k mitr he.  
who city-abl is live-pr is and clever friend tomorrow

Nouns and nominalized constructions can be conjoined, provided the semantic and pragmatic conditions are met.

39. उसे उपन्यास पढ़ना और नाटक देखना पसंद है।  
use upanya:s parhna: or na:tak dekhna: pasand he.

he-dat novel read-inf and play watch-inf like is  
He likes to read novels and watch plays.

40. मैंने उसे और उसके घर को सपने में देखा।  
*m̥ne use or uske ghar ko sapne m̥ dekha:*  
 I-erg he-obl and his house-dat dream-obl in saw  
 I saw him and his house in the dream.

It is possible to coordinate related adverbials in a coordinated structure.

41. वह हँसते - हँसते और जल्दी हर एक काम करता है।  
*vah h̥aste - h̥aste or jaldi: har ek ka:m karta: hε.*  
 he laugh-ptc and quickly every work do-ptc is  
 He gives his opinion smilingly and quickly.

Time adverbials and manner adverbials cannot be conjoined.

42. \*वह कल रोया और ज़ोर-ज़ोर से।  
*\*vah kal roya: or zor - zor se*  
 he yesterday wept and loudly

Active and passive verbs can be coordinated provided they are appropriate in a pragmatic situation. In Hindi, passive constructions can mean capability as well.

43. अनु ने सेब खरीदे और उससे खाए नहीं गए।  
*anu ne seb xari:de aur usse kha:ye nahī: gaye.*  
 Anu-erg apples bought and she-pass eat-pass neg aux-pass  
 Anu bought apples and she was not able to eat.

44. मैंने यह काम किया और उससे नहीं किया गया।  
*m̥ne yeh ka:m kiya: or usse nahī: kiya: gaya:.*  
 I-erg this work did and he-pass neg do-pa went-pass  
 I did this work and it could not be done by him.

Simple verbs can be conjoined with infinitives in a coordinate structure.

45. मैंने यह नावल पढ़ा और इसे पढ़ना आसान है नहीं।  
*m̥ne yeh na:val parha: or ise parhna: a:sa:n hε nahī:.*

#### **4. SYNTAX**

---

I-erg this novel read and this-obl read-inf easy neg is  
I read this novel and it is not easy to read.

It is also possible to conjoin different types of verbs.

46. मेरा हँसना और हँसाना किसी को पसंद नहीं आया ।  
*mera: h̄asna: or h̄asa:na: kisi: ko pasand nahī: a:ya:.*  
my laugh-inf and laugh-caus anyone-dat like neg came  
My laughing and making others laugh was not liked by anyone.
47. गुस्सा आना और गुस्सा प्रकट करना अच्छा नहीं ।  
*gussa: a:na: or gussa: prakaṭ karna: accha: nahī:.*  
anger come-inf and anger express do-inf good neg  
It is not good to be angry nor to express ones anger.

When two sentences are conjoined, any number of elements, including verbs, can be deleted under identity. The deletion can be both forward as well as backward. However, backward deletion is less frequent than forward deletion.

48. अमित ने किताब खरीदी और रजत ने कमीज़ ।  
*amit ne kita:b xari:di: or rajat ne kami:z.*  
Amit-erg book bought and Rajat-erg shirt  
Amit bought a book and Rajat a shirt.
- 48a. अमित ने किताब Ø और रजत ने कमीज़ खरीदी ।  
*amit-ne kita:b ø or rajat ne kami:z xari:di:.*  
Amit-erg book ø and Rajat-erg shirt bought  
Amit bought a book and Rajat bought a shirt.

The coordinating morpheme और *or* conjoins sentences and parts of sentences of similar syntactic and semantic structure. Due to such constraints, the following pairs of sentences cannot be conjoined by merely deleting the identical elements.

- 49a. मुझे चाय पसंद है ।  
*mujhe ca:y pasand he.*  
I-obl tea like is  
I like tea.

- 49b. मुझे काम करना पसंद है।  
*mujhe ka:m karna: pasand hε.*  
 I-obl work do-inf like is  
 I like to do work.
- 49c. \*मुझे चाय और काम करना पसंद है।  
*\*mujhe ca:y or ka:m karna: pasand hε.*
- 50a. अमित अवश्य आएगा।  
*amit avašy a:yega:*  
 Amit definitely come-fut  
 Amit will definitely come.
- 50b. अमित मोहन के साथ आएगा।  
*amit mohan ke sa:th a:yega:.*  
 Amit Mohan with come-fut  
 Amit will come with Mohan.
- 50c. \*अमित अवश्य आएगा और मोहन के साथ।  
*\*amit avašy a:yega: aur mohan ke sa:th*
- 51a. शीला बीमार है।  
*ši:la: bi:ma:r hε.*  
 Shiela sick is  
 Shiela is sick.
- 51b. शीला घर पर है।  
*ši:la: ghar par hε.*  
 Shiela home at is  
 Shiela is at home.
- 51c. \*शीला बीमार है और घर पर।  
*\*ši:la: bi:ma:r hε or ghar par.*

## **4. SYNTAX**

---

All major sentence constituents, including nouns, adjectives, and adverbs, can be omitted under identity.

### ***Omission of subject/object***

52. अमित ने किताब खरीदी और Ø पढ़ी।

*amit-ne kita:b xari:di: or ø parhi:.*

Amit-erg book bought and Ø read

Amit brought a book and read.

### ***Omission of adjective/verb***

53. उसके पास नीली कमीज़ है और मेरे पास Ø टोपी।

*uske pa:s ni:li: kami:z he or mere pass ø topi:.*

he-obl blue shirt is and I-poss-obl Ø cap

He has a blue shirt and I have a blue cap.

### ***Omission of adverb/verb***

54. सोहन कल अपने घर गया और मोहन Ø शहर Ø।

*sohan kal apne ghar gaya: or mohan ø sahar ø*

Sohan yesterday own village went and Mohan city

Sohan went to his village yesterday and Amar went to the city.

## 5. Lexicon

Here we list useful classified English-Hindi vocabulary for quick reference. The vocabulary is listed under different sections: (1) animals, birds, and insects; (2) flowers, fruits, and vegetables; (3) jewels, metals, and minerals; (4) miscellaneous items; (5) body parts; (6) occupations; (7) kinship terms; (8) adjectives; (9) verbs; (10) adverbs; (11) conjunctions; and (12) pronouns.

### 5.1. Animals, Birds, and Insects

|                |                |                  |
|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| animal         | जानवर          | ja:nvar / pašu   |
| ant            | चींटी          | cī:tī:           |
| bear           | भालू           | bha:lu:          |
| bedbug         | खटमल           | khaṭmal          |
| bird           | चिरिया / पक्षी | ciriya: / pakši: |
| buffalo        | भैंस           | bhēs             |
| bullock        | बैल            | bel              |
| butterfly      | तितली          | titli:           |
| camel          | ऊँट            | ū:ṭ              |
| cat            | बिल्ली         | billi:           |
| cock / rooster | मुर्गा         | murga:           |
| cockroach      | तिलचट्टा       | tilcaṭṭa:        |
| cow            | गाय            | ga:y             |
| crow           | कौआ            | koa:             |
| cuckoo         | कोयल           | ko:yal           |
| deer           | हिरण           | hiran            |
| dog            | कुत्ता         | kutta:           |
| donkey         | गधा            | gadha:           |
| eagle          | बाज            | ba:j             |
| elephant       | हाथी           | ha:thi:          |
| fish           | मछली           | machli:          |
| fly            | मक्की          | makkhi:          |
| fox            | लोमड़ी         | lo:mṛi:          |
| frog           | मेंढक          | mēḍhak           |
| goat           | बकरी           | bakri:           |
| hare           | ख़रगोश         | xargoš           |
| hen            | मुर्गा         | murgi:           |
| horse          | घोड़ा          | gho:ṛa:          |
| insect         | कीड़ा          | ki:ṛa:           |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|          |         |           |
|----------|---------|-----------|
| jackal   | गीदड़   | gi:daṛ    |
| kite     | चील     | ci:l      |
| leopard  | तेंदुआ  | tendua:   |
| lion     | शेर     | śer       |
| lizard   | छिपकली  | chipkali; |
| mare     | घोड़ी   | ghoṛī:    |
| monkey   | बंदर    | bandar    |
| mule     | खच्चर   | khaccar   |
| owl      | उल्लू   | ullu:     |
| peacock  | मोर     | mo:r      |
| pig      | मुअर    | suar      |
| pigeon   | कबूतर   | kabu:tar  |
| rat      | चूहा    | cu:ha:    |
| scorpion | विछू    | bicchu:   |
| sheep    | भेड़    | bhe:ṛ     |
| snake    | साँप    | sā:p      |
| sparrow  | गोरिया  | goreya:   |
| squirrel | गिलहरी  | gilhari:  |
| swan     | हंस     | hans      |
| tiger    | बाघ     | ba:gh     |
| wolf     | भेड़िया | bheriya:  |
| worm     | कीड़ा   | ki:ṛa:    |

### 5.2. Flowers, Fruits, and Vegetables

|                    |            |                |
|--------------------|------------|----------------|
| almond             | बादाम      | ba:da:m        |
| apple              | सेब        | se:b           |
| apricot            | ख़ोबानी    | xo:ba:ni:      |
| banana             | केला       | ke:la:         |
| beet root          | चुकंदर     | cukandar       |
| betel leaf         | पान        | pa:n           |
| betel nut          | सुपारी     | supa:ri:       |
| bitter gourd       | करेला      | kare:la:       |
| black plum         | आलू बुखारा | a:lu: buxa:ra: |
| brinjal / eggplant | बैंगन      | bēgan          |
| cabbage            | बंदगोबी    | bandgo:bi:     |
| carrot             | गाजर       | ga:jar         |
| cashew nut         | काजू       | ka:ju:         |
| cauliflower        | फूलगोबी    | phu:lgo:bi:    |
| coconut            | नारियल     | na:riyal       |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|                  |            |                |
|------------------|------------|----------------|
| coriander        | धनिया      | dhaniya:       |
| cucumber (small) | खीरा       | khi:ra:        |
| custard apple    | शरीफा      | šari:pha:      |
| date             | खजूर       | khaju:r        |
| fig              | अंजीर      | anji:r         |
| garlic           | लहसुन      | lahsun         |
| ginger           | अदरक       | adrak          |
| gourd            | लौकी       | lɔki:          |
| grape            | अंगूर      | angu:r         |
| green chilie     | हरी मिर्च  | hari: mirc     |
| groundnut        | मूँगफली    | mū:gphali:     |
| guava            | अमरुद      | amru:d         |
| jackfruit        | कटहल       | kaṭhal         |
| jasmine          | चमेली      | came:li:       |
| lady's finger    | बिंडी      | bindi:         |
| lemon            | नीबू       | ni:bu:         |
| lichee           | लीची       | li:ci:         |
| lotus            | कमल        | kamal          |
| mango            | आम         | a:m            |
| marigold         | गेंदा      | gēda:          |
| (musk)melon      | खरबूजा     | kharbu:za:     |
| mint             | पुद्दाना   | pudi:na:       |
| mulberry         | शहतूत      | śahtu:t        |
| onion            | प्याज      | pya:z          |
| orange           | नारँगी     | na:rangi:      |
| papaya           | पपीता      | papi:ta:       |
| pea              | मटर        | maṭar          |
| peanut           | मूँगफली    | mū:gphali:     |
| pear             | नाशपाती    | na:śpa:ti:     |
| pineapple        | अनानास     | ananna:s       |
| pistachio nut    | पिस्ता     | pista:         |
| plum             | आलू बुखारा | a:lu: buxa:ra: |
| pumpkin          | कद्दू      | kaddu:         |
| pomegranate      | अनार       | ana:r          |
| potato           | आलू        | a:lu:          |
| raisin (small)   | किशमिश     | kišmiš         |
| raisin (large)   | मुनका      | munakka:       |
| radish           | मूली       | mu:li:         |
| raspberry        | रसवरी      | rasbhari:      |
| spinach          | पालक       | pa:lak         |
| sugar cane       | गन्ना      | ganna:         |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|              |        |           |
|--------------|--------|-----------|
| sweet lime   | मौसमी  | mɔ:sami:  |
| sweet potato | शकरकंद | šakarkand |
| tomato       | टमाटर  | ṭama:ṭar  |
| turnip       | शलगम   | šalgam    |
| walnut       | अख्रोट | akhro:t   |
| watermelon   | तरबूजा | tarbu:za: |

### 5.3. Jewels, Metals, and Minerals

|          |            |             |
|----------|------------|-------------|
| aluminum | अलमूनियम   | almu:niyam  |
| brass    | पीतल       | pi:tal      |
| bronze   | कांसा      | kā:sa:      |
| copper   | ताँवा      | tā:ba:      |
| diamond  | हीरा       | hi:ra:      |
| emerald  | पन्ना      | panna:      |
| gem      | मणि / रत्न | maṇi / ratn |
| glass    | कँच        | kā:c        |
| gold     | सोना       | so:na:      |
| iron     | लोहा       | lo:ha:      |
| jewel    | जवाहर      | java:har    |
| mercury  | पारा       | pa:ra:      |
| nickel   | निकल       | nikal       |
| pearl    | मोती       | mo:ti:      |
| sapphire | नीलम       | ni:lam      |
| silver   | चाँदी      | cā:di:      |
| steel    | इस्पात     | ispa:t      |
| sulfur   | गंधक       | gandhak     |
| tin      | टीन        | ṭi:n        |
| topaz    | पूय्वराज   | pukhra:j    |
| zinc     | जस्ता      | jasta:      |

### 5.4. Miscellaneous Items

|              |                 |                     |
|--------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| accident     | दुर्घटना        | durghatna:          |
| acquaintance | परिचय           | paricay             |
| admiration   | प्रशংসা / तारीफ | praśansa: / ta:ri:f |
| age          | आयू / उम्र      | a:yu:/umar          |
| air          | हवा             | hava:               |
| answer       | उत्तर           | uttar / java:b      |
| application  | प्रार्थना पत्र  | pra:rthana: patr    |
| area         | इलाका           | ila:ka:             |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|                |                |                   |
|----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| ashes          | राख            | ra:kh             |
| autumn         | पतझड़          | patjhar           |
| baking pan     | तवा            | tava:             |
| bark (of tree) | छिल्का         | chilka:           |
| barley         | जौ             | jɔ                |
| basket         | टोकरी          | to:kri:           |
| bath           | स्नान          | sna:n             |
| behavior       | वर्ताव         | barta:v           |
| bell           | घंटा           | ghanṭa:           |
| birthday       | जन्म दिन       | janm-din          |
| boat           | नाव            | na:v              |
| bread          | रोटी           | roti:             |
| bridge         | पुल            | pul               |
| center         | केंद्र         | kendr             |
| charcoal       | कोयला          | koyla:            |
| child          | बच्चा          | bacca:            |
| church         | गिरजा          | girja:            |
| city           | शहर            | šahar             |
| class          | दर्जा          | darja:            |
| cleanliness    | सफाई           | safa:i:           |
| cloud          | बादल           | ba:dal            |
| cold           | सर्दी / जुकाम  | sardi: / zuka:m   |
| comfort        | आराम           | a:ra:m            |
| committee      | कमेटी          | kameṭi:           |
| community      | समाज           | sama:j            |
| complaint      | शिकायत         | šika:yat          |
| cooked rice    | भात            | bha:t             |
| corn           | मक्की          | makki:            |
| cough          | खाँसी          | khā:si:           |
| country        | देश            | deś               |
| court of law   | अदालत          | ada:lat           |
| cup            | प्याला         | pya:la:           |
| dance          | नाच            | na:c              |
| day            | दिन            | din               |
| difficulty     | मुश्किल        | muškil            |
| dispensary     | चिकित्सालय     | cikitsa:lay       |
| district       | ज़िला          | zila:             |
| dust           | धूल            | dhu:l             |
| earth          | पृथ्वी         | prathvi:          |
| earthen oven   | चूल्हा         | cuhla:            |
| education      | शिक्षा / तालीम | šiksha: / ta:li:m |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|               |                    |                       |
|---------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| egg           | अंडा               | ãda:                  |
| entertainment | मनोरंजन            | manoranjan            |
| enquiry       | पूछताछ             | pu:chta:ch            |
| evening       | शाम                | ša:m                  |
| exhibition    | प्रदर्शनी / नुमाइश | pradaršani: / numa:iš |
| fare          | किराया / भाड़ा     | kira:ya: / bha:ṛa:    |
| fatigue       | थकान               | thaka:n               |
| favor         | कृपा               | kripa:                |
| fear          | डर                 | ḍar                   |
| feast         | दावत               | da:vat                |
| feather       | पंख                | pankh                 |
| fever         | ज्वर / बुखार       | jvar / buxa:r         |
| frying pan    | कड्डई              | kara:i:               |
| fire          | आग                 | a:g                   |
| flag          | झंडा               | jhāda:                |
| fog           | कुहरा/धुँध         | kuhra: / dhūdh        |
| foreigner     | विदेशी             | videši:               |
| forest        | जंगल / वन          | jangal / van          |
| fountain      | फव्वारा            | favva:ra:             |
| fun           | मज़ाक / तमाशा      | maza:k / tama:ša:     |
| gift          | उपहार              | upha:r                |
| grass         | घास                | gha:s                 |
| harbor        | बंदरगाह            | bandarga:h            |
| health        | स्वास्थ्य          | swasthy               |
| heat          | गर्मी              | garmi:                |
| help          | मदद / सहायता       | madad / saha:yita:    |
| hobby         | शौक                | šok                   |
| holiday       | छुट्टी             | chuṭṭi:               |
| horn          | सिंग               | sī:g                  |
| hospital      | अस्पताल            | aspata:l              |
| hunger        | भूख                | bhu:kh                |
| ice           | बर्फ               | barf                  |
| information   | सूचना              | su:cna:               |
| intoxication  | नशा                | naša:                 |
| introduction  | परिचय              | paricay               |
| island        | टापू / छीप         | ṭa:pu: / dvi:p        |
| joke          | मज़ाक              | maza:k                |
| journey       | यात्रा सफर         | ya:tra: / safar       |
| kidney beans  | राजमाह             | ra:jma:h              |
| kindness      | कृपा / मेरहवानी    | meharba:ni: / kripa:  |
| ladle         | कलाठी              | kalchi:               |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|            |                     |                        |
|------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| lane       | गली                 | gali:                  |
| language   | भाषा / ज्वान        | bha:ša: / zaba:n       |
| leaf       | पत्ता               | patta:                 |
| leave      | छुट्टी              | chuṭṭi:                |
| lentil     | दाल                 | da:l                   |
| lid        | ढक्कन               | ḍhakkan                |
| lie        | झूठ                 | jhu: ṭh                |
| literature | साहित्य / अदब       | sa:hity / adab         |
| love       | प्यार               | pya:r                  |
| man        | आदमी                | a:dmi:                 |
| marriage   | विवाह / शादी        | viva:h / ša:di:        |
| meat       | मांस                | mā:s                   |
| message    | संदेश               | sandeš                 |
| memorial   | स्मारक              | sma:rak                |
| memory     | याद                 | ya:d                   |
| mile       | मील                 | mi:l                   |
| mistake    | गलती                | galti:                 |
| month      | महीना               | mahi:na:               |
| mortar     | ओख़ली               | okhli:                 |
| moon       | चौँद                | cā:d                   |
| moonlight  | चौँदनी              | cā:dni:                |
| morning    | सुबह                | subah                  |
| mosque     | मसजिद               | masjid                 |
| mountain   | पहाड़               | paha:ṛ                 |
| museum     | अजायबघर             | aja:yabghar            |
| music      | संगीत               | sangi:t                |
| name       | नाम                 | na:m                   |
| news       | समाचार / ख़बर       | sama:ca:r / xabar      |
| newspaper  | समाचारपत्र / अख़बार | sama:ca:rpatr / axba:r |
| night      | रात                 | ra:t                   |
| noon       | दोपहर               | dopahar                |
| north      | उत्तर               | uttar                  |
| paddy      | धान, शाली           | dha:n / ša:li:         |
| pain       | दर्द                | dard                   |
| person     | व्यक्ति             | vyakti:                |
| pitcher    | मटका                | maṭka:                 |
| pity       | दया                 | daya:                  |
| plate      | प्लेट               | paleṭ                  |
| place      | जगह                 | jagah                  |
| potato     | आलू                 | a:lu:                  |
| police     | पुलिस               | pulis                  |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|                |                    |                      |
|----------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| police station | थाना               | tha:na:              |
| praise         | प्रशंसा / तारीफ    | pra:šansa: / ta:ri:f |
| prayer         | प्रार्थना / दुआ    | pra:rthana: / dua:   |
| present        | उपहार              | upha:r               |
| price          | कीमत               | ki:mat               |
| procession     | जलूस               | jalu:s               |
| program        | कार्यक्रम          | ka:ryakram           |
| port           | बंदरगाह            | bandarga:h           |
| quarrel        | झगड़ा              | jhagṛa:              |
| question       | प्रश्न / सवाल      | pra:šan / sava:l     |
| rain           | वर्षा / बारिश      | varṣa: / ba:riš      |
| rainy season   | वरसात              | barsa:t              |
| regret         | खेद / अफसोस        | khed / afsos         |
| religion       | धर्म               | dharma:              |
| rent           | किराया             | kira:ya:             |
| repair         | मरम्मत             | marmmat              |
| reply          | उत्तर / जवाब       | uttar / java:b       |
| request        | निवेदन / प्रार्थना | pra:rthana:          |
| rest           | आराम               | a:ra:m               |
| rice           | चावल               | ca:val               |
| rice pudding   | खीर                | khi:r                |
| river          | दरिया              | dariya:              |
| road           | पथ / गम्ता         | path / ra:sta:       |
| rock           | चट्टान             | caṭṭa:n              |
| root           | जड़                | jar                  |
| rope           | स्त्री             | rasi:                |
| salt           | नमक                | namak                |
| sand           | रेत                | ret                  |
| sandal         | चंदन               | candan               |
| sea            | समुद्र / समंदर     | samudr / samandar    |
| seed           | बीज                | bi:j                 |
| ship           | जहाज़              | jaha:z               |
| show           | तमाशा              | tama:ša:             |
| sickle         | दाँती              | drā:ti:              |
| sky            | आकाश / आसमान       | a:ka:š / a:sma:n     |
| smoke          | धुआं               | dhuā:                |
| snow           | बर्फ               | barf                 |
| society        | समाज               | sama:j               |
| sorrow         | खेद / दुःख         | khed / dukh          |
| south          | दक्षिण             | dakšin               |
| spit           | थूक                | thu:k                |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|             |                    |                       |
|-------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| spoon       | चम्च               | cammac                |
| spring      | वसंत / बहार        | vasant / baha:r       |
| star        | तारा               | tara:                 |
| stick       | सोटी               | so:ti:                |
| stone       | पत्थर              | patthar               |
| storm       | आँधी               | ã:dhi:                |
| sugar       | चीनी               | ci:ni:                |
| summer      | गर्मी              | garmi:                |
| sun         | सूर्य / सूरज       | su:ry / su:raj        |
| sunshine    | धूप                | dhu:p                 |
| tail        | दुम                | dum                   |
| temple      | मंदिर              | mandir                |
| tent        | तम्बू              | tambu:                |
| thanks      | धन्यवाद / शुक्रिया | dhanyava:d / šukriya: |
| thief       | चोर                | cor                   |
| thirst      | प्यास              | pya:s                 |
| time        | समय                | samay                 |
| tobacco     | तम्बाकू            | tamba:ku:             |
| town        | नगर                | nagar / šahar         |
| translation | अनुवाद             | anuva:d               |
| travel      | यात्रा             | ya:tra: / safar       |
| traveler    | यात्री / मुसाफिर   | ya:tri: / musa:fir    |
| treatment   | इलाज               | ila:j                 |
| trouble     | कष्ट / तकलीफ       | kašt / takli:f        |
| truth       | सच                 | sac                   |
| valley      | वादी               | va:di:                |
| value       | मूल्य / कीमत       | mu:ly / ki:mat        |
| vessel      | बर्तन              | bartan                |
| village     | ग्राम / गाँव       | gra:m / ga:ũ          |
| visitor     | दर्शक              | daršak                |
| vomit       | उल्टी              | ul̄ti:                |
| wash        | धुलाई              | dhula:i:              |
| water       | पानी               | pa:ni:                |
| waterfall   | झरना               | jharna:               |
| week        | सप्ताह / हफ्ता     | sapta:h / hafta:      |
| wealth      | सम्पति / दौलत      | sampati / dɔlat       |
| weight      | भार / वज़न         | bha:r / vazan         |
| west        | पश्चिम             | pašcim                |
| wheat       | गेहूँ              | gehū:                 |
| wind        | हवा                | hava:                 |
| winter      | सर्दी / जाड़ा      | sardi: / ja:ṛa:       |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|         |           |                   |
|---------|-----------|-------------------|
| woman   | औरत       | ɔrat              |
| world   | संसार     | sansa:r / duniya: |
| worship | पूजा      | pu:ja:            |
| wood    | लकड़ी     | lakri:            |
| year    | साल       | sal               |
| zoo     | चिड़ियाघर | ciriya:ghar       |

### 5.5. Body Parts

|              |                 |                  |
|--------------|-----------------|------------------|
| arm          | वँह             | bā:h             |
| armpit       | वगल             | bagal            |
| beard        | दाढ़ी           | da:ṛhi:          |
| body         | शरीर            | śari:r           |
| bone         | हड्डी           | hadḍi:           |
| brain        | दिमाग / मस्तिशक | dima:g / mastišk |
| breast       | स्तन            | stan             |
| cheek        | गाल             | ga:l             |
| chest        | छाती            | cha:ti:          |
| chin         | ठोड़ी           | ṭhorī:           |
| ear          | कान             | ka:n             |
| elbow        | कोहनी           | kohni:           |
| eye          | आँख             | ã:kh             |
| eyeball      | पुतली           | putli:           |
| eyebrow      | भौं             | bhō              |
| eyelid       | पलक             | palak            |
| face         | चेहरा           | cehra:           |
| finger       | उँगली           | ūgli:            |
| fist         | मुट्ठी          | muṭṭhi:          |
| flesh        | मांस / गोश्त    | mā:s / go:shṭ    |
| foot         | पैर             | per              |
| forehead     | माथा            | ma:tha:          |
| gum          | जबड़ा           | jabṛā:           |
| hand         | हाथ             | ha:th            |
| (left) hand  | वायाँ हाथ       | ba:yā: ha:th     |
| (right) hand | दायाँ हाथ       | da:yā: ha:th     |
| hair         | बाल             | ba:l             |
| head         | सिर             | sir              |
| heart        | ह्रदय / दिल     | hriday / dil     |
| heel         | एड़ी            | erī:             |
| intestines   | अन्तर्डियाँ     | antaṛiyā:        |

|              |             |               |
|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| knee         | શુટના       | ghuṭna:       |
| leg          | ટાঁગ        | tā:g          |
| lips         | ઓંઠ         | ōṭh           |
| liver        | કલેજી       | kale:ji:      |
| lung         | ફેફડા       | phe:phra:     |
| mouth        | મુँહ        | mūh           |
| mustaches    | મૂછ         | mu:ch         |
| nail         | નાગ્વૂન     | na:khu:n      |
| navel        | નામી        | na:bhi:       |
| neck         | ગર્દન       | gardan        |
| nose         | નાક         | na:k          |
| palate       | તાલૂ        | ta:lu:        |
| palm         | હથેલી       | hathe:li:     |
| rib          | પસલી        | pasli:        |
| shoulder     | કંધા        | kandha:       |
| skin         | ચર્મ        | carm          |
| sole of foot | તલવા        | talva:        |
| stomach      | પેટ         | peṭ           |
| teeth        | દાઁત        | dā:t          |
| thigh        | જાঁঘ        | jā:gh         |
| throat       | গলা         | gala:         |
| thumb        | ঁঁগুঠা      | āgu:tha:      |
| tongue       | জীব / জ্বান | ji:b / zaba:n |
| vein         | নસ          | nas           |
| waist        | কમર         | kamar         |
| wrist        | কলাঈ        | kala:i:       |

### 5.6. Occupations

|            |                 |                      |
|------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| accountant | લેખાકાર         | le:kha:ka:r          |
| advocate   | વકીલ            | vaki:l               |
| actor      | અભિનેતા         | abhine:ta:           |
| actress    | અભિનેત્રી       | abhine:tri:          |
| artist     | કલાકાર / અદાકાર | kala:ka:r / ada:ka:r |
| artisan    | કારીગર          | ka:ri:gar            |
| barber     | નાઈ             | na:i:                |
| blacksmith | લુહાર           | luha:r               |
| boatman    | મળ્ણાહ          | malla:h              |
| carpenter  | बઢ્હાઈ          | barhai:              |
| cartman    | ગાડીવાન         | ga:ri:va:n           |
| clerk      | લિપિક           | lipik / klark        |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|                      |               |                   |
|----------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| cobbler              | मोची          | mo:chi:           |
| confectioner         | हलवाई         | halwa:i:          |
| contractor           | ठेकेदार       | the:keda:r        |
| cook                 | रसोइया        | raso:iya:         |
| craftsman            | कारिगर        | ka:ri:gar         |
| dentist              | दंत चिकित्सक  | dant-chikitsak    |
| doctor               | डाक्टर        | da:kṭar           |
| driver               | ड्राइवर       | dryevar           |
| editor               | सम्पादक       | sampa:dak         |
| employee             | कर्मचारी      | karamca:ri:       |
| engineer             | इंजीनियर      | inji:niyar        |
| farmer               | किसान         | kisa:n            |
| gatekeeper           | दरबान         | darba:n           |
| gardener             | माली          | ma:li:            |
| goldsmith            | सुनार         | suna:r            |
| grocer               | पंसारी        | pansa:ri:         |
| hawker               | फेरीवाला      | phe:ri:va:la:     |
| journalist           | पत्रकार       | patraka:r         |
| judge                | न्यायाधीश     | nya:ya:dhi:š:     |
| laborer              | मज़दूर        | mazdu:r           |
| lawyer               | वकील          | vaki:l            |
| maidservant          | नौकरगनी       | nōkara:ni:        |
| mason                | राज           | ra:j              |
| merchant             | व्यापारी      | vya:pa:ri:        |
| minister             | मंत्री        | mantri:           |
| musician             | गायक / गायिका | ga:yak / ga:yika: |
| nurse                | नर्स          | nars              |
| officer              | अधिकारी       | adhika:ri:        |
| optician             | एनकसाज़       | enaksa:z          |
| peon                 | चपरासी        | capra:si:         |
| photographer         | फोटोग्राफर    | pho:to:gra:phar   |
| poet                 | कवि           | kavi              |
| police sub-inspector | थानेदार       | tha:ne:da:r       |
| postman              | डाकिया        | da:kiya:          |
| prime minister       | प्रधान मंत्री | pradha:n mantri:  |
| printer              | मुद्रक        | mudrak            |
| porter               | कुली          | kuli:             |
| proprietor           | मालिक         | ma:lik            |
| publisher            | प्रकाशक       | praka:šak         |
| salesman             | विक्रेता      | vikre:ta:         |
| scientist            | वैज्ञानिक     | vēgya:nik         |

|                   |                  |                    |
|-------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| sculptor          | शिल्पी           | śilpi:             |
| servant           | नौकर             | nōkar              |
| shopkeeper        | टुकानदार         | duka:nda:r         |
| singer            | गायक / गायिका    | ga:yak / ga:yika:  |
| soldier           | सिपाही           | sipa:hi:           |
| student           | विद्यार्थी       | vidya:rthi:        |
| supervisor        | परिवेशक          | paryave:kšak:      |
| sweet-seller      | हलवाई            | halva:i:           |
| tailor            | दर्जी            | darzi:             |
| teacher           | अद्यापक / शिक्षक | adhyā:pak / śikšak |
| translator        | अनुवादक          | anuva:dak          |
| washerman         | धोवी             | dho:bi:            |
| watchmaker        | घड़ीसाज़         | gharī:sa:z:        |
| watchman          | चौकीदार          | cōki:da:r          |
| writer            | लेखक             | le:khak            |
| (petition) writer | अर्जी नवीस       | arzi: navi:s       |

### 5.7. Kinship Terms

|                                  |              |                  |
|----------------------------------|--------------|------------------|
| adopted son                      | दत्तक पुत्र  | dattak putr      |
| adopted daughter                 | दत्तक पुत्री | dattak putri:    |
| brother                          | भाई          | bha:i:           |
| brother, elder                   | बड़ा भाई     | ba:ṛa: bha:i:    |
| brother, younger                 | छोटा भाई     | cho:ta bha:i:    |
| brother's daughter               | भतीजी        | bhati:ji:        |
| brother's son                    | भतीजा        | bati:ja:         |
| brother's wife                   | भाभी         | bha:bhi:         |
| daughter                         | बेटी         | be:ti:           |
| daughter's husband               | जवाई         | javā:i:          |
| father                           | पिता         | pita:            |
| father's brother                 | चाचा         | ca:ca:           |
| father's brother's wife          | चाची         | ca:ci:           |
| father's father                  | दादा         | da:da:           |
| father's father's brother        | चचेरा दादा   | cacera: da:da:   |
| father's father's brother's wife | चचेरी दादी   | cace:ri: da:di:  |
| father's mother                  | दादी         | da:di:           |
| father's sister                  | फूफी         | phu:phi:         |
| father's sister's husband        | फूफा         | phu:pha:         |
| father's brother's son           | चचेरा भाई    | ca:cera: bha:i:  |
| father's sister's son            | फुफेरा भाई   | phuphera: bha:i: |
| father's brother's daughter      | चचेरी बहन    | ca:ceri: bahan:  |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|                                  |              |                   |
|----------------------------------|--------------|-------------------|
| father's sister's daughter       | फुफेरी वहन   | phupheri: bahan   |
| husband                          | पति          | pa:ti             |
| husband's brother                | देवर         | de:var:           |
| husband's brother's wife         | देवरानी      | dev:ra:ni:        |
| husband's father                 | ससुर         | sasur             |
| husband's mother                 | सास          | sa:s              |
| husband's sister                 | ननद          | nanad             |
| mother                           | माता / माँ   | ma:ta: / mā:      |
| mother's brother                 | मामा         | ma:ma:            |
| mother's sister                  | मासी         | ma:si:            |
| mother's sister's husband        | मौसा         | mō:sa:            |
| mother's father's brother        | चचेरा नाना   | cacera: na:na:    |
| mother's father's brother's wife | चचेरी नानी   | caceri: na:ni:    |
| mother's father                  | नाना         | na:na:            |
| mother's mother                  | नानी         | na:ni:            |
| father's father's father         | पड़दादा      | par da:da:        |
| father's father's mother         | पड़दादी      | par da:di:        |
| mother's father's father         | पड़नाना      | par na:na:        |
| mother's brother's son           | ममेरा भाई    | mam:era: bha:i:   |
| mother's brother's daughter      | ममेरी वहन    | mam:eri: bahan:   |
| mother's sister's daughter       | मौसेरी वहन   | mō:seri: bahan    |
| mother's sister's son            | मौसेरा भाई   | mō:sera: bha:i:   |
| sister                           | वहन          | bahan             |
| sister, elder                    | बड़ी वहन     | bari: bahan       |
| sister, younger                  | छोटी वहन     | choṭi: ba:han     |
| son                              | बेटा / पुत्र | be:ṭa: / putr     |
| sister's son                     | भाँजा        | bhā:ja:           |
| sister's daughter                | भाँजी        | bhā:ji:           |
| sister's husband                 | जीजा / वहनोई | ji:ja: / bahno:i: |
| son's son                        | पोता         | pota:             |
| son's daughter                   | पोती         | poti:             |
| wife                             | पली          | pat:ni: / bi:vi:  |
| wife's brother                   | साला         | sa:la:            |
| wife's father                    | ससुर         | sasur             |
| wife's mother                    | सास          | sa:s              |
| wife's sister                    | साली         | sa:li:            |
| son's wife                       | बहू          | ba:hu:            |
| stepfather                       | सौतेला बाप   | sōtela: ba:p      |
| stepmother                       | सौतेली माँ   | sōteli: mā:       |
| stepbrother                      | सौतेला भाई   | sōtela: bha:i:    |

stepsister सौतली बहन söteli: bahan

### 5.8. Adjectives

|           |                  |                      |
|-----------|------------------|----------------------|
| accurate  | सही / ठीक        | sahi: / thi:k        |
| airy      | हवदार            | hava:da:r            |
| ancient   | अतीक / पुराना    | ati:k / pura:na:     |
| bad       | बुगा / ख़राब     | bura: / xara:b       |
| beautiful | सुंदर / खूबसूरत  | sundar / khu:bsu:rat |
| big       | बड़ा / विशाल     | bara: / visha:l      |
| bitter    | कड़वा            | karva:               |
| black     | काला             | ka:la:               |
| blue      | नीला             | ni:la:               |
| broad     | चौड़ा            | cɔṛa:                |
| brown     | भूरा             | bhu:ra:              |
| cheap     | सस्ता            | saasta:              |
| clean     | साफ              | sa:f                 |
| clear     | स्पष्ट           | spašt                |
| clever    | होशियार          | ho:šiya:r / catur    |
| closed    | बंद              | band                 |
| coarse    | मोटा             | mo:ṭa:               |
| cold      | ठंडा             | ṭhāḍa:               |
| complete  | पूरा             | pu:ra:               |
| correct   | सही              | sahi:                |
| costly    | महँगा            | mahāga:              |
| cunning   | चालाक            | ca:la:k              |
| dear      | प्यारा           | pya:ra:              |
| defective | ख़राब            | xara:b               |
| dense     | घना              | ghana:               |
| difficult | कठिन / मुश्किल   | kathin / muškil      |
| direct    | सीधा             | si:dha:              |
| dirty     | गंदा             | gāḍa:                |
| dry       | सूखा             | su:kha:              |
| each      | हर एक / प्रत्येक | har ek / pratyek     |
| easy      | आसान             | a:sa:n               |
| educated  | पढ़ा लिखा        | paṛha:-likha:        |
| elder     | ज्येष्ठ / बड़ा   | jye: št / bara:      |
| empty     | ख़ाली            | xa:li:               |
| entire    | सारा             | sa:ra:               |
| every     | प्रत्यक          | pratyek              |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|             |                       |                        |
|-------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| fast        | तेज / तीव्र           | te:z / ti:vr           |
| fat         | मोटा                  | mo:ṭa:                 |
| few         | कम / कुछ              | kam / kuch             |
| filthy      | गंदा                  | gāda:                  |
| fine        | बारीक / ठीक           | ba:ri:k / ḫi:k         |
| final       | अन्तिम / आख़री        | antim / a:xiri:        |
| foolish     | मूर्ख                 | mu:rkh / be:vaku:f     |
| foreign     | विदेशी                | vide:ši                |
| free        | स्वतंत्र / आज़ाद      | svatantr / a:za:d      |
| fresh       | ताज़ा                 | ta:za:                 |
| golden      | मुन्हला / मुनहरी      | sunhala: / sunhari:    |
| good        | अच्छा                 | acchha:                |
| greasy      | चिकना                 | cikna:                 |
| great       | बड़ा / महान           | bara: / maha:n         |
| green       | हरा                   | hara:                  |
| handsome    | सुंदर / खूबसूरत       | sūdar / khu:bsu:rat    |
| hard        | सख्त / मुश्किल        | saxt: / muškil         |
| heavy       | भारी                  | bha:ri:                |
| high        | ऊँचा                  | ū:ca:                  |
| hot         | गरम                   | garam                  |
| important   | आवश्यक / ज़रूरी       | xa:však / zaru:ri:     |
| incomplete  | अधूरा                 | adhu:ra:               |
| independent | स्वतंत्र / आज़ाद      | svatantr / a:za:d      |
| inferior    | घटिया                 | ghaṭiya:               |
| intelligent | होशियार / दाना        | hošiya:r / da:na:      |
| large       | बड़ा                  | bara:                  |
| last        | अन्तिम / आख़री        | antim / a:xiri:        |
| left        | वायाँ                 | ba:yā:                 |
| lengthy     | लंबा                  | lamba:                 |
| less        | कम                    | kam                    |
| light       | हल्का                 | halka:                 |
| little      | ज़रा / थोड़ा          | zara: / thora:         |
| lonely      | अकेला                 | ake:la:                |
| long        | लंबा                  | lamba:                 |
| loose       | ढीला                  | dhi:la:                |
| low         | नीचा                  | ni:ca:                 |
| many        | कई / अनेक             | kai: / ane:k           |
| modern      | आधुनिक                | a:dhunik               |
| more        | और / अधिक             | or / adhik             |
| much        | बहुत / अधिक / ज़्यादा | bahut / adhik / zya:da |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|           |                |                   |
|-----------|----------------|-------------------|
| new       | नया            | naya:             |
| old       | पुराना         | pura:na:          |
| open      | खुला           | khula:            |
| opposite  | उल्टा          | ulṭa:             |
| orange    | नारंगी         | na:rangi:         |
| peculiar  | अजीब / विचित्र | aji:b / vicitr    |
| permanent | पक्का / स्थाई  | pakka: / stha:i:  |
| pink      | गुलाबी         | gula:bi:          |
| poor      | गरीब           | gari:b            |
| proper    | उचित           | ucit              |
| pungent   | तीखा           | ti:kha:           |
| pure      | शुद्ध          | śuddh             |
| raw       | कच्चा          | kacca:            |
| red       | लाल            | la:l              |
| remaining | वाकी           | ba:ki:            |
| rich      | अमीर           | ami:r             |
| right     | सही / ठीक      | sahi: / thi:k     |
| ripe      | पक्का          | pakka:            |
| robust    | तगड़ा          | tagṛa:            |
| round     | गोल            | go:l              |
| salty     | नमकीन          | namki:n           |
| several   | कई / अनेक      | kai: / ane:k      |
| sharp     | तेज़           | te:z              |
| short     | छोटा           | cho:ta:           |
| simple    | सीधा / आसान    | si:dha: / a:sa:n  |
| single    | अकेला          | ake:la            |
| slow      | धीमा           | dhi:ma:           |
| small     | छोटा           | cho:ta:           |
| smart     | होशियार        | ho:šiya:r         |
| smooth    | चिकना          | cikna:            |
| soft      | मुलायम / नर्म  | mula:yam / naram  |
| sour      | खट्टा          | khaṭṭa:           |
| special   | विशेष / ख़ास   | višeš / xa:s      |
| spicy     | चटपटा          | catpata:          |
| stale     | बासी           | ba:si:            |
| stopped   | बंद            | band              |
| straight  | सीधा           | si:dha:           |
| strange   | अजीब / विचित्र | aji:b / vicitr    |
| strong    | तगड़ा / मजबूत  | tagṛa: / mazbu:t  |
| stupid    | मूर्ख / बेवकूफ | mu:rkh / bevaku:f |
| suitable  | उचित           | ucit              |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|           |              |                 |
|-----------|--------------|-----------------|
| sweet     | मीठा         | mi:tha:         |
| tall      | लंबा         | lamba:          |
| tasteless | फीका         | phi:ka:         |
| temporary | अस्थाई       | astha:i:        |
| tender    | कोमल         | ko:mal          |
| thick     | मोटा         | mo:ta:          |
| thin      | पतला         | patla:          |
| total     | कुल          | kul             |
| true      | सही / सच्चा  | sahi: / sacca:  |
| unripe    | कच्चा        | kacca:          |
| vacant    | खाली         | xa:li:          |
| violet    | वैंगनी       | bēgani:         |
| warm      | गुन्हुना     | gunguna:        |
| weak      | कमज़ोर       | kamzor          |
| wet       | गीला         | gi:la:          |
| wide      | चौड़ा        | cōra:           |
| white     | सफेद / श्वेत | safe:d / švet   |
| whole     | सारा         | sa:ra:          |
| wounded   | आहत / घायल   | a:hat / gha:yal |
| wrong     | गलत          | galat           |
| yellow    | पीला         | pi:la:          |
| young(er) | छोटा         | cho:ta:         |

### 5.9. Verbs

|                |                    |                         |
|----------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| to accept      | स्वीकार करना       | svi:ka:r karna:         |
| to admit       | मानना / दाखिल करना | ma:nna: / da:xil karna: |
| to (be) alive  | जीना               | ji:na:                  |
| to ask for     | माँगना             | mā:gna:                 |
| to bathe       | नाहना              | naha:na:                |
| to be          | होना               | ho:na:                  |
| to bear        | सहना               | sahna:                  |
| to beat        | पीटना              | pi:tña:                 |
| to become      | बनना               | banna:                  |
| to bite        | काटना              | ka:tña:                 |
| to boil        | उबालना             | uba:lña:                |
| to (be) born   | पैदा होना          | pēda: ho:na:            |
| to break       | तोड़ना             | to:tña:                 |
| to bring       | लाना               | la:na:                  |
| to bring up    | पालना              | pa:lña                  |
| to (be) broken | टूटना              | tu:tña:                 |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|               |                      |                             |
|---------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| to build      | बनाना / निर्माण करना | bana:na: / nirma:n̄ karna:  |
| to burn       | जलाना                | jala:na:                    |
| to buy        | ख़रीदना              | xari:dna:                   |
| to call       | बुलाना               | bulā:na:                    |
| to catch      | पकड़ना               | paka:n̄a:                   |
| to celebrate  | मनाना                | mana:na:                    |
| to chew       | चवाना                | caba:na:                    |
| to cleanse    | साफ करना             | sa:f karna:                 |
| to climb      | चढ़ना                | caṛhna:                     |
| to come       | आना                  | a:na:                       |
| to come out   | निकलना               | nikalna:                    |
| to conceal    | छिपाना               | chipa:na:                   |
| to conquer    | जीतना                | ji:tña:                     |
| to cook       | पकाना / खाना बनाना   | paka:na: / kha:na: bana:na: |
| to cool       | ठंडा करना            | ṭhāḍa: karna:               |
| to cough      | खाँसना               | khā:sna                     |
| to count      | गिनना                | ginna:                      |
| to cover      | ढकना                 | ḍhakna:                     |
| to cry        | रोना                 | ro:na:                      |
| to cry out    | चिल्लाना             | cilla:na:                   |
| to cut        | काटना                | ka:tña:                     |
| to decorate   | सजाना                | saja:na:                    |
| to defeat     | हराना                | hara:na                     |
| to deposit    | जमा करना             | jama: karna:                |
| to desire     | चाहना                | ca:hna:                     |
| to die        | मरना                 | marna:                      |
| to distribute | बांटना               | bā:ṭna:                     |
| to divide     | भाग करना / बांटना    | bha:g karna: / bā:ṭna:      |
| to do         | करना                 | karna:                      |
| to drag       | घसीटना               | ghasi:tña:                  |
| to draw       | खेंचना               | khē:cna:                    |
| to drink      | पीना                 | pi:na:                      |
| to drive      | चलाना                | calā:na:                    |
| to drive away | निकलना               | nika:lna:                   |
| to earn       | कमाना                | kama:na:                    |
| to eat        | खाना                 | kha:na:                     |
| to endure     | सहना / वरदाश्त करना  | sahna: / barda:št karna:    |
| to enquire    | पूछताछ करना          | pu:chta:ch karna:           |
| to entrust    | सौंपना               | sōpn̄a:                     |
| to envy       | ईर्षा करना           | i:r̄ṣa: karna:              |
| to escape     | वचना                 | bacna:                      |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|             |                      |                             |
|-------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| to examine  | जाँचना               | jā:cna:                     |
| to expect   | प्रतीक्षा करना       | prati:kṣa:                  |
| to expel    | निकालना              | nika:lna:                   |
| to fall     | गिरना                | girna:                      |
| to fight    | लड़ना                | laṛṇa:                      |
| to flee     | भागना                | bha:gna:                    |
| to flow     | वहना                 | bahna:                      |
| to fly      | उड़ना / उड़ाना       | urṇa: (int) / urṇa:na: (tr) |
| to fry      | तलना                 | talna:                      |
| to forget   | भूलना                | bhu:lna:                    |
| to get      | पाना                 | pa:na:                      |
| to get down | उतरना                | utarna:                     |
| to get out  | निकलना               | nikalna:                    |
| to get up   | उठना                 | uṭhna:                      |
| to give     | देना                 | de:na:                      |
| to grind    | पीसना                | pi:sna:                     |
| to grow     | उत्पादन करना / बढ़ना | utpa:dan karna: / baṛhna:   |
| to halt     | ठहरना / रुकना        | ṭhaharna: / rukna:          |
| to happen   | होना                 | ho:na:                      |
| to hear     | सुनना                | sunna:                      |
| to heat     | गर्म करना            | garm karna:                 |
| to help     | मदद / सहायता करना    | madad / saha:yta: karna:    |
| to hide     | छिपाना               | chipa:na:                   |
| to hold     | पकड़ना सम्हालना      | pakṛna: / samha:lna:        |
| to increase | बढ़ना                | baṛha:na:                   |
| to inform   | बताना / सूचित करना   | bata:na: / su:cit karna:    |
| to join     | मिलना                | milna:                      |
| to jump     | कूदना                | ku:dna:                     |
| to keep     | रखना                 | rakhna:                     |
| to kill     | मारना                | ma:rna:                     |
| to kiss     | चूमना                | cu:mna:                     |
| to knead    | गूँदना               | gū:dnna:                    |
| to know     | जानना                | ja:nna:                     |
| to laugh    | हँसना                | hāsna:                      |
| to learn    | सीखना                | si:khna:                    |
| to leave    | छोड़ना               | chorṇa:                     |
| to lie      | झूट बोलना            | jhu:ṭh bo:lna:              |
| to lie down | लेटना                | le:tṇa:                     |
| to lift     | उठाना                | utha:na:                    |
| to like     | चाहना / पसंद करना    | ca:hna: / pasand karna:     |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|                   |                     |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| to listen         | मुनना               | sunna:                    |
| to live           | जीना / रहना         | ji:na: / rahna:           |
| to look           | देखना               | de:khna:                  |
| to lose           | ज्वोना              | kho:na:                   |
| to make           | बनाना / तैयार करना  | bana:na: / teya:r karna:  |
| to meet           | मिलना               | milna:                    |
| to mix            | मिलाना              | mila:na:                  |
| to occur          | होना                | ho:na:                    |
| to open           | खोलना               | kho:lna:                  |
| to (be) perturbed | गवड़ना              | ghabrä:na:                |
| to place          | रखना                | rakhna:                   |
| to play           | खेलना               | khe:lna:                  |
| to pluck          | तोड़ना              | torña:                    |
| to plunder        | लूटना               | lu:tña:                   |
| to possess        | रखना                | rakhna:                   |
| to prepare        | बनाना               | bana:na: / teyar karna:   |
| to print          | छापना               | cha:pna:                  |
| to protect        | बचाना               | baca:na: / rakṣa: karna:  |
| to pull           | खींचना              | khī:cna:                  |
| to purchase       | ख़रीदना             | xari:dna                  |
| to put on         | पहनना               | pahanna:                  |
| to quarrel        | झगड़ना              | jhagarña:                 |
| to raise          | उठाना               | utha:na:                  |
| to reach          | पहुँचना             | pahūcna:                  |
| to read           | पढ़ना               | parhna:                   |
| to reap           | काटना               | ka:tna:                   |
| to receive        | पाना                | pa:na:                    |
| to recognize      | पहचानना             | pahca:nna:                |
| to refund         | लौटाना / वापिस करना | lɔ:ta:na: / va:pas karna: |
| to release        | छोड़ना              | chorña:                   |
| to relax          | आराम करना           | a:ra:m karna:             |
| to remit          | अदा करना            | ada: karna:               |
| to reside         | रहना / निवास करना   | rahna: / niva:s karna:    |
| to return         | लौटना               | lɔ:tna: / lɔ:ta:na:       |
| to resolve        | घूमना               | ghu:mna:                  |
| to rise           | उठना / जागना        | uṭhna: / ja:gna:          |
| to roast          | बुनना               | bunna:                    |
| to run            | दौड़ना              | dɔ:rnna:                  |
| to save           | बचाना               | baca:na:                  |
| to say            | कहना                | kahna:                    |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|                 |                       |                              |
|-----------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| to search       | ઢૂઢના / ખોજના         | d̄hū:dhnā: / khojna:         |
| to see          | દેખના                 | de:khna                      |
| to sell         | વેચના                 | be:cna:                      |
| to send         | મેજના                 | bhe:jna:                     |
| to set (as sun) | ઝૂવના                 | du:bna:                      |
| to settle down  | વસન                   | basna:                       |
| to shine        | ચમકના                 | camakna:                     |
| to shiver       | કાঁપના                | kā:pna:                      |
| to sink         | ઝૂવના                 | du:bna:                      |
| to sing         | ગાના                  | ga:na:                       |
| to sit          | વૈઠના                 | be:ṭhna:                     |
| to sleep        | સોના                  | sona:                        |
| to smile        | મુસ્કરાના             | muskara:na:                  |
| to speak        | વોલના                 | bo:lna: / bha:śan de:na:     |
| to spend        | વિતાના / ઘર્ચ કરના    | bita:na: / kharc karna:      |
| to start        | નિકલના / આરંભ કરના    | nikalna: / a:rambh karna:    |
| to stay         | ઠહરના                 | ṭhahrna:                     |
| to steal        | ચુરાના                | cura:na:                     |
| to stir         | હિલાના                | hila:na:                     |
| to stitch       | સીના                  | si:na:                       |
| to stop         | રુકના                 | rukna:                       |
| to stroll       | ટહલના                 | ṭahalna:                     |
| to study        | પઢના                  | par̄hna:                     |
| to support      | સમ્ભાળના / સહારા દેના | sambha:lna: / saha:ra: dena: |
| to suppress     | દવાના                 | daba:na:                     |
| to swim         | તૈરન                  | terna:                       |
| to take         | લેના                  | le:na:                       |
| to take out     | નિકાલના               | nika:lna:                    |
| to teach        | સિખાના / પઢાના        | sikha:na: / par̄ha:na:       |
| to tear off     | ફાડના                 | pha:ṛna:                     |
| to tell         | બતાના / કહના          | bata:na: / kahna:            |
| to test         | જાંચના                | jā:cna:                      |
| to think        | સોચના                 | sočna:                       |
| to throw        | ફેંકના                | phē:kna:                     |
| to tolerate     | સહના                  | sahna:                       |
| to touch        | છૂના                  | chu:na:                      |
| to travel       | યાત્રા કરના           | ya:tra: / safar karna:       |
| to tremble      | કાঁપના                | kā:pna:                      |
| to twinkle      | ચમકના                 | camakna:                     |
| to understand   | સમજના                 | samajhna:                    |

|            |                |                                |
|------------|----------------|--------------------------------|
| to violate | तोङ्ना         | torṇa:                         |
| to wait    | प्रतीक्षा करना | prati:kṣa: karna:              |
| to wake up | जागना          | ja:gna:                        |
| to walk    | चलना           | calna:                         |
| to wander  | सूमना          | ghu:mna:                       |
| to wash    | धोना           | dho:na:                        |
| to wear    | पहनना          | pahanna:                       |
| to weep    | रोना           | ro:na:                         |
| to weigh   | तोलना          | to:lna:                        |
| to welcome | स्वागत करना    | sva:gat karna:                 |
| to win     | जीतना          | ji:tna:                        |
| to wish    | चाहना          | ca:hna: / iccha: karna:        |
| to work    | काम करना       | ka:m karna:                    |
| to worship | पूजा करना      | pu:ja: karna: / iba:dat karna: |
| to write   | लिखना          | likhna:                        |

### 5.10. Adverbs

|                    |                  |                 |
|--------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| above              | ऊपर              | u:par           |
| abundantly         | खूब              | xu:b            |
| after              | वाद / पीछे       | ba:d / pi:che:  |
| after all          | आग्रिर           | a:xir           |
| afterwards         | वाद में          | ba:d mē         |
| ahead              | आगे              | a:ge:           |
| alone              | अकेले            | ake:le:         |
| also               | भी               | bhi:            |
| always             | हमेशा / सदा      | hameša: / sada: |
| among              | बीच              | bi:c            |
| anytime            | कभी भी           | kabhi: bhi:     |
| anywhere           | कहाँ             | kahā:           |
| at last            | आग्रिर / अंत में | a:xir / ant mē  |
| away               | दूर              | du:r            |
| because            | क्योंकि          | kyō:ki          |
| before             | पहले / आगे       | pahle: / a:ge:  |
| behind             | पीछे             | pi:che:         |
| below              | नीचे             | ni:ce:          |
| between            | बीच / मध्य       | bi:c / madhy    |
| certainly          | अवश्य / ज़रूर    | avašy / zaru:r  |
| constantly         | बराबर            | bara:bar        |
| continuously       | लगातार           | laga:ta:r       |
| day after tomorrow | परसों            | parsō:          |

## 5. LEXICON

---

|                     |                |                  |
|---------------------|----------------|------------------|
| distant             | दूर            | du:r             |
| down                | नीचे           | ni:ce:           |
| ever                | हमेशा          | hame:ša:         |
| everywhere          | हर जगह         | har jagah        |
| far off             | बहुत दूर       | bahut du:r       |
| generally           | प्रायः / अक्सर | pra:yah / aksar  |
| here                | यहाँ           | yahā:            |
| how                 | कैसे           | kese:            |
| immediately         | तुरंत / फौरन   | turant / foran   |
| in front of         | के आगे         | ke a:ge          |
| in the presence of  | के सामने       | ke sa:mne        |
| just now            | अभी            | abhi:            |
| near                | पास / समीप     | pa:s / sami:p    |
| no                  | न / नहीं       | na / nahī:       |
| not                 | नहीं           | nahī:            |
| now                 | अब             | ab               |
| nowadays            | आजकल           | a:jkal           |
| often               | पायः / अक्सर   | pra:yah / aksar  |
| of course           | वेशक           | be:šak           |
| only                | केवल / सिर्फ   | ke:val / sirf    |
| out                 | बाहर           | ba:har           |
| outside             | बाहर           | ba:har           |
| perhaps             | शायद           | ša:yad           |
| probably            | शायद           | ša:yad           |
| quickly             | जल्दी          | jaldi:           |
| quite               | बिल्कुल        | bilkul           |
| silently            | चुपचाप         | cupca:p          |
| slowly              | धीरे           | dhi:re:          |
| sometimes           | कभी कभी        | kabhi:-kabhi:    |
| somewhere           | कहीं           | kahī:            |
| suddenly            | अचानक          | aca:nak / eka:ek |
| today               | आज             | a:j              |
| tomorrow            | कल             | kal              |
| (in) that direction | उधर            | udhar            |
| then                | तब             | tab              |
| (in) this direction | इधर            | idhar            |
| thus                | यों            | yō:              |
| under               | नीचे           | ni:ce            |
| undoubtedly         | वेशक           | be:šak           |
| unexpectedly        | अचानक          | aca:nak          |
| upward              | ऊपर            | u:par            |

|                       |          |        |
|-----------------------|----------|--------|
| very                  | बहुत     | bahut  |
| well                  | शूद्र    | xu:b   |
| (at) which direction  | किधर     | kidhar |
| when (interrogative)  | कब       | kab    |
| when (relative)       | जब       | jab    |
| where (interrogative) | कहाँ     | kahā:  |
| where (relative)      | जहाँ     | jahā:  |
| whether               | चाहे     | ca:he  |
| wholly                | विलक्षुल | bilkul |
| yesterday             | कल       | kal    |

### 5.11. Conjunctions

|          |                               |                                 |
|----------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| although | यद्यपि / हालाँकि              | yadyapi / ha:lā:ki              |
| again    | फिर                           | phir                            |
| and      | और / तथा                      | or / tatha:                     |
| but      | लेकिन / किंतु / परंतु / बल्कि | lekin / kintu / parantu / balki |
| hence    | इसलिए                         | isliye                          |
| or       | या                            | ya:                             |
| since    | चूंकि                         | cū:ki                           |
| so       | इसलिए                         | isliye:                         |
| so that  | ताकि                          | ta:ki                           |
| that     | कि                            | ki                              |
| though   | यद्यपि / हालाँकि              | yadyapi / ha:lā:ki              |

### 5.12. Pronouns

|               |             |                     |
|---------------|-------------|---------------------|
| any / anybody | कोई         | ko:i: / kisi:       |
| he            | वह यह उस इस | vah / yah / us / is |
| I             | मैं / मुझ   | meʃ / mujh          |
| it            | यह / इस     | yah / is            |
| my            | मेरा        | me:ra:              |
| one's own     | अपना        | apna:               |
| our           | हमारा       | hama:ra:            |
| she           | वह यह उस इस | vah / yah / us / is |
| some          | कुछ         | kuch                |
| somebody      | कोई         | ko:i: / kisi:       |
| something     | कुछ         | kuch                |
| these         | ये / इन     | ye / in             |
| they          | वे / उन     | ve / un             |
| this          | यह / इस     | yah / is            |

## **5. LEXICON**

---

|                     |                 |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| those               | वे / उन         | ve / un         |
| thou                | तू / तुझ        | tu: / tujh      |
| thy                 | तेरा            | te:ra:          |
| you (familiar)      | तुम             | tum             |
| you (polite)        | आप              | a:p             |
| your (familiar)     | तुम्हारा        | tumha:ra:       |
| your (polite)       | आपका            | a:pka:          |
| we                  | हम              | ham             |
| what                | क्या            | kya:            |
| who (interrogative) | कौन / किस / किन | kɔn / kis / kin |
| who (relative)      | जो / जिस / जिन  | jo / jis / jin  |